KIM IL SUNG

WORKS
WORKING PEOPLE OF THE WHOLE WORLD, UNITE!
CONTENTS

NEW YEAR ADDRESS

January 1, 1978 ...................................................................................................................... 1

ON ESTABLISHING TWO-CROPPING AREAS AND SPECIALIZATION IN AGRICULTURAL PRODUCTION

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of Agricultural Workers, January 26, 1978 .................................................................................................................... 9

LET US FULLY APPLY THE JUCHE METHOD OF FARMING TO BRING ABOUT A NEW UPSURGE IN AGRICULTURAL PRODUCTION

Speech at the National Agricultural Conference, January 27, 1978 ..................... 21

LET US MOBILIZE PARTY MEMBERS AND OTHER WORKING PEOPLE IN CARRYING OUT THE SECOND SEVEN-YEAR PLAN AHEAD OF SCHEDULE

Speech at the 16th Plenary Meeting of the 5th Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, January 28, 1978 ................................................................. 41

LET US FURTHER DEVELOP POULTRY FARMING BY SOLVING THE PROBLEM OF PROTEIN FEED

Speech Delivered at a Consultative Meeting of Officials from the Poultry and Livestock Sectors, February 7, 1978 ................................................................. 55

ON IMPROVING PROCUREMENT WORK

Speech Delivered at a Consultative Meeting of Officials in the Procurement Sector, February 7, 1978 ................................................................. 68
SOME PROBLEMS IN WORK AMONG SCHOOLCHILDREN

Speech Delivered to the Officials of the Central Committee
of the League of Socialist Working Youth and of the Education
Commission, February 8, 1978..............................................................77

LET US DEVELOP THE FISHING INDUSTRY
AND INCREASE THE CATCH

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of the Officials
of the Fishing Industry, February 14, 1978..............................................89

ON EASING THE STRAIN ON RAIL TRANSPORT

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of the Officials of the Rail
Transport Sector, March 13, 1978............................................................117

ON SOME PROBLEMS ARISING IN GENERATING
ELECTRICITY AND IN IMPROVING HEALTH CARE

Speech Delivered to the Senior Officials of the Economic
Affairs Departments of the Party Central Committee
and the Administration Council, March 21, 1978..................................128

SPEECH AT A CONSULTATIVE MEETING OF SENIOR
OFFICIALS OF THE ADMINISTRATION COUNCIL

March 30, 1978......................................................................................141

ON THE WIDE-SCALE RECLAMATION OF TIDAL
FLATS AND THEIR CULTIVATION

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of Agricultural Officials, April 3, 1978........151

ON INCREASING LOCAL BUDGET REVENUE

Speech at a Joint Meeting of the Political Committee of the Party
Central Committee and the Central People’s Committee, April 11, 1978.....164

TALK WITH THE DELEGATION FROM THE JAPAN
COMMITTEE FOR SUPPORTING THE INDEPENDENT
AND PEACEFUL REUNIFICATION OF KOREA

April 17, 1978..........................................................................................171
THE SOCIALIST LABOUR LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA

Adopted at the Second Session of the Sixth Supreme People’s Assembly of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, April 18, 1978

Chapter 1. The Fundamental Principles of Socialist Labour
Chapter 2. Labour is the Noble Duty of the Citizen
Chapter 3. The Socialist Organization of Labour
Chapter 4. Socialist Distribution by the Work Accomplished
Chapter 5. Labour and the Technical Revolution; Improvement of the Working People’s Technical Skill
Chapter 6. Labour Protection
Chapter 7. Labour and Recreation
Chapter 8. State and Social Benefits for the Working People

ON ENHANCING THE ROLE OF THE OFFICIALS OF THE PEOPLE’S GOVERNMENT ORGANS

Speech Delivered to the Officials of People’s Government Organs, April 20, 1978

1. On Thoroughly Implementing the Socialist Labour Law
2. On Enhancing the Function and Role of Local Government Organs
3. On Taking Good Care of the People’s Life
4. On Improving Guidance to Make the People More Law-abiding
5. On Offering Efficient Support to Pyongyang

TALK TO A DELEGATION FROM THE JAPAN SOCIALIST PARTY

May 13, 1978

TALK TO THE EX-PREMIER OF THE REPUBLIC OF PERU

May 24, 1978
ON MAKING GOOD PREPARATIONS FOR NEXT YEAR’S FARMING

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of the Officials in Charge of Agriculture, June 12, 1978

TALK TO THE DELEGATION FROM THE INTERNATIONAL LIAISON COMMITTEE FOR THE INDEPENDENT AND PEACEFUL REUNIFICATION OF KOREA

June 15, 1978

ON SOME IMMEDIATE ECONOMIC TASKS FACING NORTH PHYONGAN PROVINCE

Speech at an Enlarged Plenary Meeting of the North Phyongan Provincial Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, July 25-26, 1978

ON OUR COUNTRY’S EXPERIENCE IN THE SOLUTION OF THE RURAL QUESTION

Talk to State and Economic Officials, July 28, 1978

1. On the Agrarian Reform
2. On Agricultural Cooperation
3. On the Ideological, Technical and Cultural Revolutions in the Rural Areas
4. On the Status and Role of the County in the Construction of a Socialist Countryside

LET US STEP UP SOCIALIST CONSTRUCTION UNDER THE BANNER OF THE JUCHE IDEA

Report at the National Celebration of the 30th Anniversary of the Foundation of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, September 9, 1978

1. Let Us Thoroughly Embody the Juche Idea in State Activity and Energetically Conduct the Three Revolutions
2. Let Us Smash the “Two Koreas” Plot and Peacefully Reunify the Country
3. Newly-Emerging Powers, Unite and Fight against Imperialism and All Other Forms of Dominationism
A CONGRATULATORY LETTER TO THE TEACHING STAFF AND STUDENTS OF KIM CHAEK UNIVERSITY OF TECHNOLOGY

September 26, 1978 ............................................................................................................419

LET US BRING ABOUT A RADICAL IMPROVEMENT IN EDUCATION THROUGH THE FULL IMPLEMENTATION OF THE THESIS ON SOCIALIST EDUCATION

Speech delivered at a National Meeting of Educational Workers, October 1, 1978 ..................................................................................................................423

ON THE MAIN TASKS FACING THE KANGWON PROVINCIAL PARTY COMMITTEE

Speech Delivered at the Enlarged Plenary Meeting of Kangwon Provincial Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, October 5 and 6, 1978 .................................................................443

ON ESTABLISHING A PROPER SYSTEM FOR GUIDING THE FISHING INDUSTRY AND STRENGTHENING THE MATERIAL AND TECHNICAL FOUNDATIONS OF THIS INDUSTRY

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of Officials from the Fishing Industry in South Hamgyong Province, October 12, 1978.................................................................482

TALK TO THE CHIEF EDITOR OF THE JAPANESE POLITICAL MAGAZINE SEKAI

October 21, 1978 ..................................................................................................................502

ON IMPROVING THE MANAGEMENT OF THE LAND AND OF THE URBAN COMMUNITIES

Speech Delivered at a Consultative Meeting of the Senior Officials of the Ministries of Land Administration and Urban Management, November 9, 1978.................................................................517

LET US FURTHER ACCELERATE SOCIALIST CONSTRUCTION THROUGH EFFICIENT FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

Speech Made at a National Conference of Financial and Banking Workers, December 23, 1978 ............................................................................................................529
Comrades,

We have rung out a year of victory in the fruitful struggle for the prosperity of the country and the happiness of the people and are greeting the new year 1978, a year of hope in which we shall embark on the Second Seven-Year Plan.

Today as we mark another important landmark on the short road to socialism and communism and begin a new march forward towards a still higher goal in the building of socialism, the whole country is brimming over with joy and revolutionary enthusiasm.

I would like to offer my warmest congratulations to our heroic workers and cooperative farmers, our valiant men and officers of the People’s Army, and our working intellectuals and to all the Korean people who are greeting the New Year with the great pride of victors, displaying undaunted fighting spirit.

On the occasion of this New Year I extend my militant greetings to the south Korean revolutionaries, patriotic democrats, youth, students and people from all walks of life who are waging an indomitable struggle for democratic freedom and national reunification without yielding to the fascist oppression of the US imperialists and their minions.

I offer my New Year blessings to our 600,000 compatriots in Japan and to all our overseas nationals who are ringing in the New Year in distant foreign lands looking towards their socialist homeland as the
beacon of hope with feelings of great national pride and patriotic enthusiasm.

1977 was a year of glorious victory when brilliant success was achieved on all fronts of socialist construction.

Last year our people, in a spirit of intense loyalty to the Party and the revolution, worked hard and carried out the enormous tasks of socialist construction with honour.

Through our endeavours last year we completely removed the temporary strain in some branches of the economy that had arisen in the course of fulfilling the Six-Year Plan and laid solid foundations for reaching new, higher targets. Thus, having consolidated the achievements registered already in building socialism, we are now in full readiness to embark on the Second Seven-Year Plan with confidence.

Last year our daring transport workers made a significant advance in their work through a “200-day battle for a revolution in transport”. Thanks to their strenuous efforts, the material and technical foundations of rail transport were further consolidated, and the policy for unit train transport, coordinated transport and container transport was carried out. As a consequence, we are now capable of meeting in full the transport needs of the different branches of the national economy.

The miners also worked well. Upholding the policy of keeping the mining industry decisively ahead of the processing industries, our loyal miners strove for the large-scale rebuilding and expansion of the mines and for improving their technical equipment. In this way they brought about a radical increase in the production of both coal and other minerals. Notably, the heroic workers at the coal complexes in the Tokchon, Kaechon and Kujang areas, the Tukjang Coal Mine and the Anju General Coal Mine made great and loyal efforts to increase production and doubled coal output as compared to the previous year. This was a significant achievement.

Last year the workers in other branches of industry, such as the engineering, power and chemical industries, too, carried out their
assigned revolutionary tasks with credit and made an active contribution to the building of socialism in our country.

The success achieved in agriculture last year was outstanding. In spite of the highly unfavourable weather conditions that continued from early spring because of the influence of the cold front, the entire Party and all the people and soldiers turned out to give powerful support to the countryside and the Juche-based method of farming was applied in full, with the result that an unprecedentedly rich harvest was gathered. Thus, the flag of victory was flown on the peak of 8.5 million tons of grain. This is a striking demonstration of the correctness of our Party’s agricultural policy and the great vitality of the Juche-based farming method.

By making great efforts to carry out the five-point policy for harnessing nature, our agricultural workers and all the people completed the projects for irrigating 200,000 hectares of non-paddy fields and made the irrigation system in our country even more comprehensive. So, firm foundations have been laid for raising crops safely, however adverse the weather conditions.

Last year great progress was also made in science, education, literature, art and other areas of socialist culture.

The men and officers of our People’s Army and People’s Security Forces, Worker-Peasant Red Guardsmen, Red Young Guardsmen and public security personnel maintained their alertness and readiness and stoutly defended the security of the country and the gains of the revolution.

Last year we held successful elections to the Supreme People’s Assembly with an atmosphere of great political ardour prevailing throughout the country and we formed the new Government of the Republic with the unqualified support and confidence of the entire nation. As a result, our revolutionary government has been further strengthened and the political and ideological unity of our people centred on the Government of the Republic has been made indestructible. This is a sure guarantee for our people in pushing ahead still more rapidly with the revolutionary struggle and construction
work and in achieving still greater victory and success in the future.

Last year was indeed a significant year in which memorable progress was made in the political life of our nation and the socialist construction of the country. As I look back with a joyful heart on last year which was resplendent with victory and glory, I extend my heartfelt thanks to all our people, including our heroic workers and cooperative farmers, our valiant men and officers of the People’s Army and our working intellectuals, all of who made immortal achievements on all fronts of socialist construction by showing unbounded loyalty to the Party and the revolution.

Last year the international solidarity of our revolution was strengthened due to the independent foreign policy and energetic activities abroad of the Government of the Republic. The relations of friendship and cooperation between our country and many nations of the world were further developed and the number of those who support and sympathize with our revolutionary cause increased remarkably.

On the occasion of this New Year, I extend my warmest congratulations and greetings to all the friends and peoples of socialist, non-aligned and all other nations who offer their active support and encouragement to the just revolutionary cause of our people.

Comrades,

Our people, standing now on the threshold of a New Year, are confronted with the heavy yet honourable task of tackling the Second Seven-Year Plan.

The Second Seven-Year Plan is a magnificent programme of economic construction for bringing about a further increase in the economic power of the country and for hastening the complete victory of socialism. When the new long-term plan is fulfilled, our independent socialist national economy will become still stronger and more developed, based on modern science and technology, and memorable progress will be made in our people’s advance towards socialism and communism.

The new year 1978 marks the first year of the Second Seven-Year Plan and today we are going into a further battle. The successful
fulfilment of the new long-term plan depends largely on how we conduct the battle this year. A good beginning is essential for success in every undertaking. The entire Party and all the people should turn out as one in the drive to implement this year’s tasks, and so bring about a further great upswing on all fronts of socialist construction.

The targets set for the mining industry represent the main part of the Second Seven-Year Plan. It is only when this industry is kept decisively ahead of others that it will be possible to solve the question of fuel and power, provide sufficient raw materials for the processing industries and find new, major sources of foreign currency. The key to success in carrying out the Second Seven-Year Plan lies, in the final analysis, in giving definite precedence to the mining industry. This year we should concentrate our efforts on the mining industry and reconstruct and expand more mines and radically increase their production capacities, thereby ensuring a position of priority for the mining industry in the fulfilment of the Second Seven-Year Plan.

Continuous innovations should be made in transport. In this field our Party’s three-point policy of unit train transport, coordinated transport and container transport should be implemented to the letter so as to meet better the growing demands of the national economy for transport. The rails should be made more durable and the number of waggons increased greatly, so that mass transport and long-distance transport by rail can be actively promoted. Along with rail transport, road transport and shipping should be improved, and a combined rail-road-water system of communication operated smoothly so that materials and equipment can be carried promptly to factories, other enterprises and construction sites in the different sectors of the national economy.

The machine industry is the heart of industry and the basis of technical progress. It is only when this industry is working properly that it becomes possible to develop mining and transport rapidly and guarantee the success of all work in every field of the national economy. This year the machine industry should produce and supply the equipment that has been specifically ordered for the factories and
other enterprises that are to be built, and turn out a variety of machine
tools in large numbers, particularly the large ones needed by the
different branches of the national economy. At the same time, more
machinery and equipment such as heavy-duty lorries, heavy
excavators and bulldozers and compressors that are badly needed for
the development of the mining industry, and more electric and diesel
locomotives, various types of waggons and large cargo ships needed in
transport, should be built.

I hold the firm belief that in the new year all the workers and
technicians in the machine industry will carry out their assignments
with honour and credit and not fail to meet the great expectations of the
Party.

In all other branches of industry, too, innovations should be made
this year. Great efforts should be made in all the branches of industry to
use the capacities at the existing factories to the full, so that their
equipment is operated to the maximum, their production is regular and
labour productivity is further increased. If this is done, the tasks
assigned for this year will be overfulfilled without any doubt.

This year we should put great efforts into agriculture, too. It is only
when grain is produced in large quantities through farming well that
industry can be developed rapidly, the standard of living of the people
further improved and a satisfactory solution found to all the problems
arising in socialist construction. In view of the fact that the food
situation in the world is becoming more serious as the days go by, good
farming presents itself as a more pressing problem. In agriculture,
preparations for farming should be done scrupulously and crops raised
on a scientific and technological basis according to the requirements of
the Juche farming method, so that a bumper crop is reaped this year,
too.

Since the influence of the cold front is continuing, if grain output is to
be increased, any potential danger of damage from a drought should be
completely removed. The entire population should turn out to obtain and
save every drop of water, dig a lot of wells to secure more sources of
water and in this way expand continuously irrigation in non-paddy fields.
The energetic promotion of the three revolutions—ideological, technical and cultural—is our Party’s invariable policy in socialist construction, and the decisive guarantee for victory in all work lies precisely in conducting the three revolutions successfully. Upholding the banner of the three revolutions this year, too, we should continue these revolutions with vigour, bringing about a fresh upsurge in all fields of the revolution and construction and further strengthening our revolutionary forces politically, economically and militarily.

The Second Seven-Year Plan presents us with some enormous and very difficult tasks, and demands that the entire Party and all the people should wage an unremitting struggle for its fulfilment. We should tackle this plan relying on our own strengths, skills and resources. Having armed themselves fully with our Party’s Juche idea and displaying to the full the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance, all Party members and working people should solve the difficult and complex problems that arise in socialist construction by their own efforts and overcome every obstacle and hardship that lies ahead. In all fields of the national economy, any latent reserve should be tapped and used and more efforts made to increase production and make more economics in order to manufacture and build more with the manpower, equipment and materials available.

The recent session of the Supreme People’s Assembly set the important task of strengthening the people’s government. Our people’s government is the people’s servant which works in the interests of the masses of the working people, and it is a powerful weapon of the revolution and construction. We should jealously defend the interests of the masses of the people and accelerate socialist construction by further strengthening the people’s government and enhancing its functions and role in every way possible.

The revolutionary enthusiasm of our people is running very high and the situation in our country is also very favourable. The way in which our officials mobilize, organize and guide the people to display a high degree of revolutionary ardour is important.

The leading personnel of Party, state and economic institutions
should strive for a full understanding of their work, adopting the attitude of master of the revolution, and they should organize and conduct all their activities, prepared to take the responsibility for their own work. They should also acquire the revolutionary trait of carrying through to the end any task once it has been undertaken. Furthermore, all leading personnel should categorically reject bureaucracy, always go among the masses, lend a willing ear to the opinions and wishes of the people and work in their interests. They should give precedence to political work and actively stir up the voluntary enthusiasm and creative wisdom of the masses.

Because we are still on the revolutionary road, we should never be carried away by what we have achieved in the past. All Party members and working people should reject an easy life and indolence; they should work, study and live in a revolutionary way at all times and in all places; and they should make continued advances and uninterrupted innovations.

The targets for our struggle are clear and our prospects are bright.

Let all of us fight on for the successful fulfilment of the Second Seven-Year Plan and for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country at an early date, holding high the banner of communism, the revolutionary banner of the Juche idea.
I would like to talk to you today about some problems in agricultural production.

We should create two-cropping areas in some regions of South Hwanghae Province and introduce specialization into agricultural production there.

Ongjin, Ryongyon, Kangnyong and Jangyon Counties and other areas on the Ongjin peninsula are suited to the introduction of two-cropping. Because of the favourable climate and the large area of plains, it will be quite possible for these areas to introduce two-crop cultivation if the farmland is realigned properly and machinery introduced widely.

According to our initial examination of Ongjin, Ryongyon and several other counties in South Hwanghae Province, there are 18,000 hectares of fields on the plains that are suitable for two-cropping. If the agricultural workers introduce two-cropping in these fields alone through efficient organizational work, this will be tantamount to obtaining nearly 20,000 hectares of new farmland. It would be no easy matter to obtain so great an area of new fields by walling off the sea on the tidal flats.

Of the farmland owned by the state and cooperative farms in
Ongjin, Ryongyon, Kangnyong, Jangyon and Thaethan Counties in South Hwanghae Province, the fields on the plains which are ready for realignment and irrigation should be converted, so as to introduce two-cropping extensively.

Cooperative farms in the double-cropping areas should introduce specialization into agricultural production. This is the way to improve farming techniques quickly, speed up the introduction of mechanization and grow fine crops with only a small amount of labour. This is clearly demonstrated by the experience of Integrated State Farm No. 5.

In the two-crop area on the Ongjin peninsula wheat and barley should be planted as the first crop and soya beans or tobacco as the second crop. Even though the cooperative farms in this area are presently cultivating maize widely, they must not do so in two-cropping fields. Last year they produced 9 tons of maize per hectare and, for all that, from now onwards they must have nothing to do with it. They achieved this figure because there has been no typhoon in recent years, otherwise the crop would have failed. Maize-growing does not suit this area. Cultivating maize on a large scale in this area where typhoons are severe is unreliable and tantamount to dealing in opium, trusting to luck.

If we introduce good irrigation, use machinery efficiently and specialize in wheat farming, we shall be fully capable of producing 4 or 5 tons of wheat per hectare from two-cropping fields. I have been told that Integrated State Farm No. 5 in Ryanggang Province plans to obtain 4 or 5 tons of wheat per hectare. The yield in South Hwanghae Province must not be less than that.

Soya beans should be grown extensively after the wheat and barley have been harvested. The main point of two-cropping is to plant one grain crop after another.

It would be a good idea for the Ryongyon County General Farm to specialize in the production of soya beans as a later crop. Since this farm has already made good preparations for introducing mechanization, it will be able to start specializing in growing soya
beans as an after crop from as early as this year if it establishes a proper irrigation system and realigns the fields to a certain extent.

If we plant soya beans as an after crop in the whole area under two-crop farming in South Hwanghae Province, it will be equivalent to obtaining 20,000 hectares of soya bean fields as a main crop area. If every hectare of these fields produces at least 3 tons, it will amount to 60,000 tons. This will provide a partial solution to the soya bean problem in our country.

If you grind soya bean straw you will be able to use it as feed for farm animals. It will then be of benefit to the state farms in developing stock breeding. Wheat and barley straws can also be given to farm animals as feed. These could also be made into humus.

We should also specialize in cultivating tobacco as a later crop. This will enable us to improve our technical knowledge in its cultivation and to make a success of its production by modernizing drying houses. The aftercrop cultivation of tobacco should be limited to only a few counties.

The two-cropping areas in South Hwanghae Province should not be planted with such crops as sorghum and rape.

Even if this province specializes in the farming of wheat, barley, soya beans and tobacco after creating two-cropping areas, the area of maize fields will not be reduced to any great extent. Since there are nearly 100,000 hectares of maize fields in the province, no great problem will face maize production even if a small area of maize fields is set aside for two-cropping.

In order to establish two-cropping areas and introduce specialization into agriculture, it is necessary first to realign the fields properly.

It is only when all the fields are of a standard size that it will be possible to mechanize farming operations and introduce two-cropping and specialization in agriculture. The state should concentrate investment in the two-cropping areas and supply plenty of bulldozers and other machines so that swampy areas can be improved and grass ridges between the fields removed, as well as making all the fields a standard size.
It is wrong to start realigning fields that are on a slope right away, simply because we must realign the fields where two-cropping is to be introduced. There are large areas of both flat and sloping land in Jangyon County, for instance, and there only the flat fields should be realigned for the moment, and the sloping ones left as they are.

With a view to creating two-cropping areas and making agricultural production specialized we should also mechanize and modernize farm work.

Unless this is done, we can neither grow two crops, which requires the prompt completion of all farm work in the right season, nor effect the specialization of agricultural production.

Not only wheat but all the varieties of crops in two-cropping areas should be cultivated using machinery in the future. The mechanization of soya bean growing is also quite possible. If the width of the soya bean furrows is fixed properly and machines made to accommodate this, you will be able to do all farm work, such as sowing, spraying chemicals and weeding, by machinery. Those countries which are good at growing soya beans are doing all farm work by machine.

At Integrated State Farm No. 5, each member can tend 10 hectares because the work has been mechanized. In the future, all farm work in the two-cropping areas of South Hwanghae Province should be done by using machines so that each farmer can tend at least 7 or 8 hectares, if not 10. Where two crops are grown, it will be all right if each tends only 5 hectares of dry field. At the recent National Agricultural Meeting, a woman tractor driver from the Ryongyon County General Farm mentioned that 9 members of her family could drive a tractor. In the future every farmer should be able to drive a tractor so that farming can be done by machine.

For the mechanization and modernization of agriculture, the state should increase investment and produce large numbers of tractors and other modern farm machines for the rural areas. Far-sighted measures should be taken to ensure that wheat combines are produced.

An irrigation system should be introduced into all two-cropping fields.
A large amount of water is currently being wasted in rice cultivation. From now onwards this practice should be completely eliminated and water should be saved for the irrigation of dry fields. In addition, wells should be sunk wherever they are needed and water resources should be exploited widely for the irrigation of dry fields.

There is no great problem in introducing irrigation into two-crop dry fields. By nature, wheat does not absorb much moisture. Therefore, you officials can solve the problem of water in these areas without difficulty, if you organize the work efficiently.

If we are to create two-cropping areas and make agricultural production specialized, we must visit the actual places to gain a detailed understanding of the true state of affairs and then plan everything carefully.

I did intend to organize the work myself, on the spot, but I do not have the time. Therefore, the officials of the State Planning Commission, the Economy Commission of the Central People’s Committee and the Agricultural Commission should conduct a detailed field survey, work out a good plan and then submit it. The situation is such that we do not know clearly which dry field areas are suitable for two-cropping. You should inspect every patch of ground, instead of wandering around without doing anything, and get a full picture of the actual conditions.

It would be a good idea if not only officials of the provincial rural economy committee, but also the lecturers and students from the agricultural university in the province took part in the field survey.

After conducting a proper survey, you must fix the fields for mechanization, irrigation and realignment and draw good sketch maps of them.

When the areas for two-cropping are well developed in Ongjin, Kangnyong, Ryongyon, Jangyon and some other counties of South Hwanghae Province, these places will become reliable grain-producing centres, free from typhoon damage.

Next, a plan should be drawn up to turn Unggi County in North
Hamgyong Province into a county for the exclusive cultivation of soya beans.

Up until now, this county has been growing soya beans, maize and a variety of other crops, but none of them has produced a proper harvest. Last year only 3.2 tons of maize were obtained per hectare. As far as soya beans are concerned, Hambuk No. 18 was sown in 500 hectares of dry fields as an inter-crop, with an average harvest of 800 kg per hectare and with no more than 1.8 tons per hectare even from the 400 hectares where it was the main crop. The low yield in this county can be ascribed mainly to the fact that the farmers did not plant crops that suited the soil and climatic conditions, nor did they farm in a scientific way. Because they are able to grow neither maize nor soya beans properly, they would do better to cultivate just one of them exclusively.

Unggi County should aim to specialize in the production of soya beans. It will then be able to train specialists and improve their technical qualifications in soya bean cultivation, as well as allowing them to gain experience there.

With soya bean growing being specialized, only as much maize as is needed for stockbreeding should be planted.

To farm soya beans properly requires the irrigation of dry fields.

By nature, soya beans need plenty of water. Data shows that this crop needs water most when it flowers and that its grains are reduced in size if it cannot absorb enough water during the ripening season.

You should be aware of which areas of dry fields are under irrigation in Unggi County and sow soya beans first in these fields. You should work on introducing an irrigation system into those fields where there is none. The water resources in this county are abundant thanks to the Tuman River and so there is no major problem in carrying out irrigation projects if water pumps are supplied.

We should plant the best seeds in order to make a success of soya bean cultivation.

We should make great endeavours to obtain good bean seeds. In this way we should produce a soya bean seed which is suited to the
climate and soil in North Hamgyong Province and which can be planted densely.

If you have a suitable seed, you should plant it in Unggi County this year. If the results are good, measures should be taken to carry out irrigation work, to send large numbers of machines there and to improve the soil with state investment. And agricultural scientists should be sent there to conduct research at the same time as helping the farmers in growing soya beans in a scientific way.

The potential for grain production in North Hamgyong Province is vast. In the past the state has scarcely made any investment in the development of agriculture in this province, nor has the province done a lot itself. As a result, it suffered more damage than anywhere else during last year’s long drought.

Integrated State Farm No. 5 and the Phothae State Farm in Ryanggang Province would do better to specialize in the production of potatoes for the export market. Integrated State Farm No. 5 has a reasonably high level of skill and its per-hectare yield of potatoes is also high. Therefore, it will be able to obtain a higher yield if the work is properly organized and production is specialized.

Apparently there are about 2,000 hectares of plateau in Unhung County, Ryanggang Province, and they should be put to effective use. The suggestion has been made of turning the plateau into pasture, on which to raise 10,000 sheep. This is a good idea. If we raise sheep and sell the wool, the income generated will be large. We can produce 3 or 4 kg of wool on average from one sheep every year. So, 5,000 sheep will produce 15 tons of wool. As the purchasing price of wool per kilogramme is 40 won, 15 tons will bring an income of 600,000 won.

We shall be able to produce a considerable amount of meat by raising sheep. I have been told that the people plan to keep half of the 10,000 sheep over the winter and slaughter the remainder for their meat. Suppose we get 25 kg of meat from each sheep, this would mean obtaining 125 tons of meat. A large amount of money can also be made by selling sheepskins.
You should not leave the 2,000 hectares of plateau in Unhung County as they are, but breed sheep there. In the past Ryanggang Province had no success in raising sheep. This province was supplied with a large number of sheep by the state, but the sheep were allowed to die of the cold and hunger because they were not cared for properly. This time, such a thing must not happen. Other provinces are unable to engage in stockbreeding because of a lack of pastures. Since there is a wide area of pasture in Ryanggang Province, however, it must raise sheep intensively through organizing the work better.

We should make sure we have enough lambs. Because a ewe gives birth to only one or two youngsters at a time, slaughtering 5,000 sheep every year may raise difficulties in ensuring there are enough lambs. Therefore, we must pay due attention to this matter.

It would be a good idea to supply mutton either to People’s Army units or to workers.

Next, we should make tobacco cultivation specialized.

At present, the cultivation of this crop is dispersed throughout the country, which allows this and that cooperative farm to produce tobacco on a small scale. If you do things in this way you will be able neither to modernize tobacco farming nor to increase its production rapidly.

In order to step up tobacco production quickly, its exclusive cultivation is essential. Information from abroad tells us that it is best to produce tobacco and other industrial crops in a specialized and intensive way.

Through the specialized production of tobacco, we can raise the skill levels in cultivating it, modernize the drying and packing processes and concentrate technical forces on this work. And that is not all. We will be able to provide better direction and management for tobacco growing and increase production even in small areas. Because its cultivation has been spread everywhere before now, we have been unable to control and direct it, which has resulted in large crop losses.

A lot of foreign currency can be earned through increasing tobacco production by making cultivation specialized. Tobacco is an important source of foreign currency.
In order to specialize in tobacco cultivation, we should develop good tobacco-growing farms. With a view to increasing tobacco production in the past, we ensured that the cooperative farms in those areas where tobacco grew well cultivated 25 hectares of it at the same time as producing grain. These should be left as they are and we should develop separate tobacco-growing farms. Of course, it would be good to develop these cooperative farms into tobacco-growing farms, if necessary.

Tobacco-growing farms should be developed where there is a tradition of tobacco cultivation and, in addition, where seasonal manpower is available. A great deal of manpower is needed for picking the tobacco leaves. So far cooperative farms have neither increased the area of tobacco fields greatly nor made its cultivation specialized. This is due mainly to our failure to supply the manpower needed for picking tobacco leaves.

We must set up several tobacco-growing farms in the Yuson district of Hoeryong County, North Hamgyong Province, where tobacco thrives. This district has a certain tradition of growing tobacco, is situated near a coal mine and contains local factories. Therefore, tobacco-growing farms, if they are developed there, will have available both part-time labour needed for tobacco production and coal for drying the tobacco. Apparently there are six cooperative farms in the Yuson district, all of which can be developed into tobacco-growing farms.

It is also advisable to develop tobacco-growing farms in Songchon County, South Phyongan Province. Songchon tobacco enjoys worldwide fame.

Once tobacco-growing farms have been set up, all the small tobacco fields on individual cooperative farms should be turned into maize fields.

In order to make the cultivation of tobacco specialized, it is imperative to adopt a variety of measures to invest state funds in tobacco-growing farms and produce tobacco by modern methods. We should establish an irrigation system and supply various kinds of machinery to these farms so that machines can be used widely in tobacco production. In particular, modern drying houses should be constructed.
Specialized tobacco farming requires coordinating the manpower needed by each farm for picking the tobacco leaves. During the leaf-picking season, housewives in county towns and workers’ settlements should be enlisted in the work, and so should the workers at local factories. Contracts with the counties for labour assistance to tobacco farms should be concluded in advance and they must be strictly observed.

Tobacco-growing farms should increase their per-hectare yield.

The per-hectare yield of tobacco throughout the world is not particularly high. Data shows that the country which holds the lead in the per-hectare yield of tobacco produces 2.9 tons. Many countries are now cultivating tobacco widely. It is reported that one country produces more than 160,000 tons of tobacco a year. Our country cultivates it on a small scale, yet the per-hectare yield is no more than 2,120 kg. Therefore, we should radically increase the per-hectare yield.

The tobacco-growing farms should yield 4 tons per hectare by adopting intensive and modern methods of cultivation. This is quite possible if they increase the number of plants per phyong, water them frequently, spread fertilizer as required by the technical guidelines and pick the leaves at the proper time. Last year Farm No. 7 yielded 6.6 tons of tobacco per hectare. The farmers there say that we will be able to increase the per-hectare yield of tobacco still further through employing specialized and intensive methods of cultivation. When our country yields 4 tons per hectare, it will rank highest in the world.

All the tobacco produced on the specialized farms should be exported. If tobacco-growing farms are developed and produce 4 tons per hectare this year, we will be able to export 20,000 tons from next year onwards. If this happens, we shall earn twenty million rubles, which is equivalent to ten million pounds sterling. If we export good cigarettes, which will be made once modern cigarette factories are built, we will be able to obtain foreign currency far in excess of that figure.

At present the world demand for cigarettes is great. Therefore, we should earn foreign currency by increasing cigarette production and exporting more. If North Hamgyong Province produces high-quality
cigarettes and exports them, it will earn plenty of foreign currency.

It would be advisable to process the tobacco grown as an aftercrop in the two-cropping areas of South Hwanghae Province at the Sinchon Cigarette Factory and allocate these cigarettes for domestic consumption.

We cannot finish both the creation of two-cropping areas and the setting up of specialized farms at one go. On the basis of proper calculations we should advance this work stage by stage. We had better plan to complete the work of developing two-cropping areas in South Hwanghae Province within about two or three years.

The work of developing tobacco-growing farms should also be completed within about two years by setting up a few farms each year. It is no simple task to develop the tobacco-growing farms so that they can export 20,000 or 30,000 tons annually.

As I have said today, the Administration Council should draw up a detailed plan, specifying which cooperative farms should be developed into specialized farms this year and which ones next year and what types of machinery should be supplied to them and by what date.

The provinces which are to develop these farms should take this undertaking firmly in hand and organize the job well. Thus, within a few years we shall have created two-cropping areas in South Hwanghae Province and developed specialized farms in some other areas so as to bring about a further improvement in the production of wheat, soya beans, tobacco and several other crops.

At this consultative meeting, the desire has been expressed to use growth restraints because 3,000 wheat plants per phyong may result in the plants collapsing. Of course, we do have to apply growth restraints in order to prevent the wheat from collapsing. But we must also use smaller quantities of nitrogenous fertilizer.

Recently I have been reading some information about wheat cultivation. According to this, other countries apply these restraints to a limited degree in order to prevent the wheat collapsing, but the main way is to use only a little nitrogenous fertilizer.

At present, our country is applying nitrogenous fertilizer liberally to the wheat fields, but it would be preferable to spread only 60 or 80 kg in
terms of ingredient per hectare.

If an appropriate amount of nitrogenous fertilizer is applied in the wheat fields, we shall easily avoid the wheat collapsing. This is shown clearly by our experience in rice cultivation. In the past, all the nitrogenous fertilizer was applied in paddy fields two or three times before June 25, and those rice plants which suddenly absorbed a lot of fertilizer ingredients would collapse— as if attacked by indigestion. The textbooks at agricultural universities even stated that it was wrong to apply fertilizer to paddy fields after June 25. At present, however, the rice plants do not suffer from “indigestion” because we apply fertilizer on several occasions so as to ensure that the plants absorb all the fertilizer ingredients. During last year alone we saw that no rice plants collapsed because a good manuring system had been established, although the number of plants per phyong was increased to more than 1,700 to cover each phyong densely. There are no fundamental differences between wheat cultivation and rice growing.

Agricultural scientists and technicians should refer to information from abroad and study on their own to find good ways of manuring which would ensure the efficient cultivation of wheat, without the need to use growth restraints.

At this agricultural meeting, many problems have been discussed with the exception of fruit and cocoon production. These matters present no special problem. At present some agricultural officials are making the farmers go picking wild mulberry leaves during the busy farming season by dictating to the cooperative farms without mulberry groves that they should raise silkworms. We must do away with such practices from now on. Silkworms should be raised only on the cooperative farms with their own mulberry groves.

I have been told that all the comrades attending this agricultural meeting say that my speech and the debates of others have helped them to understand the Juche farming method more clearly. This is a very good thing. From now onwards, we must never farm by rule of thumb. We shall be able to increase agricultural production rapidly only when we improve our technical levels and put farming onto a scientific and technical basis.
Comrades,

For several days now this conference has been proceeding well. This National Agricultural Conference is a conference of victors and a conference of agricultural heroes in the true sense of the word.

The report to the conference was good and the debates conducted by many comrades were also very interesting and excellent. Many comrades who took the floor referred to their brilliant achievements and heroic feats and thus gave an impressive lesson to those attending the conference. The debaters not only reviewed the success they had achieved but also made a fine resolution to develop agricultural production to a higher level.

I would like to extend my congratulations to all those attending the conference and to the agricultural heroes, as well as to the leading officials of all the factories and enterprises, and those of the state and economic organizations that are lending support to the agricultural front, to the senior officials of Party committees at all levels, particularly the provincial Party committees, and also to the organizers of the conference who ensured that the current conference has been such a success.

At this conference we have reviewed the unprecedentedly bumper
crop which was harvested in our country last year. This review is truly brilliant and glorious.

As a matter of fact, the success we achieved in agricultural production last year was very great. In the per-hectare yield of rice, we have surpassed the high level attained by the developed countries. In maize cultivation, too, we have almost reached their level. As we have seen, we have reached the highest level in the world in the cultivation of rice and maize, which are the major crops, and have achieved marvellous success in all sectors of agricultural production, including vegetables and industrial crops.

The great success achieved in agriculture can be attributed to the correct leadership of our Party in implementing the theses on the socialist rural question and to the heroic struggle of our agricultural working people. This success has been brought about because the entire people, including the workers, scientists, technicians and soldiers, were mobilized and rendered powerful assistance to the rural areas.

One of the major factors in the rapid development of agriculture in recent years lies in the fact that the might of our industry has increased.

Had our industry not been powerful, we would not have been able to provide the rural areas with plenty of various farm machines such as tractors, lorries and water pumps and such farming materials as chemical fertilizers, weed killers and microelement fertilizers. Because our industry is powerful, we are able to supply as many modern farm machines and farming materials as we want. Now we supply the rural areas with as much electricity as they need. I think no other country has completed rural electrification as we have done and uses as much electricity as it needs for agricultural production. In addition, our country has joined the ranks of the developed countries in the number of tractors for every 100 hectares of cultivated land.

In accordance with the five-point policy for harnessing nature which was advanced at the 12th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee held in October 1976, we have completed the irrigation of 200,000 hectares of dry fields in a matter of a little over
one year. This miraculous success was achieved thanks to the heroic efforts of our working class and other working people, as well as to the great strength of our industry.

The great success achieved in agriculture clearly demonstrates the power of our independent socialist national economy, and it adds to the might of our socialist industrial state. We can rightfully boast of the might of our socialist industry to the whole world.

The enemy raved that our country could not be rebuilt even in a hundred years. However, having started reconstruction work on the war debris after everything had been destroyed by the barbarous bombing of the US imperialist aggressors, the members of our Workers’ Party and the working class, toiling peasants, scientists and technicians smashed the enemy’s slander and built a fully developed modern industry and converted our country into a socialist industrial state in a short space of time. At this conference, which is reviewing the success we achieved in agricultural production last year, I should like to express my great appreciation for their heroic feats.

The great victory won in agriculture provides actual and material evidence of the correctness of the theses on the socialist rural question.

With a view to putting the theses into effect, our Party advanced a correct policy and measures at every stage of revolutionary development and implemented them to the letter. Following the policy set in the rural theses, our Party upheld the red banner of the three revolutions–ideological, technical and cultural–and mobilized all the peasants, as well as the workers, scientists, technicians and soldiers, in order to advance these three revolutions rapidly in the rural areas. We have truly done a great deal of work in the 14 years since we published the rural theses in February 1964. We have been able to achieve great success in building socialist rural communities because our Party put forward a correct line and Party organizations at all levels organized the work of implementing the Party’s line efficiently.

The tremendous success achieved in our rural economy can also be attributed to the fact that all our people have fought heroically as one man, closely united behind the Party.
Our Party embraces a heroic people who defeated Japanese imperialism in 15 years of the arduous anti-Japanese armed struggle, a heroic people who emerged victorious from the three-year long fierce war against the US imperialist aggressors, and a heroic people who have built a socialist country on the debris where everything was reduced to ashes in the war forced upon us by these imperialists. Our Party is very proud to have such a heroic people. Had we not had these heroic people, who are firmly rallied behind the Party, we would not have been able to ride Chollima nor could we now add the speed campaign to the Chollima advance.

In the past our people were united behind the Party as one man and worked hard to build a socialist countryside, industry assisting agriculture, towns rendering help to the country areas and the working class fully supporting the peasantry. As a result, we have been able to achieve great success in building a socialist countryside. Following the war, our people brought 300,000 hectares of land under irrigation every year with almost no tools and despite the devastation and thus managed to irrigate one million hectares within a few years, thereby converting our country into a land overflowing with irrigation water. Furthermore, last year, with a view to overcoming the influence of the cold front, we brought under irrigation the 200,000 hectares of dry fields in the mountainous areas that had remained unirrigated, fields where we had found it difficult to undertake the project. It is unusual for 200,000 hectares of dry fields to be completely irrigated in only a little more than one year. It is truly a miracle. It is indeed an epic achievement by a heroic people who are adding the speed campaign to the Chollima advance.

I am very pleased that we are reviewing the great victory we have won in building a socialist countryside now that 14 years have passed since we published the theses on the socialist rural question. In the name of the Party Central Committee and the Government of the Republic, I would like to extend warm thanks to our heroic working class and cooperative farmers, the soldiers of the People’s Army, scientists and technicians and all the other people who, rallied closely
behind the Party, have worked with total devotion against all the odds to implement the rural theses.

Comrades, last year we achieved a really tremendous success on the agricultural front and accomplished many things of which we can be proud. However, we must never be complacent about this success. We have done a great deal, but there is yet more to be done.

The First Session of the Sixth Supreme People’s Assembly which was held recently, adopted a new Seven-Year Plan.

The rural economy is confronted with the heavy yet honourable task of producing 10 million tons of grain annually during the Second Seven-Year Plan. Furthermore, we will have to put into effect the programme for a technical revolution put forward by the Party at its Fifth Congress to free the peasants from difficult and arduous labour, and also accomplish at a higher level the tasks for irrigation, electrification, mechanization and the use of chemicals in agriculture set out in the theses on the socialist rural question.

If we are to implement all these tasks successfully, we will have to make the rural economy more Juche-oriented, modern and scientific and do more work, drawing on the success already achieved.

Before anything else, we should carry out in full the five-point policy for harnessing nature which was advanced at the 12th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee.

This plenary meeting assigned the task of completely bringing under irrigation 400,000 hectares of dry fields. Through their efforts to implement this task, our agricultural working people and all the other people involved have already completed the irrigation of 200,000 hectares. There still remain another 200,000 hectares to be brought under irrigation. We should complete the irrigation of this area as soon as possible. Those fields which have to be irrigated in the future are situated mostly in unfavourable areas where wells have to be sunk, pipes have to be driven into the ground and water has to be drawn from distant places. Therefore, this project requires a lot of hard work. We should wage a dynamic struggle and thus bring all the remaining 200,000 hectares of dry fields under irrigation within this year.
The layout of fields should be improved for the introduction of comprehensive mechanization.

At present we are unable to introduce comprehensive mechanization on a wide scale and operate farm machines at full capacity mainly because the land is not laid out well. For comprehensive mechanization to be carried out to the fullest extent, all the cooperative farms should remove the ridges between dry fields and any piles of stones, move loose stones from the fields, readjust the ridges between the rice-fields and eliminate small plots of paddy and dry fields.

The new Seven-Year Plan sets the task of reclaiming 100,000 hectares of tideland. Dredgers and transporters and various other kinds of equipment and materials needed for the project should be supplied in plenty.

It is only when we thoroughly implement our Party’s five-point policy for harnessing nature that we shall be able to hit the target of producing 10 million tons of grain annually. Therefore, today I appeal to all our Party members, workers, peasants, scientists and technicians and all the other working people to use their strength and wisdom to the full and realize this five-point policy to the fullest extent within a few years and thus make an active contribution to attaining the 10 million tons of grain target.

Furthermore, we should complete the comprehensive mechanization of agriculture.

To this end, we should produce large quantities of tractors and supply them to the rural areas. In the past the state has directed great efforts to the production of tractors and sent a large number of them to the countryside. However, we still need many more if we are to effect the comprehensive mechanization of agriculture.

During the Second Seven-Year Plan we envisage bringing the number of tractors per 100 hectares of cultivated land up to 8 to 10. To this end, we should send to the country areas more of such kinds of tractor as the Chollima, Phungnyon, Chungsong and Jonjin.

We should also produce more trucks for the rural areas.
Last year we reaped a fine harvest; however, we have not yet managed to transport the huge piles of crops. At the moment millions of tons of grain are piled up on the threshing floors of cooperative farms. This shows that the rural villages are short of transport. In future we should supply the country areas with large quantities of trucks so that their number per 100 hectares of cultivated area reaches at least three or four.

In order to complete the comprehensive mechanization of agriculture, it is necessary to produce large numbers of combine rice harvesters. In rice farming, we have introduced mechanization in transplanting the seedlings, but harvesting has not yet been completely mechanized. The Kum Song Tractor Factory says that it will make 1,000 combine rice harvesters a year. This is not enough for the comprehensive mechanization of rice farming. We should supply the rural villages with more.

In addition to combine rice harvesters, we should also produce combine maize harvesters, potato harvesters and vegetable harvesters as well as machines for transplanting humus-cake maize seedlings and those for transplanting vegetable seedlings.

For the comprehensive mechanization of agriculture to be completed successfully it is essential to enhance the role of the officials at the farm machine research institutes and those of the engineering industry.

The farm machine research institutes should intensify their research into comprehensive mechanization and should thus develop, as soon as possible, high-quality tractors which consume less fuel than the present ones and are faster and more convenient to handle, and make larger quantities of modern farm machines including various kinds of combine harvesters and machines for transplanting seedlings. The engineering industry should promptly supply plenty of the machines and accessories that are needed for the comprehensive mechanization of agriculture. In this way they will make it possible to drastically diminish the difference between agricultural and industrial labour and enable all the agricultural workers to work with the help of machines,
in accordance with the policy advanced by the Party at its Fifth Congress, and will thus make an active contribution to the complete implementation of the rural theses.

At this agricultural conference I appeal to the officials of the farm machine research institutes and to the workers, technicians and office employees of the engineering industry to make every effort to overfulfil the assignments of the Second Seven-Year Plan that have been set for the agricultural sector and implement to the full the tasks of the rural technical revolution set out in the theses on the socialist rural question.

We should also step up the use of chemicals in agriculture.

During the period of the Six-Year Plan we built many fertilizer factories, including the urea fertilizer factory at the Youth Chemical Complex, and thus successfully attained the target set for chemical fertilizer production. Yet we still fail to produce plenty of the different kinds of chemical fertilizer needed for agricultural production. As a matter of fact, we are now producing more nitrogenous fertilizer than we need. However, so far as phosphatic fertilizer is concerned, we still fail to satisfy our needs in full. In recent years we have needed a larger amount of phosphatic fertilizer for agricultural production in order to stem the effects of the cold front. When the cold front exerts a powerful influence, we can increase agricultural production only by applying more phosphatic fertilizer than nitrogenous fertilizer. Therefore, we are confronted with the important task of rapidly increasing the production of this fertilizer.

To this end, we should first of all produce a large amount of sulphuric acid.

Even so, the chemical industry should widely apply the method of producing phosphatic fertilizer without using sulphuric acid. Sulphuric acid is not indispensable for the production of phosphatic fertilizer. We can use nitric acid instead.

While striving to increase the production of sulphuric acid we should widely introduce the method of producing phosphatic fertilizer by using nitric acid and thus more than double the production of this
fertilizer as soon as possible.

We should not only increase the production of phosphatic fertilizer, but also work hard to produce potassic fertilizer for ourselves.

As yet we have failed to meet our own needs for this fertilizer. Therefore, we have to trade our nitrogenous fertilizer for potassic fertilizer for our farming. This is not too bad, but it would be better to produce potassic fertilizer ourselves. Unlike industry, farming must be done at the right time. If we import potassic fertilizer, unforeseen circumstances may mean that we receive the fertilizer later than required or less of it than we need. Should this happen, it will work havoc with farming. Therefore, we envisage the construction of a factory for the mass-production of potassic fertilizer under the Second Seven-Year Plan.

The leading officials, scientists, technicians and all the workers in those branches which are concerned with the production of fertilizer, including the Ministry of Chemical Industry and the Mining Industry Commission, should increase the production of phosphatic fertilizer and produce a large amount of potassic fertilizer by their own efforts as soon as possible, and should thus provide sufficient of the chemical fertilizer needed for the application of chemicals in agriculture.

If we are to introduce chemicals in agriculture we need a variety and large quantities of agricultural chemicals besides chemical fertilizer. The chemical industry should produce larger quantities of different kinds of agricultural chemicals such as highly effective weed killer and insecticide, growth stimulant and growth restraint.

It is no easy task for our country to produce by itself everything it needs in order to use chemicals in agriculture. This can be done only through the active efforts of the officials in this field. All the workers, scientists and technicians in the chemical industry should discover what things we do not have and widely introduce modern science and technology so as to find a satisfactory solution by themselves to all the problems arising in the use of chemicals in agriculture.

Furthermore, we should store and look after agricultural products with care and radically improve their packing.
At the moment the agricultural working people are engrossed in the production of farm produce but do not take satisfactory measures to store and pack it. As a result, large amounts of agricultural products are lost because they are not transported promptly and are not looked after properly. We should improve the storage of agricultural products and make great efforts to radically improve their packing so that not a single grain, the fruit of our painstaking efforts, goes rotten or is lost.

Keeping agricultural produce well and radically improving its packing are also an urgent requirement if we are to free the peasants, once and for all, from the job of making straw sacks. We should not only mechanize agricultural production to free the peasants from arduous farm work but must also release them even from having to make straw sacks. As a matter of fact, making straw sacks is not very difficult because at present it is being done with the help of machines. However, in winter the peasants are unable to study for lack of time because they are obliged to make these straw sacks. If keeping agricultural produce is improved and its packing is radically improved, so that we have no need of straw sacks, the agricultural working people will not have to make them in winter.

The officials in all fields of the national economy, particularly in the agricultural sector, should look after agricultural produce well and make great efforts to improve packing radically so as to prevent the loss of the produce and free the peasants once and for all not only from difficult and labour-intensive work, but also from the job of making straw sacks.

Many modern storehouses should be built where we can keep grain and other farm produce. Along with this, we should build warehouses to keep fertilizer and make many containers. It is only when we do this that we shall be able to transport the agricultural produce and fertilizer promptly, keep them well and also do farming well.

We should build drying grounds for farm produce and install highly efficient drying equipment. It is only when we build good drying grounds that we shall be able to dry different kinds of farm produce
well and prevent them from going rotten. If we do not dry tobacco properly and in good time it rots very quickly and becomes unusable because it crumbles while being packed.

We should supply the rural areas with large amounts of different kinds of packing materials. Only when we have many of these shall we be able to pack farm produce neatly; and only when it is packed well will the produce be of any value as commodities.

We should intensify our efforts to make a radical improvement to packing, and pack agricultural produce well, carry it promptly and keep it with care so that not the smallest amount of these products, which cost us such great efforts, will be lost.

We should also work hard to establish areas for two-crop farming.

If we are to enable everybody to lead an affluent life with our limited area of cultivated land, we should make effective use of the existing land and make agriculture highly intensive. To this end we should apply double-cropping wherever possible.

Last year we gained good experience in two-crop farming. One particular cooperative farm is said to have planted maize as the first crop in the vegetable plots, gathered 10 tons per hectare and then planted vegetables as an aftercrop, producing 100 tons per hectare. This is a miraculous achievement. Such good experience should be widely spread. If the areas south of Pyongyang and Hamhung use this experience and introduce two-cropping in vegetable gardens and reap 10 tons of maize and 100 tons of vegetables per hectare, we shall effectively obtain 30,000 hectares of land from here alone. Then it will be possible to produce 300,000 tons of maize in addition to vegetables. This is quite something.

A long time ago we stressed that South Hwanghae Province should plant grain crops twice a year. Now this province is raising two crops a year in part, in accordance with Party policy. However, we cannot yet say that it is doing so satisfactorily. Even according to a preliminary estimation, if such areas as Ongjin, Jangyon, Ryongyon, Kangnyong and Thaethan introduce double-cropping, they will effectively obtain another 50,000 hectares of land. If we work reasonably well, we will be
able to plant wheat or barley as the first crop and reap 4 to 7 tons per hectare and more than 3 tons of beans as an aftercrop. This will be no worse than planting maize as the main crop and gathering 10 tons from each hectare. If we raise two crops in a year and plant beans as the second crop to increase the per-hectare yield, this will bring about a great change in the people’s diet.

In this way, if we cultivate two crops in both the vegetable fields and some other areas of South Hwanghae Province, this will be tantamount to obtaining 80,000 hectares of new land. Though it is difficult to reclaim 100,000 hectares of tideland, it is not so difficult to obtain 80,000 hectares of land through double-cropping. Party organizations, government organs and organizations in charge of directing agriculture at all levels should direct close attention to creating areas for double-cropping wherever possible.

Furthermore, scientific research into farming should be intensified.

We have already achieved considerable success in this work. Agricultural scientists improved maize seeds to establish the system of producing F₁ hybrid, and have also obtained various good-quality rice seeds.

Availing myself of this opportunity, I would like to commend highly the achievements made by the agricultural scientists in their research and express my thanks to them.

If, drawing on this success, we are to take agricultural production onto a higher plane, we should farm in a scientific and technical way. To this end, there are many more problems in the field of agricultural science to which solutions should be found.

Before anything else, the methods of crop cultivation should be further improved.

Obtaining good seeds does not solve every problem. Besides improving the seeds, it is very important to set up a reasonable manuring system and cultivate the crops properly.

The terrain and climatic conditions in our country are diverse: they differ from valley to valley; from one side of a mountain to the other,
from the ridge, the mid-slope and the foot of a mountain. Under such circumstances, agricultural scientists should study closely methods by which strains can be distributed on the principle of the right crop for the right soil and those by which crops should be cultivated and disseminate the results widely among the peasants.

There are still many problems we must study concerning farming in the highlands. Agricultural scientists should work hard to perfect farming methods in these areas.

We should also study how to raise two crops every year. In addition, the study of the cultivation of industrial crops, such as flax and medicinal herbs as well as fruit, should be improved. It is particularly important to make a profound study of the cultivation of beans.

Our country is the home of the bean. Therefore, the standard of bean cultivation ought to be high. Agricultural scientists should work hard to improve the method of cultivating beans.

While studying methods of crop cultivation, we should continue to work towards a revolutionary change in obtaining new strains.

We have not yet managed to obtain a maize strain which does not bend before the wind and brings in a high yield even when it is planted densely. Agricultural scientists should obtain a low-stature maize strain which has thick stalks and bears many ears and at least 90,000 to 100,000 plants of which can be planted per hectare.

I would like to appeal to all the scientists in the agricultural sector to make still greater efforts to solve the scientific and technical problems raised by the Party.

We should also dynamically promote the cultural revolution in the rural areas.

The primary objective of the rural cultural revolution is to encourage all the agricultural workers to acquire broad general knowledge and at least one skill. It is only by promoting the rural cultural revolution and raising the general cultural and technical levels of the agricultural workers rapidly that we can carry out with success the tasks of the rural technical revolution.
We should ensure that all agricultural workers are able to drive a tractor and truck, can handle various farm machines and acquire a wide knowledge of agricultural science and technical expertise.

Yesterday a woman tractor driver of the Ryongyon County General Farm, South Hwanghae Province, made a speech. According to her, nine members of her family are tractor drivers. This is really excellent and we should be very proud. Several years ago when I went to Junghwa County in Pyongyang, I met a married couple. They were playing a leading role in rural mechanization, the husband driving a lorry and the wife, a tractor. At the time I thought this was very good. And yesterday when I heard that nine members of one family were making a contribution to the rural technical revolution as tractor drivers, I was delighted. This marvellous fact is a source of great pride for us Korean people.

We should make this fine example widely known and encourage all agricultural workers to make an active contribution to the rural technical revolution. If a whole family can drive machines, there is no grounds for the agricultural workers of one workteam or one farm not doing the same. This is well within our capability if all the Party organizations and senior officials as well as managerial workers in the rural areas organize the work meticulously.

If we are to encourage all the rural working people to learn to drive a tractor and lorry and acquire varied technical knowledge about farming, they should be given a good school education before anything else.

Schools in the field of general education should thoroughly implement the Party’s policy of initiating at least one skill in all the young people and children so that every one of them will be able to drive a tractor and lorry when they leave senior middle school. The state should not begrudge them tractors and lorries but should supply them to all the senior middle schools throughout the country so that the students can use them for practice.

The schools should teach a great deal of agricultural technical knowledge such as pedology, biology and the science of crop
cultivation. Of course, it is a matter of principle that schools in the field of general education throughout the country should conduct education according to a uniform curriculum and should teach the same subjects. However, we should examine the curriculum and subjects taught and see to it that in future rural schools intensify the technical education which is needed for the mechanization and use of chemicals in agriculture as well as for agricultural production. This will enable the students to do their work well without any need to receive specialized technical education when they are appointed to jobs in the rural areas after leaving senior middle school.

Along with good school education, technical knowledge should be widely disseminated in the rural areas.

Cooperative farms should not depend solely on the state to train tractor drivers for them, but must train many of their own drivers. A campaign should be launched for each driver in a mechanized workteam to train several operators so that every farmer will be able to drive a tractor and lorry.

Along with this, a variety of the scientific and technical knowledge needed for agricultural production should be disseminated among cooperative farmers. In particular, the agricultural science and technology information halls in the rural areas should be properly run so that they serve as a base for implanting comprehensively a variety of scientific and technical knowledge on farming in the cooperative farmers—such as a knowledge of soil, seeds, fertilizers and weed killers, and so on.

In this way we should get all the agricultural working people at the cooperative and state farms in our country to acquire a scientific knowledge of and skills in agriculture and to be well versed in their work.

It is important to enhance the role of the universities of agriculture in promoting the rural cultural revolution.

In our country every province has its own university of agriculture. We should intensify Party guidance of agricultural universities, and thus establish good ones and radically improve the quality of
education. Agricultural universities should teach their students our Party’s Juche-based farming method well and provide them with a good education. By doing so they should get all their students to display revolutionary traits and work as befitting masters of the rural areas and to form the vanguard which leads the agricultural working people in the implementation of the three revolutions—ideological, technical and cultural.

Lastly, I would like to refer to some immediate tasks that are facing us in farming.

Prior to this conference, the people here attended a short course in Pyongyang on the Juche farming method and studied our Party’s agricultural policy deeply. During this conference they have reviewed the brilliant successes they achieved in last year’s agricultural production and widely discussed the ways in which this precious experience can be spread. When you return to your posts, you should make good preparations for this year’s farming, drawing on the experience exchanged and in the light of the tasks which have been set at this conference.

Above all else, you should adopt thorough measures to combat the effects of the cold front.

According to scientists, the influence of the cold front will persist until the year 2000. This means that we shall continue to suffer its effects for a further 23 years. We must wait and see how accurate the scientists’ forecast is. But it is true that the world is now being troubled with the abnormal weather conditions caused by the cold front.

Therefore, the most important task confronting the agricultural sector today is to continue to take thorough measures to combat the effects of the cold front, in accordance with the policy put forward by the 13th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee. Leading agricultural officials and all the officials serving the agricultural sector should first take into account the cold front when considering agriculture and continue to wage an energetic campaign to combat its influence.
According to the data presented recently by the Hydro-Meteorological Service, the weather in April and May this year will be very cold and spring is due to arrive about a week later than usual. We cannot be sure that this report will be proved accurate. At any rate, it would not be a bad idea to believe it and make full preparations to counter bad weather. If we allow for various contingencies and make good preparations, we shall have nothing to worry about even if we encounter abnormal weather, and if not, it will be still better.

If we are to overcome the influence of the cold front in agriculture, we should first secure plenty of good humus.

It is only when we spread humus soil on the seedbeds that we shall be able to grow strong seedlings and transplant them early. All the cooperative farms should work hard to make good humus in large quantities.

If we are to overcome the influence of the cold front, we should grow 100 per cent of our rice seedlings in cold beds. Only then shall we be able to cultivate rice safely even when the influence of the cold front is severe. This is a scientific principle.

This year the state intends to provide more polyvinyl chloride sheets for the cold beds than scheduled in the plan. With the humus and the polyvinyl chloride sheets, we shall be able to grow strong seedlings and transplant them at the appropriate time. Our experience shows that it is most appropriate to plant rice seedlings from around May 7 to 20. You should start now to organize the work meticulously so that all the cooperative farms grow 100 per cent of their rice seedlings in cold beds and finish transplanting them quickly and at the right time.

Another important aspect of our immediate preparations for farming is to put the farm machines in good order.

The agricultural sector should, before the farming season, repair their farm machines and put them in good order, particularly their tractors and rice transplanting machines, and secure sufficient of all the farming materials they need. Small farming implements such as hoes
and sickles should be sharpened and enough of them should be available.

Seeds should be looked after properly.

Seeds must be looked after properly if they are to be sown on time. Last year some cooperative farms failed to keep their seeds properly. As a result, sowing was slightly delayed because of the shortage of seeds. This year you should see to it that seeds are looked after properly so that such a thing does not happen again.

One of the most important problems in preparing for farming is to fill the reservoirs with water as soon as possible.

The reservoirs are not full at present. South Phyongan Province has already established a circulating reservoir system and its reservoirs are almost full. Therefore, it will be able to fill them completely before the farming season. North Phyongan Province will also be able to secure the amount of water it needs if it finishes the construction of the Sinam Pumping Station quickly. However, North and South Hwanghae Provinces will not be able to irrigate their fields properly with the amount of water they have at present. Therefore, South Hwanghae Province should fill the Unpha Lake as quickly as possible and complete the construction of the channel it is building before the farming season. North Hwanghae Province should concentrate all its efforts on completing the project to draw water from the Ryesong River as soon as possible.

In short, almost all the provinces have as yet failed to fill their reservoirs completely. Therefore, a dynamic struggle to store water should be launched, comprising the whole Party, the entire state and all the people, so that all the reservoirs are filled as soon as possible.

We should continue to increase the irrigated area of non-paddy fields. Only when this is done will it be possible to raise grain output rapidly. Therefore, we should work hard to complete the irrigation of 400,000 hectares of dry fields, a task which was put forward at the 12th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee.

Each hectare of irrigated fields can yield 10 tons of maize. At a conservative estimate of 8 tons, we shall be able to produce 3.2 million
tons of maize from the 400,000 hectares of irrigated fields. And if we estimate the per-hectare yield to be 10 tons, the figure will be four million tons. We can raise the per-hectare yield of maize as much as we want if we plant F₁ hybrid seeds, irrigate the fields properly, apply plenty of fertilizer and cultivate the crop well.

If we are to farm in a scientific and technical way this year, as required by the Juche farming method, we should complete a soil analysis as soon as possible.

The present table of soil analyses at the cooperative farms was not only made a long time ago, but was also done at a time when we had no proper devices for soil analysis. Therefore, it tallies little with reality. Unless we can obtain a correct grasp of the soil composition for each area of land through a satisfactory soil analysis, we shall have no clear idea of the kind of fertilizer and the amount which should be applied to each kind of soil, nor shall we be able to farm in a scientific way. Therefore, the recent joint conference of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee, the Central People’s Committee and the Administration Council ensured that every province got the students of its agricultural university to conduct surveys of the soil and redraw the table of soil analyses for each area of land during winter.

The Agricultural Commission, the provincial Party committees and the provincial rural economy committees should take this work firmly in hand and give it proper guidance. And the Administration Council and the Ministry of Chemical Industry should supply the reagents needed for soil analysis promptly so that this work is finished quickly.

The cooperative farms should make good windbreaks in advance to prevent the wind causing damage.

All the cooperative farms should make good preparations for farming, sow seeds in good season, grow strong rice seedlings, plant them at the appropriate time and finish transplanting humus-cake maize seedlings quickly. In this way, we shall make new innovations in this year’s farming and hoist the flag of victory on the peak of 8.8 million tons of grain.
Those attending this conference and all the agricultural working people should arm themselves fully with our Party’s Juche idea, work as befitting masters in implementing the Party’s agricultural policy and work hard to build our socialist rural community into a better one.

I appeal to all the officials in the agricultural sector and the agricultural working people to march forward along the road indicated by our Party under the red banner of the three revolutions—ideological, technical and cultural—in order to hit the target of 10 million tons of annual grain output ahead of schedule and put the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country* into full effect.
Today’s session of the plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee has approved a letter that will be sent to all Party members. This letter will encourage Party members and other working people to work hard to reach the ambitious goals of the Second Seven-Year Plan and demonstrate to the whole world once again the revolutionary mettle of the heroic Korean people in building socialism.

Whenever it has faced trials or found itself in difficulties in the past, our Party has sent a letter to all its members. In this way it has overcome all its trials and difficulties courageously by rousing its members and other working people to make dynamic efforts.

As you all know, the US imperialists brought in vast armies to build up their aggressive forces in our country towards the end of 1952 during the Fatherland Liberation War. This was an attempt at what they called Eisenhower’s “new offensive”, the aim of which was to land large forces on the east and west coasts of our country in order to seize the zone covering Hanchon, Pyongyang and Wonsan, cut off our front from the rear and “surround and destroy” the main forces of the People’s Army. Truly, the situation was very grave, and we were faced
with a stern trial and great difficulties. In January 1953 our Party sent a letter to its entire membership, calling on them to rise to the occasion and fight a do-or-die battle to overcome the difficult situation and hasten final victory in the war. All the Party members and the working people, as well as the men and officers of the People’s Army, welcomed the letter from the Party Central Committee with all their hearts. In a display of unequalled courage, patriotic devotion and mass heroism, they frustrated the US imperialists’ “new offensive” and won a magnificent victory in the Fatherland Liberation War.

During the years when the Chollima Movement was being developed, after the reorganization of production relations along socialist lines had been completed, our Party once again sent a letter to all its members, calling on them and the other working people to make strenuous efforts, and so a great upsurge in building socialism was achieved. In the past our Party has placed its trust in the people, and the people have believed in the Party. Through forming a solid union, the Party and the people have bravely overcome many trials and difficulties and pressed ahead with the revolution and construction.

Just as we have made great advances in the revolutionary struggle and construction in the past by sending letters to the whole Party membership, so we must rouse the Party members and other working people in an energetic struggle to attain the ambitious targets of the Second Seven-Year Plan, the magnificent programme of building socialism, by sending a letter to the entire Party membership once again.

This time we are not sending the letter to Party members because we are facing trials or difficulties. Today the economic situation in our country is good.

Production is rising continuously in the key industries, notably the mining, metallurgical, building materials and chemical industries, and the prospects are bright for fulfilling the Second Seven-Year Plan ahead of schedule.

The agricultural situation is also very good. There have been crop failures in many countries around the world under the impact of the
cold front, but the harvest in our country has been rich year after year. At the National Agricultural Conference, the chairmen of the management boards of the cooperative farms and other officials in charge of agriculture summed up the magnificent results achieved in agricultural production and the valuable experience gained last year, and expressed a new resolve to reach the target of producing 8.8 million tons of grain this year.

The standard of living of our people is now much higher than in the past. While it is true that due to a shortage of some materials we have been unable to build a large number of houses over the past few years, our people are free from any worries about food, clothing and housing. If we still experience some difficulty, it is a slight shortage of electricity, our only problem from the cold front. We have constructed many hydroelectric power stations and created a capacity to generate millions of kilowatts, but these power stations are not generating much electricity because of the severe drought that has lasted for the past few years.

Although we constructed a large number of factories and other enterprises during the Six-Year Plan, they are not being fed with adequate amounts of raw materials and other necessities due to the strain on power.

We have constructed such large, modern thermal power stations as the Pyongyang, Pukchang, Chongchongang, and Unggi Thermal Power Plants, so that we are now able to supply electric power to the different sectors of the national economy, even though the hydroelectric power stations are not generating electricity at full capacity.

The problem facing us at present is not insurmountable; it is a passing phenomenon on the road of progress.

If all the Party members and working people adopt a firm resolve, they will have no problem in breaking through this difficulty that stands in our way.

Today the revolutionary enthusiasm of our people is running very high.
On hearing my New Year Address on the morning of New Year’s Day, all our Party members and working people went to work and conducted the first day’s “battle” for the Second Seven-Year Plan in high spirits. This clearly shows that they are united solidly behind the leader and the Party Central Committee.

As I said at the National Agricultural Conference yesterday, our people are truly good people. They emerged victorious from the battle against the Japanese imperialists and from the war against the US imperialists, reconstructed the devastated national economy during the postwar years, and have developed our country into a powerful socialist industrial state in a short time.

Thanks to the devotion of these people, we shall be able to overcome whatever difficulties might arise in building the socialist economy and attain the ambitious targets of the new long-term plan ahead of schedule. Everything depends on how the senior officials organize and mobilize the Party members and other working people in the implementation of the Second Seven-Year Plan.

Party organizations at all levels must mobilize all their cadres. Party members and other working people efficiently in carrying out the Second Seven-Year Plan ahead of schedule and ensure that another great revolutionary advance is made in the construction of the socialist economy.

In the first place, the officials in charge of economic affairs must organize their work according to a careful plan.

The major potential for increasing production at the moment lies in improving the organization of economic work. Since the First Session of the Sixth Supreme People’s Assembly, the officials in charge of economic affairs have organized economic work carefully and pressed ahead with production. As a result, many sectors of the national economy are meeting the quotas set for January this year. To be honest, in the past, few factories and other enterprises have ever fulfilled their production quotas for January. Last year the coal industry failed to carry out its plan and this was a major obstacle to increasing production in many other sectors. But this year the officials of the coal
industry have organized their work carefully and produced coal over and above the plan for the first half of January and are continuing to increase production. The production of chemical fertilizers is now smooth. The chemical fertilizer production quota for January this year is much higher than that for the corresponding month last year, but it is being met. It is not the case that this year we have supplied more power or particularly better equipment to the fertilizer factories. The rise in fertilizer production is due entirely to the efficient organization of this work by the senior officials.

Production at the Kim Chaek Iron Works is also proceeding well. Production at this works has been rising continuously ever since the Enlarged Meeting of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee in November last year took measures to separate the city of Chongjin from North Hamgyong Province and upgrade it to a special city functioning at a provincial level and to improve the direction of the Kim Chaek Iron Works. I have been told that this iron works will be able to exceed its production quota for January this year. The Sunchon Cement Factory is producing thousands of tons of cement every day. If the factory continues to work as it is doing now, it will be perfectly able to exceed this year’s cement production quota.

At the moment, however, the steel, chemical fertilizers and coal that are produced are not being carried away promptly due to the shortage of transport. If another “200-day battle for a revolution in transport” is organized to ensure that adequate amounts of raw materials and other necessities are supplied to the different economic sectors, production will rise even more than at present. If the officials who direct the economy organize the work carefully and rouse the revolutionary enthusiasm of the working people, the Second Seven-Year Plan will be carried out ahead of schedule. However, quite a few economic officials are still not organizing the work carefully.

The major shortcoming in economic work at present is the lack of a proper work system and order. The Administration Council has dismantled the work system and order that I established. As a result, many discrepancies have occurred and discipline has become lax in
economic work, too many projects are undertaken and none of them is kept under proper control.

The most serious shortcoming revealed among the administrative and economic officials is that, displaying bureaucratic and subjective traits and acting from expediency, they are not working with the attitude of masters.

In planning, for instance, economic officials are very bureaucratic and subjective. The officials of the State Planning Commission drew up the production plan for January this year at their desks, out of touch with reality, and dictated it to the subordinate units. They set production targets for the Sunchon Cement Factory for this month at a very low level on the pretext that one thing or the other was in short supply. I told them to set them a little higher. Then, they practically doubled the amount originally planned and imposed this on the factory. They also set January steel production targets for the Kim Chaek Iron Works too low and sent this inappropriate plan to the factory. So I had it revised.

Economic officials are neglecting the policy of unified and detailed planning; they are dealing with planning in a careless manner. They are drawing up plans by rule of thumb, without even a clear knowledge of work norms and the figures for material consumption.

They are not using their heads to increase production with the minimal outlay of labour and materials; they just dabble in one thing today and another tomorrow.

Many instances can be cited of these officials acting from expediency. Some of them are not solving problems in cooperation with others, and so are not displaying the attitude of masters in dealing with their work; they are in the habit of shifting responsibility to either their superiors or to their subordinates.

Every economic official must rid himself of any bureaucratic and subjective attitude and the habit of acting from expediency, and organize economic work carefully, without overlooking anything, displaying the attitude of a master.

We must thoroughly implement the Taean work system.
At the recent First Plenary Session of the Administration Council, I stressed the importance of restoring, re-establishing and improving the former work system and order and developing it further in all fields and units.

The main thing in this regard is to implement the Taean work system thoroughly. It is only when they adhere to the Taean work system that economic officials can get rid of subjectivism and arbitrariness and manage the economy scientifically and rationally by relying on the producer masses. They must, therefore, work hard to implement the Taean work system and radically improve the management of the socialist economy.

They must first improve planning.

The socialist economy is a planned economy; without a plan it will not move a single step forward. In socialist society all sectors and all units of the national economy are closely related to each other, so that if one sector fails to meet its planned quota or if any of the items planned is not produced, it will have a very serious effect on the national economy as a whole. Therefore, in order to develop the socialist economy rapidly, you must draw up scientific and dynamic plans and carry them out to the letter.

If you are to draw up scientific and dynamic plans, you must completely eliminate subjectivism in planning work and carefully calculate the objective conditions. In other words, you must make a correct estimate of the capacity of the equipment, the conditions for the supply of raw materials and other necessities, the technical skill of the workers, their ideological state and material provision for them before drawing up the plan.

If they are to work out a scientific and dynamic plan by making an accurate estimate of the human and material factors of production, the economic officials must implement the mass line thoroughly in planning.

When I say this I mean that the economic officials should draw up the plan by visiting the masses, rousing them and consulting them.

The producer masses are the best source of information on
production. It is the producer masses that know more about their equipment than anyone else, it is they who know more about the supply of raw materials and other necessities than anyone else and it is also they who know more about the levels of the men’s technical skill than anyone else. The economic officials must draw up their plans by visiting the masses and consulting them. This is the way to work out realistic, scientific and dynamic plans and tap domestic reserves to the maximum.

After the plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee in December 1956, I paid a visit to the Kangson Steel Plant. I asked the senior officials and technicians at the steelworks whether they could produce 90,000 tons of steel with their 60,000 ton-capacity blooming mill. They replied that it would be difficult. So I assembled the men in a building which was designated as a storehouse, and spoke to them. I said: Our country is in a very difficult situation. The US imperialists and the Syngman Rhee puppet clique are clamouring for a “northward push”, the major-power chauvinists are bringing pressure to bear upon us and factionalists are coming out against the Party supported by these major power chauvinists. Whom can we depend on? There is no one other than you to depend on. Can you afford to become discouraged and give up? We must pluck up courage in the face of this difficult situation, mustn’t we? This was what I told them frankly. The men raised loud cheers and everyone expressed his determination to produce 90,000 tons of steel instead of 60,000 tons. They told me to send the factionalists to them, saying that they would throw them into the electric furnace. In 1957 the workers at the Kangson Steel Plant produced 120,000 tons of steel with the 60,000-ton capacity blooming mill, an amount which far exceeded what they had resolved to produce. It was a miraculous success. Later the capacity of the blooming mill was increased to 450,000 tons and has now reached the level of 900,000 tons. The blooming mill at the Kangson Steel Complex is a machine of historical significance.

After the December 1956 Plenary Meeting of the Party Central Committee, the other members of the Presidium visited major factories
and enterprises. The senior officials went deep among the producer masses and roused them. As a result, miraculous successes and innovations were achieved everywhere. At the time some officials were saying that the Kim Chaek Iron Works could produce no more than 190,000 tons of pig iron, but the men committed themselves and produced 270,000 tons.

If economic officials work among the producer masses to rouse them, they will discover a great deal of potential to be tapped. That is why they must implement the mass line to the letter and work out realistic and dynamic plans.

In addition, materials supply must be improved.

If we give precedence to the development of the mining industry and supply raw materials and other necessities on time, we shall be fully able to exceed the targets of the Second Seven-Year Plan. The officials in charge of economic affairs must establish a system by which higher authorities supply materials promptly to their subordinate units in accordance with the Taean work system.

All economic officials must have a full understanding of their duties.

If not, they will never be able to rid themselves of bureaucratic and subjective attitudes, nor will they be able to control and advance their work. A good horseman rides his horse properly with the reins in both hands, so that the horse does not go astray; but a poor horseman rides his horse without holding the reins properly, so the horse runs wherever it likes.

The chairmen of the management boards of the cooperative farms have now mastered their work and are raising crops scientifically and technologically. They know how to draw up detailed plans, know all about the fertilizing system and can manage their farms very skilfully. I listened to the speeches they made at the National Agricultural Conference and found that they were highly qualified. They spoke to the point.

If the managers of factories and other enterprises have as good a command of their work as the chairmen of the management boards of
the cooperative farms, nothing will be impossible for them. All economic officials must gain a full understanding of their duties, organize their work carefully down to the smallest detail and carry out the tasks by finishing one at a time.

Furthermore, the senior officials of provincial, city and county Party committees must give efficient guidance to the factories and other enterprises.

Our Party is a working-class party; it is a revolutionary party fighting for the historic cause of the working class. It is natural, therefore, that Party workers should pay paramount attention to the management of factories and enterprises, go deep among the working class, intensify political work and ensure that they work with great revolutionary enthusiasm and creativity.

Nevertheless, many senior officials of the county Party committees go only to the edges of maize fields; they seldom visit factories and other enterprises. Even when they do, they simply stroll around the factory buildings.

The senior officials of the county Party committees who came originally from the working class do not visit industrial establishments willingly. The chief secretary of one county Party committee who is of a working-class origin and was once the provincial Party committee secretary for industry, does not visit the factories and enterprises in his own county. When he was the secretary of a provincial Party committee for industry, he used to visit the factories and enterprises in his province and direct the work. Since becoming the chief secretary of a county Party committee, he visits only cooperative farms, not the factories and enterprises.

The senior officials of the county Party committees are reluctant to visit factories and enterprises probably because these industrial establishments have become too large in size and university graduates are working as managers and chief engineers there.

The same can be said of the senior officials of the provincial Party committees.

The chief secretary of one provincial Party committee is simply
touring the rural communities rather than visiting factories and enterprises. Whenever I telephone him, he answers me from a rural community.

Senior officials of provincial Party committees seem reluctant to visit universities because of the professors and doctors there.

The reluctance on the part of the senior officials of the provincial, city and county Party committees to visit factories and other enterprises and universities is their most serious shortcoming.

There is no excuse for their failure to visit them. They have been educated by the Party better than anyone else. Therefore, they have a full knowledge of the Party’s monolithic ideology and are well informed of Party lines and policies. Although the managers and chief engineers at factories and other enterprises have received higher education, and although those who teach at university may be professors and doctors, they are not so well informed of Party lines and policies as the senior officials of the provincial, city and county Party committees, nor is their political horizon broader.

The senior officials of these Party committees do not know as much about technology as the managers and chief engineers, so they may not be in a position to conduct a detailed examination of the technical processes at the factories and enterprises. Nevertheless, they are perfectly able to direct and inspect the work of these industrial establishments, guided by Party policy.

They must visit factories and enterprises without hesitation, and learn how the Party’s policies are being carried out, and oversee this process, correcting any shortcomings before it is too late. They must on no account act on behalf of the administrative officials or work in an administrative manner. They must visit factories and enterprises frequently and mix with the men, talking to them, attending general meetings of Party cells and meetings of the factory Party committees, discovering what problems they have, helping to find prompt solutions, and efficiently organizing and mobilizing the producer masses in the implementation of the Party’s policies.

The chief secretaries of the county Party committees must attend a
short training course so that they will be able to guide the industrial establishments efficiently.

To proceed, the chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees must work properly as faithful servants of the people.

A few days ago, the chairmen of these people’s committees attended short training courses, but still they do not seem to have a clear understanding of their duties. The economy commission of the provincial people’s committee has been abolished, and the department of economic affairs has been re-established in the provincial, city and county Party committees. Because of this, some of the chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees say that they will have nothing to do other than running Socialist Law-observance Guidance Committee. They are grossly mistaken. If they look for work, they will find plenty. They must seek out what they should do; it will not come to them of its own accord. They say that they have nothing to do, and this is because they do not study. If they study the Party’s lines and policies carefully, they will discover what they must do.

I have already emphasized to the chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees on more than one occasion that they should pay close attention to the lives of the people. But they are neglecting to ensure that riced corn flour mills and oil-pressing mills are built to provide the people with regular supplies of cooking oil.

They are not implementing properly the assignment to see that a large number of chickens are raised for the peasant market. If chickens are raised at the county rice-cleaning mills alone, and sold at the peasant market, this will end the practice of selling chickens at a high price.

At the Meeting of Activists from the Fishing Industry on the West Coast, I set the task of forming side-line fishing teams at factories and other enterprises in order to ensure a regular supply of fish to the workers. The chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees have not implemented this task, either. They are seriously misguided.

As I always say, these chairmen are in charge of the local
government organs and are responsible for the living conditions of the people in their provinces, cities and counties. They must therefore adopt the attitude of masters and work in a responsible manner.

The first thing the chairmen of these people’s committees must do is to hold people’s assemblies, discuss the matters in hand and deal with them according to the law. This duty must not be delegated to the chief secretaries of the provincial, city and county Party committees. These secretaries have their own duties, as do the chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees. But this does not mean that these chairmen should be free of the guidance and control of their Party organizations. As Party members, they must naturally be guided and controlled by their Party organizations and perform all their duties by relying strictly on their Party organizations.

The chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees must always supervise and control the officials of the local administrative and economic bodies in the implementation of Presidential decrees, laws adopted by the Supreme People’s Assembly, the decisions and directions of the Central People’s Committee and the decisions of the provincial, city and county people’s assemblies so as to ensure that they are carried out correctly. No one can deprive them of this authority. Although they are subject to control by their Party organizations, the chairmen of these people’s committees must apply the law of the land to deal with the officials of the provincial, city and county Party committees if they behave despotically, for instance, by misappropriating labour to build their own houses in orchards.

The chairmen of these people’s committees must help the chairmen of the provincial, city and county administrative committees in their work in every way they can.

The provincial, city and county administrative committees are, so to speak, the economic affairs departments of the corresponding people’s committees. That is why the chairmen of these people’s committees ought to give active assistance to their administrative counterparts in their work and ensure that the standard of living of the people is steadily improved.
If the chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees help the corresponding administrative committees, provincial rural economy committees and county cooperative farm management committees properly in their work, the chief secretaries of the provincial, city and county Party committees will have time to concentrate on improving Party work, mix with the men at factories and enterprises and work better among them and ensure the more rapid development of industry. As matters now stand, however, the chairmen of these people’s committees are holding back the chief secretaries of the provincial, city and county Party committees, instead of helping them in their work. They must not simply try to maintain their present positions, but look after the people responsibly, as their true servants.

A new department in charge of the local people’s committees has been set up under the Central People’s Committee. So, the Central People’s Committee must improve its work with the chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees and enhance the role of local government organs.

For the present, the provincial, city and county people’s committees must hold people’s assemblies and discuss measures for carrying out the tasks which I put forward at the First Session of the Sixth Supreme People’s Assembly.

All Party organizations must discuss in depth the letter sent to all Party members by the Party Central Committee and ensure that all their members and other working people fulfil the Second Seven-Year Plan ahead of schedule.
Currently, one of the most important aspects of developing the poultry and livestock industries is to solve the protein feed problem. Unless a solution is found to this problem, the rate of feed consumption cannot be reduced, nor can the production of eggs and meat be increased.

I once instructed the officials concerned to supply 800 tons of maize to the Kwangpho Duck Farm as I was told that it had run out of feed. Later I asked about the increase in egg and meat production and the reduction in the rate of duck mortality there after the ducks had been fed on maize. But there was no noticeable improvement. The following year, therefore, I went to the plant to investigate the matter, and learnt that the increase in the production of eggs and meat was negligible and the reduction in the mortality rate was slight because its workers had fed the ducks only on the grain feed and not on protein feed.

Some officials in charge of the poultry sector have, in the past, alleged that the chickens being raised at the plants can be fed on maize alone and not on protein feed or microelements. There is no need to give the few yard chickens kept at farmhouses protein feed because
they can eat as many insects such as maggots, flies, earthworms and grasshoppers as they want, but it is imperative to supply protein feed to those caged up at chicken plants because they are not free to catch these various insects.

Although we have built chicken and duck farms in many places, we are still not in a position to produce eggs and meat in large quantities mainly because we cannot provide the chickens and ducks with sufficient protein feed.

The feed for laying hens and meat-producing chickens should contain at least 16 per cent protein. In particular, hens cannot lay eggs properly if they are not given protein feed because eggs consist mostly of protein. The chicken plants are using 3.6 kg of feed to produce one kilogramme of chicken, as against 2.4 kg in the past, because they are feeding their chickens on 7 to 8 per cent protein. This means that 1.2 kg more feed is being consumed than before for every kilogramme of chicken produced.

Even though large, modern chicken and duck farms have been built everywhere, we are still unable to produce eggs and meat in the required quantities because we have failed to find a solution to the protein feed problem. This is not good enough. We should make every effort to solve this problem so that the chicken and duck farms can increase the output of eggs and meat and supply them to the people on a regular basis.

In order to solve the protein feed problem, above all else, the large-scale breeding of earthworms is necessary.

I have been told that one country is now breeding earthworms in large quantities to obtain protein feed and is even exporting them. Earthworms are a good source of protein feed. They multiply very quickly and breeding them is easy.

An experimental station should be built in each province so that earthworms can be bred on a large scale. Because the breeding has to be done in a scientific way the stations should be well-equipped and precise technical guidelines should be drawn up and then distributed. It is impossible to raise earthworms in large quantities simply by sending
the technical guidelines to lower units and holding meetings.

It would be best to attach the experimental stations to major chicken plants and a good idea to set them up at the Sopho Chicken Farm in Pyongyang, at either the Kangso or the Ryonggang Chicken Farm in South Phyongan Province, at the Kusong Chicken Farm in North Phyongan Province, at the Haeju Chicken Farm in South Hwanghae Province and at the Sariwon Chicken Farm in North Hwanghae Province.

Scientists and some 10 to 20 senior middle school and college graduates should be appointed to each of these stations so that they can be trained as technicians in this field. In particular, the one to be built in Pyongyang should be provided with competent scientists and 20 to 30 research students who can be dispatched elsewhere at a later date.

After furnishing the precise technical guidelines for earthworm breeding, the stations should organize model lectures, compile experiences and send the technicians they have trained elsewhere so that they can teach their skills to others.

Earthworms can be bred both inside and outside houses, and all that you need to do is ensure the proper conditions and temperature for them to eat and live.

Material on earthworm breeding dealt with in the *New Technical Information* should be reprinted.

Other chicken plants should take measures to breed earthworms and feed them to the chickens.

The method of breeding earthworms used by Farm No. 7 is applicable only for rice-cleaning mills and threshing floors, not for major chicken plants. The major plants must build earthworm shops to breed them.

Numerous boxes must be made for the large-scale breeding of earthworms in these shops. Breeding 200 grammes of earthworm in each 0.2 square metre box is quite good. You should make as many boxes as possible, whether 5 million or 50 million, but not just 500,000; you should make them in vast numbers and breed earthworms on a large scale.
Some officials insist that ten earthworms are appropriate for a chicken every day. Whether chickens should be fed on living earthworms or whether the earthworms should be mixed with other feed before they are given is a problem separate from that of breeding the earthworms. Whether you feed the chickens on living earthworms or mix them with other feed, you should only give chickens feed containing 16 per cent protein. If you give them living earthworms, the chickens are unlikely to eat them evenly.

I think it would be best to chop the earthworms up and mix them with other feed. This will dispense with the need to dry them and grind them into a powder.

Fish farms should lay out earthworm breeding grounds. Earthworms are good feed for fish, too.

Earthworms living on the beach should also be bred. When they are used as bait for angling, such fish as eel, grey mullet, sea bass and globefish can be caught without much difficulty.

Maggots should also be hatched as feed for chickens. A chicken fed on maggots grows fat and lays many eggs.

*Aegukphul* should also be planted in wide areas.

*Aegukphul* contains a large amount of protein and its per-hectare yield is high because it can be harvested several times a year. I have been told that one country harvests 300 tons of it from each hectare. The one shortcoming is that it sprouts late in spring, however it does grow until late autumn.

Our officials are not planting *aegukphul* extensively, nor are they tending even the small areas that have been planted, claiming that planting maize is better than growing *aegukphul* and that it is a low-yielding crop. This is quite wrong.

The Agricultural Commission must see to it that the area under *aegukphul* cultivation is expanded and that its per-hectare yield is increased radically.

We shall easily gather 180 to 200 tons of *aegukphul* from each hectare if we plant it densely and apply large amounts of fertilizer, *aegukphul* being a plant which requires a great deal of nutrition. It
grows well if we apply 200 kg of fertilizer per hectare after each harvesting.

The Agricultural Commission should allocate land to the chicken and duck farms to grow their own aegukphul or make cooperative farms grow it and sell it to these plants. All that is needed is to form workteams specializing in the cultivation of this plant in the vicinity of the chicken and duck farms and get them to draw up contracts with the plants and produce it for them.

It is advisable to allot more land to the Tudan Duck Farm so that it can extend the area of aegukphul it grows.

Aegukphul cultivation should be carefully studied.

Our officials have failed to provide correct technical guidelines because they now have no interest in aegukphul cultivation. Some chicken and duck farms are conducting the cultivation of this plant on an experimental basis to discover ways of increasing the yield, but it will be a long time before they have any success. In order to increase the per-hectare yield, you must increase the number of plants in each phyong and establish a correct fertilizing system.

Not only must more aegukphul be grown, but it must also be processed properly.

When aegukphul is ground to a juice and brine added, aegukphul curd is produced. You can obtain good protein feed by mixing the curd with assorted feed or maize powder. It will be highly beneficial to give the curd to the chickens and ducks after mixing it with assorted feed and making it into pellets.

Up until now, some chicken and duck farms, in an effort to increase their output of eggs and meat, have been producing aegukphul curd for their chickens and ducks by hand.

I told the Agricultural Commission to build an aegukphul feed factory which I would provide with materials and equipment, but the officials have not yet carried out this task. Our officials talk about the efficacy of aegukphul, but in fact they are not conducting any experiments to obtain protein feed from it. Any other means of solving the problem of protein feed, other than producing protein feed by
processing *aegukphul*, is difficult.

One country once solved its protein feed problem by producing a great deal of fish meal, but now it is producing protein feed by using earthworms, excrement and suchlike because only small quantities of fish can be caught these days. Recently there has been no information about obtaining protein feed from fish meal in any foreign magazine. The world trend shows that it is better to obtain protein feed from earthworms and grass rather than from fish meal. We must plant wide areas of *aegukphul* and process it well to solve the protein feed problem. This is the best way of solving the problem because nowadays we produce only small quantities of soya beans and fish meal.

In order to produce protein feed by processing *aegukphul*, it is imperative to build an *aegukphul* feed shop at all chicken and duck farms and supply them with the various machines and equipment they need.

Once these shops have been built at the chicken and duck farms, they will be able to produce *aegukphul* feed for their own chickens and ducks. It will not do to use outdated methods of processing *aegukphul*. Since this is the age of science, *aegukphul* processing should be mechanized.

Once the juice has been squeezed out of the *aegukphul*, the sediment should be dried and mixed with assorted feed to give to farm animals. It is better to mix this with assorted feed rather than the sediment of other grasses because it contains protein.

*Kukhwaphul* should be planted extensively.

This plant is a source of a great deal of protein feed not only because its protein content is greater than *aegukphul* but also because it is a perennial plant.

I have been told that cattle do not like eating it, but this depends on how we make them accustomed to it. The same was the case with *aegukphul*, but now they eat it happily once they are accustomed to it. Apparently other countries depend entirely on *aegukphul* for cattle feed. Cattle will also like *kukhwaphul* when they are used to it.
A definite area of land should be allotted in the vicinity of each chicken, duck and pig farm where they can plant *kukhwaphul*. You must not stop growing *aegukphul* because I have told you to plant *kukhwaphul*. You should grow both.

You should produce protein feed from excrement, too.

If you skilfully process the excrement from chicken, duck and pig farms as well as the offal and the water used to wash meat from slaughterhouses, this will make good protein feed. You should not throw away the excrement from these plants but use it all to make protein feed. Moreover, you should process all the dead livestock, offal and meat-washing water discarded by slaughter-houses and feed it to farm animals. The fish-washing water and entrails from the fishing industry should all be processed into protein feed.

Urea feed should be produced in large quantities.

Green manure crops should be cultivated in wide areas. If these crops are planted in maize fields as a second crop, you will be able to obtain a great deal of feed for farm animals. Even though our officials are worried about the lack of feed for these animals, they are taking no measures to solve the problem of feed for farm animals by planting green manure crops as a second crop in maize fields. All they are doing is to plant Korean cabbage and radish in 30,000 to 50,000 hectares of land as a second crop after maize. There are at least 200,000 hectares of maize fields where green manure crops could be planted as a second crop, even with those in cold regions excepted. Simply by cultivating these crops in 200,000 hectares of maize fields as a second crop you will be able to obtain a considerable quantity of feed for farm animals. Sowing them as a second crop does not require much manpower. All that you have to do is plough the maize fields, sow seeds of green manure crops and then mow the crop once it is reasonably well grown. Green manure crops are free to grow for two months if their seeds are sown in maize fields that are ploughed immediately after harvesting since maize is harvested until the end of September. When cultivating green manure crops after maize you must choose fast-growing, high-yielding seeds with a high protein content.
The Agricultural Commission should adopt measures so that the problem of livestock feed can be solved by planting green manure crops in maize fields as a second crop.

You must conduct experiments on the close planting of broad beans. They are a good source of protein feed because they contain hardly any fatty substances and a great deal of carbohydrate and protein. However, their yield is low at the moment. They are raised in Ryanggang Province, but the per-hectare yield is very low. If we are to use broad beans to solve the protein feed problem, we should radically increase the per-hectare yield. We shall be able to do this if we plant the seeds close together. This will not do any harm. This year you should conduct experiments into planting them close together in the reclaimed tideland.

Research work on protein feed should be efficient.

The major defect in the work of the poultry and livestock sectors is the neglect of research into this matter. They have made no careful study of feed science just as the agricultural sector has neglected the science of cultivation. Feed science is equivalent to the science of cultivation. In feed science one has to study how much grain feed and protein feed must be given to the livestock in order to increase the production of eggs and meat, just as in the science of cultivation one must study when the three basic and microelement fertilizers should be applied and to what extend, and when weed killers should be sprayed and in what way so as to get the crops to grow well. Without studying feed science you will never be able to raise large numbers of chickens and ducks.

Scientists in the poultry and livestock sectors should put great efforts into the study of various protein feeds, instead of into the breeding of earthworms and maggots.

This morning I read some information to the effect that urea-bean-paste protein feed is good for milch cows, but this was of no interest to me. Because these cows need plenty of grass, they can be raised in countries where the territory is large and there is plenty of grassland, but in this country we cannot raise many because our arable land is limited.
It is better for us to take the bean paste as it is rather than to supply the milch cows with urea-bean-paste protein feed to produce milk. Immediately after the armistice we made an analysis of bean paste and milk, and this showed that the former is no less nutritious than the latter. It would be a good idea to make another analysis of the nutritional value of the one against the other.

Our country is currently raising milch cows with the aim of providing milk for the children. In future you should not build any new dairy farms, but keep just a few milch cows at the existing ones such as the Unggi County General Farm, the Ryokpho Stock Farm and the Ryonggang Dairy Farm.

You should make no attempt to solve the milk problem by raising milch cows; you should produce a large quantity of soya milk by cultivating soya beans extensively. Soya milk is just as good as cows’ milk. It contains vegetable protein, whereas cows’ milk has animal protein. The Europeans are tending to prefer vegetable to animal protein. Consuming a lot of vegetable protein helps a man to live for a long time. Orientals live longer than Occidentals because they eat a lot of vegetable protein.

Scientists in the poultry and livestock sectors should concentrate on research into protein feed for chickens, ducks and pigs instead of for dairy cattle.

For efficient research into protein feed, it is essential to form a research group.

Although plenty of technical books from abroad can be found here, few people read them because there is no group conducting research into protein feed. Therefore, you must see to it that a good protein feed research group is formed to make efficacious protein feed that can be used in our country, by referring to technical books from other countries.

The purpose of the experimental goose and chicken farms built in Pyongyang is to conduct experiments into feed. The experimental goose farm should conduct experiments into feed by giving their geese semi-perfect feed instead of perfect feed. Perfect feed should be given
to breeding geese, but grass to the meat-producing ones. There is no need to experiment on perfect feed because a full explanation can be found in books.

It is fairly good for the weight of a sixty-day old goose at the experimental farm to be 5.4 kg. Even so this figure is small compared to other countries. The farm should conduct efficient experiments on geese with the aim of increasing the weight of sixty-day old ones to 7 or 8 kg.

I have assigned these experimental farms the task of conducting experiments on feed by supplying their geese, ducks and chickens with perfect feed, semi-perfect feed or feed suited to the specific conditions in our country. They should measure the weight of the geese, ducks and chickens that are fed according to the methods used abroad and compare the results with those that are fed in the way we have worked out for ourselves. The experimental goose farm should experiment on feed for geese and ducks and the experimental chicken farm on feed for chickens, and in this way draw up technical guidelines. We should make sure that trainees are sent to the experimental goose and chicken farms and that processes for breeding earthworms and maggots and manufacturing aegukphul feed are devised.

Officials of the central authorities should visit these farms and conduct experiments into feed for geese, ducks and chickens for one or two years before they compile the results to make up the technical guidelines.

The provinces must undertake for themselves experiments on protein feed for chickens and ducks. Chicken and duck farms should be told to experiment on protein feed. This can be done in such a way that one chicken plant is experimenting on feed by using aegukphul and another on using earthworms and maggots. Research should be conducted in the capital and in the provinces to accumulate good experience before a book is compiled of the results.

The production of protein feed should be planned. Every year we discuss a grain production plan, but we have failed to discuss any detailed plans for the poultry and livestock sectors.
After this consultative meeting, the Administration Council should consult the officials from the poultry and livestock sectors about some specific ways of solving the protein feed problem and then draw up a plan. The consultative meeting should give assignments to specific chicken and duck farms so that they produce certain numbers of earthworms and maggots; and to certain other plants so that they increase the areas under the cultivation of aegukphul and kukhwaphul to such-and-such an extent so as to solve the protein feed problem and produce eggs and meat in specific quantities in proportion to the consumption of protein feed. Firm assignments should be given to the plants, otherwise they may only waste grain feed. They say now that they have hundreds of thousands of tons of grain feed put aside, but they cannot increase the production of eggs and meat without solving the protein feed problem. We have to designate a few factories in each province to produce protein feed on an experimental basis.

The Administration Council should make an accurate estimate of the potential output of bran, bean cake and other protein feed and draw up a plan to supply this feed to the chicken, duck and pig farms. And tasks should be assigned in such a way that specific places are designated to supply the materials and equipment required by the chicken and duck farms. It will not do to make these plants secure the required materials and equipment by themselves.

The council should draw up the plan for the production of protein feed first and notify the provinces in the western region, particularly Pyongyang and South Phyongan Province, of it and subsequently, the provinces in the eastern region.

Once they have been notified of this plan, the provinces should review how it is being carried out after six months and again at the end of the year. The Administration Council should sum up in detail the results of the production of protein feed and eggs and meat at the chicken, duck and pig farms before making a report to the higher authorities.

You should not construct any new pig farms but run and manage the existing ones properly, such as those in Kangso and Pyongyang, and
encourage farm households to keep a lot of pigs. Even if you were to build new plants, it would be impossible to provide them with feed because pigs eat such a lot of grain feed.

It is only the Kwangdok Pig Farm that breeds its pigs skilfully, using little grain feed. The mortality rate is low and plenty of pork is produced by this plant because the pigs are bred properly as required by the technical regulations. Last year the plant turned out 600 tons more pork than its production capacity. As a result, it can now ensure a regular supply of pork to soldiers, and make leather boots, soap from the lard and tooth and other brushes from the bristle. It also produces its own grain and protein feed.

However, other plants are unable to produce a lot of pork although a great deal of grain feed is consumed because they do not breed pigs as the Kwangdok Pig Farm does. So far we have built modern pig farms throughout the country in order to supply pork to the people, but our officials are failing to run them skilfully.

In the People’s Army, too, they are currently unable to produce sufficient quantities of pork to maintain a regular supply to the soldiers.

In order to provide the soldiers with pork we transferred a lot of pig farms to the People’s Army. It seems that the army cannot increase the output of pork because it has failed to keep good, young pigs for the plants. The army should ensure that the plants are provided with enough healthy piglets so that they can produce larger quantities of pork.

Great numbers of rabbits should be bred.

Last year the League of Socialist Working Youth raised 8.8 million rabbits and produced 2,966 tons of meat, part of which was sold to the state or sent to local nurseries and kindergartens for the children or to the factories and enterprises for the workers. It also arranged for fur coats and caps to be made out of the skins and sent them to the men of the People’s Army in the forward areas. This was a truly marvellous achievement. So, I instructed the officials concerned to send gifts to those schools which had raised a lot of rabbits.
You can raise as many rabbits as you want without giving them grain feed because they are herbivorous animals. The LSWY should launch a powerful campaign to raise more than 9 million rabbits this year. If it raises this many rabbits, it will produce 18,000 tons of meat, assuming that two kilogrammes of meat can be obtained from each rabbit. In raising rabbits, the skin is more important than the meat.

If young people and schoolchildren raise a lot of rabbits, they will acquire the spirit of loving labour and will earn a great deal of foreign currency for the country.

The LSWY should import laboratory equipment for the schools with the foreign currency it earned last year.
ON IMPROVING PROCUREMENT WORK

Speech Delivered at a Consultative Meeting
of Officials in the Procurement Sector

February 7, 1978

In increasing the output of daily necessities and improving the standard of living of the people it is of great importance to collect and make good use of waste rubber, broken glass, waste paper, empty bottles, waste vinyl, worn-out clothes and the like, as well as such locally-found products as wild fruit, edible grass and medicinal herbs, and this can be done through efficient procurement work.

Some time ago, I emphasized the need to establish a proper system of procurement to make a success of this work. I have been told that, as a result, Party officials recently visited the people’s neighbourhood units, institutes, enterprises and cooperative farms to conduct a dynamic information campaign, with the result that large quantities of materials, including waste rubber, broken glass, empty bottles, waste vinyl, waste paper and worn-out clothes, were collected and sent to local industry, which needed them for the production of daily necessities. One thousand three hundred and twenty-three tons of worn-out clothing were collected across the nation in January this year alone; this is tantamount to obtaining 1,300 tons of free cotton.

Party officials are now striving to collect and put to effective use the materials needed to produce consumer goods, but this is not the case with administrative and economic officials. This campaign on the part of Party officials to mix with the masses to educate and inspire them to
take an active part in procurement work with the attitude of masters can only be a short-term one: they cannot continue it indefinitely.

The officials concerned must further improve procurement work so that greater quantities of materials for the production of consumer goods can be searched out and used.

First and foremost, all the regulations governing procurement work must be examined and any irrationalities corrected.

The present regulations are so fastidious that people are unwilling to take part in procurement work; they show no interest in it. Once I visited the Yaksu Cooperative Farm in Changsong County, where I told the farmers: “At the moment the cooperative farms on the plains are having difficulties because of a lack of hafts for their axes, sickles, hoes, spades and picks; if you go up to the mountains in winter and cut down trees to make large numbers of these hafts, not only will it be of benefit to the state, but also you will be able to increase your own cash income; so, why do you neglect this matter?” They replied that they could do it without difficulty, but refrained because it was too much trouble, the procurement officials being fastidious in grading their goods and telling them to comply with the superfluous procedures. They said that it was better for them to take their time over producing compost and making preparations for farming during the winter. I told them: “Why do you not pick wild fruit? I gave the mountains in Changsong County the name of gold mountains because of the abundant wild fruit there, but how can we call them this if you do not pick the fruit?” They said that they had picked large amounts of wild fruit such as wild pears and grapes, actinidia and haws, but they had gone rotten after being piled up for several days while they were being graded and the necessary procedures followed.

I have been told that the present procedure for selling clothes to the state is also very complicated. The purchasing bodies even examine the certificates of citizenship of the people and register them when they go to sell their possessions. There is no need for this.

The officials concerned should examine all the existing procurement regulations and correct every stipulation which is
irrelevant or is too fastidious, so as to encourage everyone to take an active part in procurement work.

In addition to adjusting the procurement regulations, the structure of procurement bodies must be reorganized along more rational lines.

At present, the General Bureau of Procurement and Food Administration under the Commission of Public Welfare is in charge of almost all procurement work; in many respects this is an irrational arrangement. It is impossible for this bureau alone to conduct procurement work properly and, moreover, there is no need for it to do so. There is no law that procurement should be conducted by that bureau alone.

In my opinion it would be advisable to set up a procurement bureau at the Ministry of Light Industry and procurement boards in the general bureaux of local industry under the provincial administrative committees, instead of restricting the control of procurement to the General Bureau of Procurement and Food Administration alone. This is the way to find an uncomplicated solution to the problems in procurement work.

The main task for the General Bureau of Procurement and Food Administration under the Commission of Public Welfare should be to procure grain. Since straw sacks and ropes are used mainly for packing grain, procuring these, too, should be entrusted to this bureau. It must also purchase fruit, tobacco and so on for export, as well as products which are to be exchanged between the different regions of our country.

The procurement bureau at the Ministry of Light Industry should purchase the raw materials for light industry, including fruit, tobacco, peppermint, skins and wool. In the case of tobacco, it may be preferable for the cigarette factories to purchase it directly.

The procurement board in the general bureau of local industry under each provincial administrative committee should take charge of purchasing waste rubber, waste vinyl, empty bottles, waste paper, worn-out clothes, broken glass, empty cream jars and so on. When purchasing empty perfume bottles, they should pay a fair price for
undamaged ones and a lower price for cracked ones. The unbroken ones should be sent intact to cosmetics factories, and the cracked ones to bottle plants for recycling. The procurement boards in the general bureaus of local industry under the provincial administrative committees should purchase fruit, acorns and other products which are needed by local industry.

New purchasing shops should be set up in every county. Procurement work was quite satisfactory when a separate daily-necessities procurement body and foodstuff procurement body existed in every county, but it has not gone so well since the two bodies were combined. The food administration stations maintain discipline in purchasing grain and are efficient in grain procurement work because legal control over grain distribution is rigorous, but this is not the case with the procurement bodies. All the existing procurement bodies have become bureaucratic. These procurement bodies should be abolished and new purchasing shops set up. In this way, procurement work should be put onto a commercial basis. Just as factories and enterprises distribute their products through the supply agencies, so one’s possessions should be bought through purchasing shops. The best thing would be to set up separate daily-necessities purchasing shops and foodstuff purchasing shops. The purchasing shops in the rural areas procure mainly agricultural products. Therefore, it would be well to develop direct sales shops nearby to sell these products.

Purchasing shops should also be set up in towns and industrial districts as well as in the rural areas.

These shops should be provided with several personnel, such as a manager, an accountant, a purchasing agent and a seller, people who are necessary for managing and running them. Young men should not be appointed as managers, for they do not like this position and take things easy without doing anything properly. It is best to appoint women or scrupulous old men.

Consignment procurement work should be done properly at the purchasing shops. Rural villages should have specific places for consignment procurement, where they purchase the goods needed and
transfer them to the county purchasing shops. If this is done successfully, a variety of goods can be purchased in large quantities. The purchasing shop in Sakju County, for instance, can designate Kumbu-ri as a place for consignment procurement and appoint a man who finds it difficult to work because of old age to the job. Fixed remuneration should be given to those in charge of this work and, when they overfulfil their plan, they should be commended. The purchasing shops in the counties should only have to make one round every week of all the places for consignment procurement in order to carry away the purchased goods.

Itinerant procurement work should also be improved.

This work is not being done efficiently at present. Once the procurement bodies have been abolished and purchasing shops set up, the buyers themselves should travel around to do the work.

In former days, there were many wheat-gluten sellers in northeast China. They travelled from one rural village to another with wheat-gluten on their shoulders to sell it or barter it for brassware, brass spoons, waste rubber and other things of a similar type. They, for their part, piled these goods up and then carried them away in carts to sell in shops. In China there were also sellers called *huolang*. *Huolang* means peddler. They would carry knitting-wool, needles, perfume, soap and the like in baskets on a pole and travel around the villages to sell them, ringing handbells. They carried few goods, but the ones they did carry were very expensive because there were no such commodities in the rural areas. They laid out their goods by the sides of wells in the rural areas and sold them to the women who came to draw water. In those days, a certain Wang on the ad hoc committee in east Manchuria also carried goods to sell on his shoulders, while engaged in underground work. He did so for liaison purposes. On one occasion I asked him if he made any money out of peddling and he told me that it was very profitable.

Because itinerant procurement work is nothing special, anyone can do it. If we choose good people from among those who are not up to hard labour at coal mines, for instance, or from among those who live
on pensions, and appoint them to itinerant procurement work after teaching them the methods, they will do very well. They will not find it particularly difficult because they can travel by lorry. From now onwards the system of itinerant procurement work should be adopted.

Purchasing shops should draw up contracts with local factories and provincial shops for agricultural products.

It is only when they conclude contracts with local factories and procure materials on time and provide them with these, that the factories will be able to put production onto a steady basis and increase the variety and quantity of their products. Local factories should not be left to make purchases for themselves. If they are allowed to purchase a variety of materials in competition with each other, confusion will arise in procurement work as they may raise or lower purchasing prices at their discretion. This is why materials should be procured not by the local factories themselves but by the purchasing shops after contracts have been drawn up with local factories. Those shops should procure waste paper, broken glass, waste vinyl and so on, and distribute them to the Ministry of Light Industry and to local industry itself according to their demands.

The contracts concluded between these shops and local factories or provincial shops for agricultural produce should be in writing. Between the shops and factories, detailed contracts should be concluded listing the items. Only if this is done will the local factories receive the materials on time from the purchasing shops, and put production onto a steady basis without placing any great reliance on the state for materials. If a cosmetics factory plans to produce 100,000 bottles of perfume, it should be supplied with about 60,000 bottles by the state and should obtain some 40,000 recycled ones from the purchasing shops. If the factory fails to obtain 40,000 bottles from the shops, it will find itself unable to hit its production target. Because no such system exists at present, the cosmetics factories are not trying to collect old cream jars and perfume bottles; they are expecting to be supplied with new ones by the state. Therefore, when production plans are given to local industry, it must be made clear what amounts of
materials should be supplied to it by the state and how much by the purchasing shops.

When these shops deliver perfume bottles to the cosmetics factories, the price they should get should be as high as for new bottles, higher than the procurement price. This being the case, the state must pay the factories concerned as much as they paid to the shops. Even so, it is still profitable from the state viewpoint, for a great deal of raw materials and labour would be required to produce new perfume bottles and a lot of petrol consumed in carrying them to the factories.

The Ministry of Light Industry, too, may conclude contracts with purchasing shops. However, further study is required into this matter.

Purchasing shops should conclude contracts with provincial shops for agricultural products. They must purchase brooms, gourd dippers, calabashes, wash-mallets, washboards, winnows, axe-hafts and other goods which can be put to use without any need of processing, sell some of them to the people in the counties at direct sales shops and deliver some to provincial shops for agricultural products. It would be good for them to conclude contracts with provincial agricultural products shops and deliver the purchased goods directly.

If they purchase many calabashes, wash-mallets, washboards and so on in the future, a lot of people, including old men, will become interested in procurement work and make more of a variety of goods for procurement. If procurement is to be successful, it is necessary to interest both purchasers and sellers in this work; we will never achieve any success if we only reorganize the procurement organs and replace their signboards with different ones.

The purchasing shops should be encouraged to establish a self-accounting system.

For this purpose, the state should provide a certain amount of money to these shops. In the same way as the banks allot circulating funds to factories and enterprises, so the state should supply money to these shops. This is essential to enable the shops to run themselves.

Detailed procurement plans drawn up by items should be given to the purchasing shops.
At these shops, the assessment of purchasers in the fulfilment of their procurement plans should be done not according to money but by items. This is essential to make an accurate appraisal of the work done by purchasers and to make a success of procurement work. If the shops were to make this appraisal according to money quotas, instead of by items, some of the purchasers might take things easy for the whole day and simply buy a few expensive goods and report that they have fulfilled their plans. Money quotas for procurement can be overfulfilled simply by purchasing a few dogs. No matter whether they have bought goods worth 100 won or one won, purchasers should be given the same number of work-points if their efforts are equal.

In order to make a success of procurement work, it is necessary to give material incentives and offer commendations to the purchasers, as well as intensifying their ideological education. Prizes should be awarded to purchasers who overfulfil their plans, as this will encourage them to show an interest in their work and to do it efficiently.

At present, neither prizes nor commendations are offered to purchasers. As a result, they do not show a great deal of interest in their job and work in too casual a manner in carrying out their plans. Some of them are trying to buy as few goods as possible because some of their purchases will be lost if, having been bought in large quantities, they cannot be transported immediately.

Prizes should be awarded to purchasers who overfulfil their plans in the number of items bought and the salary of anyone who does not meet his quota should be reduced in proportion.

Transport should be provided for the purchasing shops. It is indispensable if the goods are to be transported on time.

Bicycles should be sent to these shops. Purchasers will be able to buy a lot of goods if they conduct itinerant procurement using bicycles. When we produce these bicycles, boxes must also be made to fit onto the back.

Tricycles should also be made for the purchasing shops. Every one should have about ten tricycles, each of which can fetch goods from two different ri.
The purchasing shops shall also have both small and large lorries. Some 200 small lorries should be sent to these shops.

Shops in the rural communities should use ox-carts, too. Although those in the towns should have bicycles and tricycles to use, there is no problem for those in the rural areas in making use of ox-carts.

The Administration Council should find out how many of those lorries currently owned by the procurement stations are in need of repair and how many of them have to be sent to the purchasing shops. In future, lorries at these shops must be repaired promptly.

Officials should treat the purchasers properly. They are playing an important role in providing local industry with the materials it needs. Nevertheless, some officials are now sending purchasers out to do other jobs without due consideration, regarding them as idlers. This is totally wrong. From now onwards, purchasers should not be enlisted at random to do other jobs.
SOME PROBLEMS IN WORK AMONG SCHOOLCHILDREN

Speech Delivered to the Officials of the Central Committee of the League of Socialist Working Youth and of the Education Commission
February 8, 1978

Today I should like to speak to you about some problems that have arisen in work among schoolchildren.

You must improve the work of educating the pupils so that they observe public decency and order voluntarily.

Offences against public decency and order committed by schoolchildren have been much in evidence recently.

According to a report from the Ministry of Railways, some pupils have been known to get on trains without a ticket and cause a disturbance on them.

Also, they do not behave properly at bus stops. On a cold winter morning I drove around the streets of Pyongyang and saw people queuing at a bus stop, among them several mothers with babies. When the bus arrived, some youngsters forced their way on, pushing the mothers aside. This is an act of sheer delinquency.

Many schoolchildren are slovenly in their dress. Some of them walk the streets with their clothes looking untidy and their caps cocked to one side.

They violate public decency and order because the organizations of the LSWY and their schools have not educated them properly.
Some officials say that these offences on public transport are being committed because the pupils and students are on holiday and out of control. But this is nonsense. If they had been properly educated to observe public decency and order voluntarily, they would not cause disturbances even though they are on holiday.

I have emphasized, on many occasions, the need to improve this education. I laid particular stress on the need to take good care of the railways and behave properly on public transport at a plenary meeting of the Cabinet a long time ago, and I have taken every other opportunity to repeat what I said.

However, the LSWY organizations and schools have neglected the education of the children. The LSWY organizations have never given a lecture on taking good care of the railways and behaving properly on public transport, nor have the educationalists included these things in the textbook on communist morality.

Encouraging all members of society to observe public decency and order voluntarily is not simply a matter of business; it is an important undertaking which has a direct influence on reforming the ideology of the people.

Teaching the younger generation to observe public decency and order voluntarily is of particular importance in training them to be worthy builders of communism and in making the whole of society revolutionary. The children of today are the future masters of our society and they are all educated at school before going out to work for society.

As I always say, those who dislike washing their faces, neglect to have their hair cut and do not brush their shoes properly during their childhood will work in a slipshod manner for society after leaving school.

Last winter I paid a visit to the Chongchongang Thermal Power Plant. The management of this power station, including the manager and the chief engineer, all grew up and were educated under the present system. But their management of the power station was very careless. This was due to the fact that the LSWY organizations and their schools
had not given them a proper education.

Whenever I visit a unit of the People’s Army, the first place I inspect is the barracks to see whether it is looked after properly and whether the men are well turned out. From this alone I can form a judgement of the unit’s combat efficiency. Soldiers who are dressed neatly and keep the roads and barracks clean are well prepared politically and ideologically, and their unit is well prepared for combat. On the other hand, the unit whose soldiers are slovenly and whose barracks and surroundings are untidy is not in readiness for combat and will inevitably suffer frequent mishaps.

LSWY workers and educationalists must strengthen education among the pupils and students so that they observe public decency and order willingly.

They must first be encouraged to take good care of the railways and behave properly on public transport.

The railways are the arteries of the country and stand in the forefront of the national economy. Just as a man cannot live if one of his arteries is severed, so the economy of a country cannot run if the railways are paralysed. That is why all members of society must value and take good care of the railways.

In former days the Japanese imperialists did not even permit Koreans to go near the railways. Any Korean found crossing a railway line would be hit across the face and fined. But in our society we cannot allow ourselves to employ such methods of establishing order and discipline. We must intensify education so that everyone takes good care of the railways and behaves properly on public transport of his own accord.

The LSWY organizations and the schools must teach the schoolchildren to take good care of the railways and behave properly on public transport, and see to it that they develop a widespread campaign to look after the railways and keep them in good condition.

They must also teach them to take good care of their schools, their villages, and the roads and buses which they use, public buildings and facilities, forests and rivers.
Pupils and students must be trained to keep themselves tidy and lead a cultured life.

Being neat, tidy and cultured are traits of communists.

I have always considered it important for people to be neat and tidy and lead a cultured life.

One day soon after liberation, I went into O Ki Sop’s office and found that he was unkempt and unshaven, his desk was littered with breadcrumbs and his ash-tray full of cigarette ends. He was leaning back in his chair to read a book with his legs stretched across the top of his desk and his shoes on. I rebuked him for not having his hair cut and for his slovenly appearance. He replied that he was living in the “proletarian way”. I said: “Don’t insult the working class. They produce cars, planes and build high-rise buildings and make everything. They are the most civilized class in the world. In capitalist society the workers suffer because they are poor and because the social system is corrupt. Even in the difficult circumstances of the anti-Japanese armed struggle, we were not slovenly. When no water was available in the winter, we melted snow to wash our hands and faces. When camping overnight we always built a lavatory, and if we tore our clothes, we would repair them immediately. Communists must live in an orderly and cultured manner, whatever the adversity.”

If a man gets into the habit of leading a disorderly life, his ideology will become tainted, and he will ultimately degenerate into a good-for-nothing.

The LSWY organizations and the schools must train all the schoolchildren to get into the habit of dressing neatly and leading a cultured life.

Schoolchildren in Pyongyang in particular must always be well turned out. Pyongyang is the capital of the revolution and many foreigners visit it. Therefore, if the schoolchildren are dressed untidily, they may bring disgrace to the country.

In order to educate them in the observance of public decency and order, good textbooks must be produced. The book *Communist Morality*, for instance, should include such subjects as taking good
care of the railways, roads, forests, rivers, streets, villages, public buildings, recreation grounds and so on, as well as the voluntary observance of public decency and order.

The organizational life of the schoolchildren in the Children’s Union and LSWY must be strengthened. They undergo ideological and revolutionary training and acquire a sense of organization and discipline through an organizational life in the CU and LSWY. The CU and LSWY organizations must establish a revolutionary attitude towards organizational life among the schoolchildren and develop an ideological struggle against any violation of public decency and order, and ensure that they all observe public decency and order willingly, like young people of the “land of Juche”.

The training given to schoolchildren in extracurricular activities must be improved.

Nowadays they go mountaineering and camping. That is fine. Schools must make sure that these activities are organized from time to time so as to help the children in their physical training and in acquiring a knowledge of nature and of the historical sites and relics of our country.

If their extracurricular activities are to be properly organized, a variety of educational facilities must be provided.

As part of the Second Seven-Year Plan we are going to build a fine students and children’s palace in every provincial capital. These palaces will serve to host a variety of extracurricular activities for the schoolchildren.

The Pyongyang Students and Children’s Palace is large but not well constructed. If it was going to be built now, it could be much better. The one in Kaesong is well designed, but it is too small. Those to be built in the provincial capitals should be designed and constructed well. If we build these palaces in the provinces and a grand people’s study house in Pyongyang, we shall have built almost everything that the younger generation needs.

It will be a good idea to organize educational visits to Pyongyang for the schoolchildren. If they see with their own eyes how Pyongyang,
the revolutionary capital, has been developed, they will feel the happiness and pride of growing up and learning under the care of our Party and will be better prepared to work for our revolution.

There are many things in Pyongyang that are worth showing to the schoolchildren. They can visit Mangyongdae, Ponghwa-ri, the Taesongsan Revolutionary Martyrs’ Cemetery, the Korean Revolution Museum, the Victorious Fatherland Liberation War Museum, the Pyongyang Metro and Kim Il Sung University. If possible they should also see the History Museum, the Folklore Museum and the Art Gallery, because these, too, are of educational value.

Good preparations should be made in Pyongyang for these visits. Otherwise, the children may fail to see Pyongyang properly and may also disturb public order in the city.

The visitors must first be provided with hostel accommodation. The hostel should be built like a Children’s Union camp.

A good hostel for schoolchildren must be built in Pyongyang and people appointed to work there who will take care of them.

A bus service must also be provided for visiting schoolchildren. Of course, it would be better for them to walk in file when visiting places in Pyongyang itself, but when they visit places like Ponghwa-ri which is a long way from Pyongyang, buses should be provided.

These visits to Pyongyang must always be well organized, as is the case with camping trips. If the organization is careless, mishaps may occur and the visits may have an adverse effect on the children. The schedules of the different visiting schools must be coordinated and the teachers must accompany their pupils to Pyongyang and ensure that they arrive punctually. The itinerary must include specific places to be visited, for instance, Mangyongdae on the first day, the Revolution Museum on the second day and the metro the day after.

It will take approximately ten days to see everything worth seeing in Pyongyang. If the time allowed is only a week because large numbers of pupils want to visit Pyongyang, they will not be able to see all that is worth seeing. Two days will be needed to see the whole of the Revolution Museum, for instance, even if the visit is hurried.
The visits to Pyongyang should be organized mainly for senior middle school pupils. Primary schoolchildren are too young to travel to Pyongyang, so they should be taken to visit local revolutionary sites, factories and other enterprises and recreation grounds.

Not just anybody should be selected to visit Pyongyang; only those who are good at school work, well-behaved and exemplary in the organizational life of the CU and the LSWY should be chosen.

Students at universities of education and teachers training colleges must see Pyongyang because they will become teachers after graduation.

In order to improve the education of schoolchildren, workers in the LSWY and teachers must work much more effectively.

At present, they are not being very strict with their pupils. This is a serious shortcoming. Many of them do not take prompt measures to correct the behaviour of those of their pupils who offend public decency and disturb public order, even when they witness these incidents themselves. They should realize that they are directly responsible for the education of the children; they must be more strict in teaching them to be exemplary in observing public decency and order.

In addition, they must conduct an ideological campaign to correct their own shortcomings in teaching the children.

The training of school instructors for the CU and LSWY must be improved. Many of them have no clear idea about how to teach their pupils. The training institutions for these instructors must improve the quality of their education so that the instructors will teach the young people properly.

A widespread campaign to breed rabbits must be developed among the schoolchildren.

Last year the children raised 8,826,500 rabbits through this campaign. Of these 3,748,300 were raised collectively and 3,086,200 by individual senior middle school pupils, 6,834,500 in all. The members of the LSWY at factories and in the rural areas raised 1,992,000 rabbits. Producing almost 9,000,000 rabbits in one year is a great achievement.
On behalf of the Party Central Committee and on my own behalf, I would like to thank all the pupils, their teaching staff and leading officials of the CU and the LSWY for the success they achieved in raising rabbits last year.

The young people of South Hwanghae Province did best in this work last year. In this province, the Ongjin Girls’ Senior Middle School in Ongjin County, the Paeksok Senior Middle School, the Uryong Senior Middle School, the Saenal Senior Middle School in Sinchon County, the Honghyon Senior Middle School in Paechon County and the Sorim Senior Middle School in Jaeryong County, each raised more than 10,000 rabbits last year. These six senior middle schools in South Hwanghae Province were the only ones in the whole country to raise as many as 10,000 rabbits. Sinchon County in South Hwanghae Province has no particular advantage over any other county, but three senior middle schools in this county raised more than 10,000 rabbits each. The cooperative farms in this county are all hard-working. The work done at the Paeksok Cooperative Farm is good and the same is true of the Saenal Cooperative Farm. The Sorim Cooperative Farm in Jaeryong County is also good at raising crops.

The number of senior middle schools which raised 5,000 rabbits or more last year is as follows, by district: 17 in South Hwanghae Province, 8 in South Hamgyong Province, 7 in North Hwanghae Province, 4 in North Hamgyong Province, 3 in North Phyongan Province, 2 in Chongjin and one each in Pyongyang, South Phyongan, Kangwon, Ryanggang and Jagang Provinces and Kaesong. The young people of South Hamgyong Province and North Hwanghae Province were reasonably successful in raising rabbits.

South Phyongan Province did not do very well. This province has the largest population in the country and the conditions there are good, but not one of its senior middle schools raised 10,000 rabbits and only one produced 5,000 rabbits. The province is top in farming but last in raising rabbits. It shows that the work of the LSWY in this province is backward.

It seems difficult to raise rabbits in the central districts of
Pyongyang. However, it is quite possible to do it in the suburban districts where there are many low hills and plenty of grass. But the people of Pyongyang did not do this work very well last year.

Prizes should be awarded to the schools and pupils that have set a good example in raising rabbits.

The prizes should include television sets, musical instruments and school furniture and other things which can be used communally at the school. This will help the pupils and students to foster the collectivist spirit. Major prizes should be awarded to the Ongjin Girls’ Senior Middle School in Ongjin County, the Paeksok Senior Middle School, the Uryong Senior Middle School and the Saenal Senior Middle School in Sinchon County, the Honghyon Senior Middle School in Paechon County and the Sorim Senior Middle School in Jaeryong County for excellence in rabbit raising.

Novels, notebooks, fountain-pens and similar things should be presented to those pupils who did particularly well in raising rabbits.

The Central Committee of the LSWY must visit the schools and pupils to award the prizes.

The newspapers must give wide publicity to these senior middle schools and pupils.

The Central Committee of the LSWY must review the work of raising rabbits and encourage the schoolchildren to show even greater enthusiasm for this campaign.

This year they should work hard and aim to raise more than 9,000,000 rabbits. Nine million rabbits will yield 9,000,000 furs and a great deal of meat, and with this we can provide the children at kindergarten and schoolchildren with fur caps and gloves and also give them meat to eat. If you make quilts out of the fur you will find that they are wonderful. If you breed large numbers of rabbits, you can export some of the furs and in exchange buy equipment to improve school laboratories.

If the campaign to raise rabbits is to be a success, good breeds must be selected. The General Bureau of Poultry and Stock Farming of the Agricultural Commission must select good breeds from the rabbit
breeding stations and send these to the schools. A white breed is a good one. White rabbit fur that is dyed black is excellent.

Schools must take care to avoid the breeds degenerating. Inbreeding results in the gradual degeneration of breeds until they become useless.

Rabbit fur and meat should be well processed.

Rabbit fur must be delivered to the Ministry of Light Industry for processing. The ministry must see to it that it is well processed and made into fur caps for the children at kindergarten and schoolchildren.

A certain amount of rabbit fur will have to be supplied to the People’s Army. I have heard that the soldiers of the People’s Army are provided with overcoats lined with rabbit fur. But rabbit fur is not durable and so it is unsuitable for overcoats.

We must earn foreign currency by exporting rabbit furs. The foreign currency earned by the pupils should be spent on obtaining equipment for their school laboratories. If the foreign currency which was earned last year has all been used, from this year the money which they earn for themselves by breeding rabbits should be used to obtain laboratory equipment for the senior middle schools.

Rabbit meat must be handed over to the county food-processing factories. Pupils will enjoy canned rabbit very much if they are given some when going mountaineering and camping. Rabbit meat should also be supplied to the People’s Army.

The LSWY and CU organizations should do all they can to create forests that are of economic value to the country.

In particular forests should be planted to provide paper.

The paper situation in our country is very serious. Many good novels have been written over recent years but not many of them have been made available to the pupils because of the shortage of paper.

An increase in paper production is very important in carrying out the cultural revolution. Even when a television service becomes available to the whole country at some time in the future, writing will still be important and novels will have to be published.

We are going to revolutionize paper production during the Second
Seven-Year Plan. In order to meet our growing needs for paper, we must produce at least 500,000 tons annually. To this end, we shall have to build a large, modern paper mill and, in addition, at least one medium-or one small-scale paper mill in every third county. It will be even better if there is one in each county. But there is no point in building any paper mills unless they can be supplied with sufficient raw materials.

When the November 18 Paper Mill starts production, it alone will require approximately 200,000 cubic metres of wood annually. We are planning to build another paper mill in Haeju, but raw materials are a problem. Originally, we thought that Ongjin could supply it with reeds, but reeds do not thrive on that peninsula. Rice straw and maize stalks are good raw materials for paper production but they will have to be used to make humus to help in our efforts to combat the severe effects of the cold front.

Wood is a good raw material for paper production. The world trend in paper production shows that wood is preferred to rice straw or maize stalks. If we are to increase paper production, we must establish a wide area of forests to produce the raw material for paper. From now onwards the LSWY and CU organizations must plant fast-growing trees in order to solve the problem of the raw material for paper production.

From my experience, the Pyongyang poplar is the tree that grows fastest. Pyongyang poplars were planted on either side of the Mangyongdae road about ten years ago. They are now very tall. Children must plant a large number of them near their schools and on the riversides and roadsides. North Phyongan and Jagang Provinces in particular must do this. There are many other varieties of fast-growing trees. Schools must consult the officials concerned and plant wide areas of fast-growing paper-producing trees.

Shrubs must be planted on low hills. Ordinary paper can easily be produced from shrubs and if bleach is provided, good-quality paper can be produced.

If the forests for producing paper are to be expanded, the problem
of seedlings must be solved. There are many areas of land that are suited to the cultivation of seedlings. Large areas of waste land can be found around the Chongchongang Bridge and on the estuary of the Taeryong River. If the members of the LSWY and CU reclaim this riverside land, they will be able to plant plenty of nurseries. Saplings seldom die when they are submerged during the rainy season. If you wash the sediment off the leaves when the flood has gone down, the seedlings will survive and grow well.

Extensive forests of oil-producing trees must be established. This is an important undertaking for the well-being of the future generations. The LSWY and CU organizations must review their work in creating these forests and speed up the work of planting forests of oil-producing trees.
LET US DEVELOP THE FISHING INDUSTRY
AND INCREASE THE CATCH

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of the Officials
of the Fishing Industry
February 14, 1978

A large amount of pollack was caught by our fishermen last winter. The catch is large every year, but last winter was an all-time high.

On behalf of the Central Committee of the Party, the Government of the Republic and on my own behalf, I would like to thank all the workers, technicians and office workers in the fishing sector for the great success they achieved in catching pollack last winter.

The development of the fishing industry is an important factor in improving the people’s diet. In order to improve the diet of the people, there are some problems that must be solved: first, the problem of cereals; second, the problem of vegetables; third, the problem of fish; and then, the problem of meat.

In our country full solutions have been found to the problems of cereals and vegetables. Now it is the problem of protein that must be solved.

The fastest and most rational way of solving this problem is to catch large quantities of fish. Our country is bounded by the sea on three sides, so it is much faster and more economical to solve the protein problem by developing the fishing industry than by developing livestock farming. Of course, meat is a source of both protein and fat. But it is not the only source. Fat can be obtained from
vegetable oil, and protein from fish. Eating fish promotes the metabolism and increases physical strength. When young people and students join the People’s Army, they grow taller and their bones stronger. This is because they eat a lot of fish and other kinds of nutritious food in the army.

Some years ago I saw a variety performance given by schoolchildren’s artistic groups from all parts of the country. The schoolgirls from Sinpho were taller and stronger than those from anywhere else. They were taller and stronger because they ate a lot of fish.

The Party has always paid close attention to the development of the fishing industry as a way of improving the people’s diet. But the work of the officials in the fishing industry is not efficient, so the catch has not increased although it could have done.

In the autumn of 1976 when I visited the east coast to give personal guidance, I studied the state of the fishing industry. Many of the fishermen were working for only three months a year and virtually wasting nine months. If they get used to doing nothing and do not put to sea, fishermen become lazy, get into the habit of loafing about and lose their revolutionary enthusiasm. Therefore, in order to eliminate this practice, at the Meeting of Activists from the Fishing Industry on the East Coast I stressed that the number of fishing vessels should be increased, and that these vessels should be equipped to perform all types of fishing operations so that they could fish all the year round. Nevertheless, the officials in charge of the fishing industry have not organized the work in real earnest to carry out this task. As a result last year, too, the fishermen on the east coast caught pollack for three months during the winter and did practically nothing for the rest of the year. The people in the fishing industry know nothing about catching fish in summer, although they do know how to catch pollack in winter.

The officials of the fishing industry have also failed to carry out the tasks which I gave them at the Meeting of Activists from the Fishing Industry on the West Coast last spring.

The officials and workers in the fishing industry must correct the
mistakes they made last year as soon as possible and develop the fishing industry to increase the catch.

The first thing they must do is fish all the year round, without ever leaving the sea deserted.

The people on the east coast must work hard to catch large volumes of fish in the summer.

Fishermen on the east coast used to fish only in winter, not in summer. They never dreamt of catching fish in March. In summer they fish only on the high seas, and not in the waters 100 to 150 miles offshore. So Japanese fishermen come to fish in our coastal waters. This is tantamount to losing domestic pigs while out hunting wild ones. The Japanese say that they catch 50,000 to 60,000 tons of fish in our coastal waters every year, but in fact you never know how much they have caught, perhaps hundreds of thousands of tons or even millions of tons. The Japanese are seeking permission to fish in our coastal waters, and recently they have said that they would send the Chairman of the Japan Socialist Party to approach us concerning a fishing agreement.

I have emphasized on more than one occasion that the officials in charge of fishing should study deep-sea fishing. But they have claimed there are no fish in the deep sea, and have not looked into methods of detecting shoals and catching the fish. They even altered the contents of the textbooks to concur with their opinion.

The officials in the fishing industry must stop being overcautious and conservative, and adopt a responsible attitude in organizing, directing and controlling summertime fishing on the East Sea from March onwards, and in this way increase the catch. This year they must promote large-scale fishing during March. Whether or not they can catch fish during March will only be decided if they actually go out to sea and try to catch them. If they sail 100 to 150 miles out to sea, they will find fish. It does not matter whether or not the haul of fish in March this year is good. Simply having a try and gaining experience would be a good idea.

Since summer fishing has never been organized on the East Sea, we have no clear idea of what kinds of fish are living in the East Sea and
what kinds of migratory fish visit it.

When the pollack season closes in February, the workers at the East Sea Fishery Institute of the Fishery Science Research Centre under the Ministry of Fisheries must visit the waters 100 to 150 miles from the coast and conduct a full-scale search for fish. If they make a sweeping search there, they will discover huge shoals of them.

The Ministry of Fisheries must ensure that two factory ships are sent out to the waters 100 to 150 miles offshore and that fishing boats and shoal detection vessels are sent out as well to find shoals and catch the fish. The shoal detection vessels must work near the factory ships and supply the fishing boats with wireless information concerning the location of shoals and the varieties of fish, the depth of the sea and the temperature of the water. Then, the fishing boats must set to work using gill nets, trawl nets and purse nets.

If the officials and men of the fishing industry on the East Sea bring in a large haul from the waters 100 to 150 miles offshore this summer and find the work rewarding, they will think twice about going out onto the high seas. It takes them more than ten days to reach the high seas, but only one day to get to the waters 100 to 150 miles offshore. If some five factory ships and several fishing boats operate together in these waters, they will be able to catch fish in large quantities. The Ministry of Fisheries and the provincial Party committees concerned must put together good fishing fleets and see that they fish in our coastal waters and on the high seas, in shallow and deep waters, inshore and offshore.

You must take steps to ensure that large quantities of fish are caught in the West Sea.

The West Sea is teeming with tiny shrimps, shrimps, sand eels, large-eyed herrings and other delicious fish.

When I visited Haeju to take part in a mass rally soon after liberation I had the chance to eat large-eyed herrings cooked by the local people. They were delicious. Upon my return to Pyongyang, I asked my uncle in Mangyongdae if there were a lot of these fish in the West Sea. He said, yes. Because of problems he had with the Japanese
who used to come to his house in search of me before liberation, he fled to Hanchon and started fishing. So he knew which varieties of fish could be found in large quantities in the West Sea.

On the west coast, inshore fishing must be developed to increase the catch of tiny shrimps, large-eyed herrings and other varieties of fish.

The fishing grounds in the West Sea are not far offshore, so the men will not have to sail very far to fish. But the fishing stations on the west coast send their ships only onto the high seas, even though the catch is always small. Some of their fishing vessels operate as far as the waters off Shanghai, China, but this only wastes oil. Therefore, at the Meeting of Activists from the Fishing Industry on the West Coast held last year, I criticized this practice and emphasized the need to develop inshore fishing.

In order to increase the catch from the West Sea, fishing bases must be set up near the fishing grounds, thus increasing the number of fishing days. If the men operate from these bases for a few months during the fishing season, they will be able to increase the number of days they are out fishing and catch greater amounts of fish. If the men are given two or three days leave after this period so that they can organize their household affairs, they will be delighted. However, fishing bases have not been developed. As a result, the men not only fail to catch large amounts of fish, but even suffer discomfort.

On the west coast, the fishing vessels spend more time on sailing to and from the fishing grounds than on actually catching fish. Last year I talked to the men at a fishing cooperative in Songnim, to those at the Sinuiju Fishing Station and to other fishermen on this coast. They said that they spent more time on journeys to and from the fishing grounds than on actual fishing operations, and added that they had little time to devote to fishing itself. According to a fisherman at the Songnim fishing cooperative, they spend two days sailing to the waters off Hanchon, catch fish for a day and then spend two days sailing back. If the tide is unfavourable on the return journey, they take three or four days, and this is a frequent occurrence. The men at the Sinuiju Fishing Station also spend two days on sailing to the waters off Cholsan, one
day on catching fish, and two days on returning. Once back at their
fishing stations the men stay there for several days, instead of
unloading and putting to sea again immediately. That is why, they say,
the number of days they spend fishing is small. At the Meeting of
Activists from the Fishing Industry on the West Coast, therefore, I said
that fishing bases should be established near the fishing grounds and
that the landed fish should be carried to the consumers by lorry.

The Party organizations and the fishing industry on the west coast
have taken no steps to establish and operate these bases. There is
nothing difficult in setting up fishing bases. A fishing base needs a
pier, salting tanks, a salt storehouse, and similar other things. In the
future fishing bases will have to be provided with refrigeration plants
and chipped ice mills. At present, the fish catch in the West Sea is so
small that very little of it needs refrigeration, so had these plants been
constructed, they would be redundant.

Fishing bases will also need a water supply and oil tanks for the
ships. The water should be obtained from reservoirs, and where there
are no reservoirs, wells will have to be dug. A few houses, similar to
those for farmers, where fishermen back from the sea can relax, clinics,
bathhouses and barbers’ shops will also have to be provided for the
fishing bases. Bathhouses should be equipped with shower rooms so
that a lot of people can clean themselves at the same time. As for the
barbers’ shops, some can be transferred from the cities. Shops should
also be built to sell soap, matches, cigarettes, toothbrushes, toothpaste
and other consumer goods to the fishermen. There is no need for dining
halls at the fishing bases. Since every ship has a dining room, the
fishermen can eat on board.

The Administration Council must provide the fishing bases with
lorries to deliver vegetables, food and other goods to the fishing
workers.

The fishing bases should also be provided with telephones so that
the men can keep in contact with their enterprises.

Approximately ten fishing bases must be established on the west
cost in line with the decision adopted at the meeting of the activists
from this region. They should be set up near Ongjin, Monggumpho and Unnyul in South Hwanghae Province, near Onchon, Jungsan, Sukchon and Mundok in South Phyongan Province, near Cholsan, Jongju, on the estuary of the Chongchon River, and on Sinmi Island in North Phyongan Province.

Factories and other enterprises must give active assistance to the work of building fishing bases on the west coast. If it is to catch a large amount of fish, the fishing industry needs the support of factories and other enterprises just as agriculture does. It is not right to ask for supplies of fish without supporting the work of building the fishing bases.

Once established, the fishing bases must be well run.

When the men of the fishing stations, fishing cooperatives and sideline fishing teams are out at sea fishing they must use the bases nearest to their fishing grounds. In this way the men will be able to concentrate all their efforts on fishing, and the disposal of the fish will be taken care of by the people at the bases.

A fishing base requires a base-master and a staff of several other people, and it must be managed by the system of self-balancing. A fishing boat must pay a fee to use a fishing base. The fishermen must pay for the services provided by the bathhouses and barbers’ shops. The fishing bases must comply with requests both for direct delivery to specified destinations and for consignment to shops and receive payment for the services and goods they provide. The fishing bases must dispose of the fish they receive from the fishing vessels in the same way that a wholesale agency operates. Thus they will be running their business on an independent basis.

The fishing industry on the west coast must take measures to provide work for the fishermen during the winter when the sea is frozen and fishing impossible.

As matters now stand, the fishermen on the west coast waste almost four months between the end of the summer fishing season and the start of the next fishing season. When the fishing season is over, the men should be given approximately one month of education and then
they should repair the fishing vessels, nets and other fishing gear. If they still have time to spare, further work should be found for them. Even during the winter the fishermen should be given work to do so that they do not simply loaf around. A man must work; nothing is more boring than having nothing to do.

The Second Economic Affairs Department of the Party Central Committee, the Administration Council and the provincial Party committees concerned must check up on the construction of the fishing bases and adopt any measures that are required as quickly as possible. In particular the chief secretaries and the secretaries for economic affairs of the provincial Party committees must assume direct responsibility for the construction of fishing bases.

In order to catch large amounts of fish, many modern fishing vessels must be constructed.

If we are to increase the fish catch from the East Sea, we must build fishing vessels that can work during heavy seas. Unlike the West Sea, the East Sea is often rough, especially in December. But we are not building vessels that can withstand heavy seas, so fishing stations on the east coast cannot work on the sea for about twenty days during the pollack season every winter. At a rate of 15,000 tons of pollack caught daily by the fishing stations on the east coast, 20 days of absence from work means a loss of 300,000 tons. That is why we must build many vessels that can fish even in bad weather when the seas are rough. The thousand-ton vessels are reasonably good, but I am not sure whether they can withstand heavy seas. Some years ago a 1,000-ton fishing vessel was built, but some officials of the fishing industry said that it was unserviceable even before it was used. Since then we have no longer built this type of vessel. By saying such a thing they showed that, like some farmers, they were conservative, not responsive to anything new, and clinging to outdated things.

While giving personal direction to the rural economy over recent years, I have found that whenever a new farming method is proposed, some farmers shake their heads and are reluctant to adopt it. They accept it only when the advantages have been demonstrated in practice.
The people of Hamgyong Provinces have been particularly obstinate; it took them four years to adopt one new farming method. The people of South Phyongan Province are a little ahead of others in introducing new farming methods. However they, too, refused for three years to accept the method of growing rice seedlings in dry-field cold-beds, and this caused us some difficulty. Last year, too, they raised rice seedlings in cold-beds drained by open ditches, instead of building underdrainage.

It has been claimed that the 1,000-ton vessel is unstable on rough seas, although it is capable of catching large amounts of fish. But it is the design that is important. There will be no problem if it is well designed. Nevertheless, 1,000-ton vessels probably are too large.

I think it would be best to build a large number of 400-hp fishing boats. Heavy seas in December prevented 400-hp vessels from going to fish for two days in 1973, for three days in 1974, for five days in 1975, and for three days in 1976.

It would be a good idea to build at least thirty or forty 400-hp fishing boats annually and to do this we must increase our capacity to build ships. The construction of these ships will present no great problem. We must ensure that a large number of them are produced, using the plate steel produced in our country.

The types of vessels that can withstand heavy seas should be determined after extensive discussions with the people of the sectors concerned. It is important to set correct guidelines for shipbuilding by making a close examination of the types and tonnages of the vessels that should be constructed. It is better not to have to scrap a ship after it has been built, so you must set correct guidelines for shipbuilding.

The head of a party delegation from Northern Europe visiting our country some years ago said that in his country once a ship was built it was used for a hundred years, and that there were still many ships there with hot-bulb engines. In that country the machine industry and the fishing industry have been developed, but they are still using fishing vessels equipped with outdated hot-bulb engines.

We shall also have to build 3,750-ton fishing vessels.
These vessels are needed for pelagic fishing. They are perfectly suited to sailing on the open sea.

If we build a large number of 3,750-ton fishing vessels, our fishermen shall be able to fish in the waters off other countries. We are asked by many non-aligned nations to send our vessels to their coastal waters and fish there. It will be of benefit to both countries if our vessels fish in their waters, which are teeming with fish, and we then give them approximately 30 to 50 per cent of the catch and bring back the remainder. The Prime Minister of one non-aligned nation says that he will visit our country this year. When he visits us, I intend to raise the matter of fishing.

It would be a good idea for the Wonsan Shipyard to specialize in building fishing vessels. The shipyard should build one or two 20,000-ton or 15,000-ton mother ships every year.

Mother ships should put to sea during the pollack season, for instance, so that smaller fishing vessels can rely on them and catch large amounts of fish. The mother ships should remain in certain areas and take on board the catches from the 400-hp fishing vessels. If the smaller fishing vessels have to return to their home ports with each load, the amount of fish they catch will not be large.

In addition to mother ships, barges should be built in large numbers to carry fish to the shore during the pollack season.

I have been told that a 300-ton barge has already been built at one shipyard. It should be motorized and converted by adding a captain’s cabin. There is no need for other cabins and saloons because it will not sail on the high seas, but will carry fish from coastal waters. If you build fish transporters, you should build 800-ton or 1,000-ton ones, rather than 300-ton vessels, so that they can endure even heavy seas.

The Ministry of Fisheries should also build a transporter and test it. If it proves successful, this type of ship should be commissioned.

Nothing smaller than a 400-hp fishing boat should be built for the fishing stations on the east coast. The 200-hp fishing boats now in use at these fishing stations should be withdrawn when they are no longer serviceable. Two hundred-hp fishing boats should be built for
small-scale fishing. These fishing boats are suitable for use by fishermen’s cooperatives.

Factories and other enterprises should also build their own boats and catch large amounts of fish as a sideline.

A small fishing boat with a crew of three, four, six, or eight people will be perfectly suited to fishing on the West Sea. This type of boat can be equipped with a 16-hp Jonjin tractor engine, a 28-hp Chollima tractor engine, a 75-hp Phungnyon tractor engine, or a 100-hp engine. Our country produces these 100-hp engines.

If plate steel is unavailable, wooden fishing boats should be built for the West Sea region. A well-built wooden ship lasts for 15 to 20 years.

The Ministry of Fisheries must build fishing vessels as planned this year, and these vessels must all be equipped with domestically produced engines.

The fishing boats at the fishing stations on the west coast should be motorized and modernized. This will make the fishermen’s work easier and increase the catch. At the Meeting of Activists from the Fishing Industry on the West Coast last year, I gave instructions that all fishing boats should be motorized and modernized, but in quite a few cases this has not yet been done. We must supply tractor engines for all the fishing boats at these fishing stations as soon as possible.

If we are to increase the fish catch, we must also improve fish detection.

The Ministry of Land and Maritime Transport has launched two modern shoal detection vessels. The Ministry of Machine-building Industry must provide them with electric wires, engines, electric motors, and the other equipment and materials needed so that these vessels can be finished and turned over to the Ministry of Fisheries by March, and used for detecting shoals from April onwards.

The Ministries of Chemical and Light Industries and other ministries and state commissions concerned must also concentrate on supplying the materials needed to build shoal detection vessels.

The shoal detection vessels operating on the West Sea should be
The Ministry of the People’s Armed Forces must help in detecting shoals by making aircraft available. I think it advisable to keep the aircraft at one airfield on constant stand-by so that they can fly to the fishing stations on the east coast when called.

We must provide the various types of fishing gear and the modern scientific and technical equipment needed for fishing.

The supply of such things to the fishing industry is not adequate at present. The fishing industry on the west coast in particular is not being provided with enough equipment. One must not simply tell people to catch more fish without supplying them with the fishing gear and scientific and technical equipment they need.

Nets and other types of fishing gear should be produced in our country if possible, but if necessary they should be imported. The number of fishing vessels operating on the West Sea has greatly increased. So we shall have to import nets to meet demand even though it means spending foreign currency. For the east coast fishing industry we shall have to import nets and other items of fishing gear.

Only nets which cannot be woven in our country should be imported, and for those which can be woven domestically, the thread alone should be imported. Since there is a net factory in our country, there is no need to spend a lot of foreign currency on importing nets which can be produced domestically. If we import the thread and weave it into nets, we shall save a great deal of foreign currency.

The Ministry of Light Industry must produce nets with a small mesh for catching tiny shrimps, shrimps and sand eels in the West Sea.

The Hamhung Woolen Textile Mill must be supplied with sufficient coal so that it can produce plenty of cut vinalon yarn.

Fishing vessels must be equipped with wirelesses. Then, they can communicate with each other and increase the catch, cooperating like naval fleets. The fishing industry should be provided with a communication system and the fleets organized to operate like a naval fleet.

Larger fishing vessels should be equipped with wirelesses so that
they can communicate with their home bases. The machine industry must supply the fishing stations with as many wireless sets as they request. The wireless used by the companies of the People’s Army will suit fishing vessels.

Netsondes will have to be imported. A price of 3,500 pounds sterling for one is not too high. We should import approximately 100 of them. We should also produce them ourselves.

The Administration Council must take measures to appropriate one million pounds sterling for the fishing industry so as to import nets as well as other kinds of fishing gear and scientific and technical instruments. This year the fishing industry must earn sufficient foreign currency to cover its expenses and pay back the state treasury.

We must not only supply equipment and materials to the fishing industry, but also improve the work of inspecting their care and management.

As matters stand at present, inspection work in the fishing industry is unsatisfactory, so that its equipment and materials are not being looked after properly. The State Inspection Commission of the Central People’s Committee and the inspection commissions of the provincial people’s committees must carefully inspect and strictly control the fishing industry in the management of its boats, fishing gear, refrigerators and storehouses.

The Fishing Policy Guidance Section of the Second Economic Affairs Department of the Party Central Committee must also step up its supervision and control of the fishing industry.

To proceed, fish processing must be modernized.

By doing so you will be able to provide the people with more delicious fish products. Fish contains a variety of nutrients. So, if you eat fish that has been processed well, you will find that it is better than meat.

However, our officials are not showing enough concern for the modernization of fish processing. They allow the fish to be processed haphazardly and then supplied to the people. We are catching a lot of fish. So, if we modernize fish processing, this will mean that the
people’s diet is more varied. That is why we must study modern methods of fish processing and produce a variety and a large quantity of tasty, processed fish.

Pollack must be well processed.

Pollack is a very good fish. Because it contains less fat and more protein than other fish, it is not only palatable but also good for the health. In addition it contains a great deal of calcium. Its roe and entrails can be pickled, and its liver processed into food and medicine. There will be no waste. Its smell is not unpleasant. From olden times, therefore, Koreans have offered it at the altar. It seems that our ancestors also liked pollack.

Because it does not smell unpleasant, the pollack is good as an ingredient in dumplings and as a sausage. Pollack sausage can be produced by making a stuffing of its liver, milt and meat after removing its entrails, and it is delicious. Well processed pollack is an excellent snack for the children at creches, kindergartens and schools, and is also good for travellers.

However, pollack are not being well processed, although we catch hundreds of thousands of tons of them annually. The only thing our people know about processing them is to boil them into soup, pickle their roe or dry and souse them. Even pollack roe is too salty and hot when it is pickled, and this is no good for the health. The fishing industry must modernize pollack processing and produce palatable processed food from the large quantities of pollack caught in our country.

Sand eels, shrimps and shellfish must also be well processed.

These fish are rich in protein, calcium and various other nutrients.

The world trend at present is to eat a lot of sand eels, shrimps and shellfish. If you put some sand eels or shrimps into cabbage soup or spinach soup when it is boiling, you will find that it is extremely delicious. Dried shellfish fried with radish is also very palatable.

However, our workers simply pickle shrimps and shellfish and this is how they are supplied to the people. Certainly our people like pickled fish, so certain quantities must be pickled. But on its own
pickled fish cannot make the people’s diet varied. Shrimps and shellfish should be processed into a variety of delicious food, rather than simply being pickled.

Large-eyed herrings should also be well processed.

A large-eyed herring is a small, fatty fish and it is extremely delicious. The fishing industry should can them on an experimental basis. Next year the Kim Chaek Iron Works will start producing tin plate. We shall then be able to produce as much canned fish as the people want.

Large quantities of tiny shrimps should be pickled. They make good food, containing a lot of calcium, and they are appetizing. With a side-dish of unripe red peppers dipped in pickled tiny shrimps you can eat a bowlful of rice. Pickled tiny shrimps can also be used to flavour soup if they are added while the soup is boiling, or to flavour kimchi if they are mixed with the seasoning when the kimchi is pickled. Formerly, the people living in the Taedong River basin preferred to eat pickled tiny shrimps rather than bean paste. They can be eaten as a substitute for bean paste. In the future we should build a factory for pickling tiny shrimps or simply pickle them in jars or pots.

We must make a careful study of shark’s liver.

The information available says that the liver of a blue shark accounts for 25 per cent of its body weight, and that at least 75 per cent of the liver is oil. Over ninety per cent of this liver oil is squalene, a good medicine. Squalene from the liver oil of the blue shark is said to be highly penetrative, and has reviving, sterilizing, neutralizing and paralysing effects. It is especially effective in combating tuberculosis, haemorrhoids, liver cancer, asthma, high blood pressure, hepatitis and various other ailments. To a certain extent it can also prevent senility, and can stop hair turning grey. The literature on Oriental medicine also says that shark’s liver is effective in eliminating toxins from the human body.

I have been told that abroad injections and a variety of medicines are made from squalene obtained from sharks’ livers and are used in treating diseases. But our doctors and scientists have not studied the shark’s liver.
Medical scientists must conduct an intensive study of shark’s liver and produce a variety of medicines from squalene. If they do this, they will be able to wipe out hepatitis here, as well as several other diseases. We are now extracting liver oil and using *insam* and antler to make injections. So, if we obtain squalene from sharks’ livers, we shall be able to produce as much good medicine as we need.

We must adopt measures for storing fish. This is as important as catching fish. If we make thorough preparations for keeping large quantities of fish in storage, we shall be able to maintain a regular supply to the people, without running out of stock throughout the year. Unless we take measures to store them, our efforts to catch a lot of fish will be wasted. If we are to process the catch in good time, we must ensure that it is put into storage.

As matters now stand, however, the fishing industry is not taking any such measures. There are a dozen refrigeration plants in our country, each with a capacity of 10,000 tons, but these are not enough to handle the whole volume of fish caught.

In order to treat each haul as soon as it is brought in, we must study how fish can be stored without being gutted. The information available tells us that in one country saturated brine is used in storing fish. The Ministry of Fisheries has suggested building outdoor salting tanks and storing whole fish in them. This is similar to using saturated brine. Apparently, by using this method the fish can be salted quickly and the salting process can be mechanized. But we are not absolutely certain of this method because as yet we have not experimented with it.

The method of preserving fish in saturated brine has many limitations and shortcomings. The method is suitable for small, private fishing enterprises in capitalist countries. There would be problems if our large, state fishing enterprises were to adopt this method. If whole fish are put into salting tanks, they may rot. At a certain consistency the salt solution encourages the breeding of bacteria, so I have been told. One particular type of bacteria is said to breed better in one or two per cent salt solution than in water. Therefore, by using saturated brine, large quantities of fish cannot be salted at a time. If this method is not
used properly, it may destroy all the protein, fat, carbohydrate and vitamin contained in the fish. If we are to preserve whole fish in large quantities by this method, we shall need a lot of cement, steel, timber, electric motors, pumps and other equipment and materials. Salting 200,000 tons of fish will require at least 200 salting tanks each of a 1,000-ton capacity. The construction of these tanks will require tens of thousands of tons of cement alone. Hundreds of motors, pumps and agitators will be needed to stir the fish and change the salt water to prevent the fish rotting. As you can see, using saturated brine is not a particularly good way of preserving fish and does not warrant widespread introduction.

If we adopt this method and it proves unsuccessful, all the fish, which cost us such great efforts to catch, may rot, and that would mean the waste of a great deal of equipment and materials.

After the war we built many mackerel salting tanks, but they could not be used. At the time the senior officials of the fishing industry said that large shoals of mackerel were coming to the waters off our coast and suggested building these mackerel salting tanks. So I saw to it that the tanks were built so that our people could be supplied with mackerel, even though the shortage of cement was causing problems in housing construction. But the following year mackerel stopped coming to the waters off our east coast, and the salting tanks became totally useless. Quite a few of these tanks will still be in existence.

The Ministry of Fisheries suggests building a large number of salting tanks. They must not do this. If you build a large number of them when you are not yet sure of how to preserve fish in saturated brine, you may be unable to store a large amount of fish and this will mean that equipment and materials are wasted, like they were when building the mackerel salting tanks after the war. If you want to employ this method, you should do it on an experimental basis.

Gutting and salting fish in wooden tubs is a traditional method practised from olden times in our country. But it is impossible not only to treat large quantities of fish by that method but also to obtain all the labour needed to do the gutting. One winter several years ago, the catch
of pollack was so large that even Members of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee and Vice-Premiers of the Cabinet were mobilized to ensure that all the fish were gutted. In winter we still mobilize many people to gut pollack, but we cannot afford to carry on doing so.

We are absolutely certain that freezing and storing fish is better than preserving them in salt. If we freeze them and keep them in storage, we shall be able to supply large amounts of the fish caught in winter to the people, without any of the fish rotting, and supplies will last until the summer fishing season. We shall also save a great deal of the labour needed for gutting. The daily catch of pollack is 15,000 tons. If this amount is quick-frozen and stored as soon as the fish have been caught, we shall be able to supply the people with good fish all the year round, without stocks running out. We have so far frozen and stored approximately 140,000 tons. Frozen fish are just as good as fresh fish.

If fish are quick-frozen in wicker baskets, this will be convenient both for rail transport and storage. There are many cold stores in our country and if we use them to store quick-frozen fish, we shall be able to store considerable amounts. In those areas where there are no cold stores, frozen fish can be carried into cool forests and left there in piles, or else halfway cold stores can be built in wooded areas to store them. If blocks of ice are put in a pile of sawdust in a shady place, they do not melt until May. If frozen fish are piled in a cool place and covered, they will not melt either. If frozen fish are carried to somewhere on the Masik Pass or on the Yangdok Pass and piled there, they will stay frozen for a long time. It would be a good idea to construct wooden buildings there and pile the frozen fish in them.

The workers in the fishing industry must build good quick-freezing plants so that they can freeze the fish as soon as it is landed.

There will be no problem in building quick-freezing plants because cement and steel are available for the buildings and we can make quick-freezers. It would also be a good idea to convert two of the existing refrigerating plants into quick-freezing plants, each with a 10,000-ton capacity. You can do this by installing quick-freezing
equipment. It takes four hours to quick-freeze fish, so six batches can be frozen every day. If you set up two 10,000-ton capacity quick-freezing plants, you will be able to freeze 20,000 tons of fish a day. This will enable you to quick-freeze all the fish caught daily no matter how large the catch.

I advise designing a modern 2,000-ton capacity quick-freezing plant; two of them should be built this year and three or four more at a later date. This year a 2,000-ton quick-freezing plant should be built either in Yanghwa or in Tanchon where large amounts of fish are landed. There is a large industrial population in the Tanchon area and the coastal waters there are teeming with fish, so it would seem reasonable to build it there. If you build a 2,000-ton capacity quick-freezing plant in the Tanchon area, transport the frozen fish from there to a mountain in the Komdok valley and pile them at its base, they will keep until May.

The design for the quick-freezing plant must be good. All the operations at the plant, from putting the fish into containers to releasing the frozen fish, must conform to a conveyer system. Fresh fish from the sea are clean, so they do not need washing. When fish are packed, the containers must be shaken so that the fish settle and the containers are completely filled. Once packed, the fish should be carried into the quick-freezing rooms by conveyer belt or by car. Fish will stay in the quick-freezing rooms for four hours and then they will be removed and replaced by a new batch.

In the quick-freezing plant, the temperature should not be lowered in a succession of stages, but all at once. It is best to freeze fish at least at 40 degrees below zero. This will kill any bacteria in the fish and stop them rotting.

The refrigerators installed at the quick-freezing plant should be large. We are not yet manufacturing large refrigerators in our country. If we can make them for the quick-freezing plants, this will be excellent. The chemical industry also needs a lot of large refrigerators. The machine industry must work on the development of large refrigerators.
The Administration Council must hold detailed discussions on the design and construction of the quick-freezing plant.

The Party organizations concerned must also pay attention to the work of fish processing. They must wage an uncompromising ideological campaign against those who leave the catches to rot or waste.

Next, we must develop shallow-sea culture.

Kelp and brown seaweed are very good for the health. I have been told that people who eat a great deal of them do not tend to grow senile and they live for a long time. Kelp and brown seaweed are particularly good for the growth and health of children. If we process them well and supply them to kindergartens and creches, the children will grow healthy and strong. These seaweeds are good for the treatment of a variety of ailments. If women eat them after childbirth, their bodily swelling goes down quickly. From olden times Koreans have eaten a great deal of them.

The Japanese, too, started eating kelp a long time ago. In the past the Japanese imperialists occupied Korea and plundered our country of large amounts of kelp, brown seaweed and other marine resources. During our anti-Japanese armed struggle we found processed kelp among the goods we captured from the Japanese imperialists. At that time the “punitive troops” carried with them an envelope containing finely cut, dried kelp mixed with sand eel meal and powdered bean mash. They used to eat it after immersing it in cold water or boiling it, making either a cold or a hot soup.

The people in the West have now realized that kelp and brown seaweed are good for the health and have started eating them, so I am told.

On both the east and the west coasts of our country there are many places which are suitable for the cultivation of these seaweeds. However, the officials of the seafood production sector are concerned only about fishing and not about these seaweeds. As a result, they are not producing a great deal of them. That is why we can only supply them to women immediately after childbirth and not in sufficient
quantities to ordinary people.

The officials in charge of seafood production must direct great efforts to the cultivation of kelp and brown seaweed and produce 1,000,000 to 1,500,000 tons annually.

The production quotas you assign must not be set too high out of your subjective desire, simply because the conditions favour the cultivation of seaweeds. You must see to it that centres for cultivating them are developed and that production is increased gradually. If you cultivate one million tons, this will produce 100,000 tons of dried products.

If we are to increase production, we must make investment in developing centres for their cultivation. Some people consider that seafood and agricultural production can increase without the need for any investment. They are grossly mistaken. In this world you get nothing out if you put nothing in. Over recent years the crops in many countries have failed and the result has been a food crisis. But we have had a bumper harvest every year. This is because we have been paying close attention to agriculture and concentrating our investment on this sector. We must also invest in seafood farming and in this way we shall increase the output of kelp and brown seaweed.

Good summer kelp nurseries should be established. The yield of kelp can be increased by raising the seedlings in summer.

We must supply the rafts and ropes that are needed for the cultivation of kelp and brown seaweed. Facilities where these seaweeds can be dried should also be provided. Drying them on the damp seashore is difficult. Therefore, the cultivation centres should be provided with drying facilities, the capacities of which will have to be increased as output increases in the future.

In addition to developing cultivation centres, the cultivation of these seaweeds should be studied carefully.

We must cultivate the sea squirt on a wide scale.

It belongs to the hemichordata family and lives on rocks at the bottom of the sea and in similar environments. So it is quite possible to cultivate it. I have been told that it thrives in the East Sea.
Potentially it is a good source of foreign currency. The information available says that abroad it is widely processed into food and that it is very expensive. Alcohol made from it costs one dollar a glass.

In future we must cultivate sea squirts on a wide scale and export them. They are not suitable for mass consumption. An analysis shows that they contain lysine, threonine, valine and other essential amino acids which make up protein. These seem to be the main properties of the sea squirt. In addition, it contains copper, zinc, manganese and various other microelements which are good for the health.

Our people display no enthusiasm for studying food, so they do not even know whether the sea squirt is edible or not. Therefore, they throw away any sea squirts which happen to be found among the kelp they harvest.

Foreigners want to buy sea squirts from us, so we must cultivate plenty of them and export them. By doing so we shall earn a sizable amount of foreign currency. From now onwards, we must cultivate them and collect those which grow naturally and export them in large quantities.

Sea squirts should be well processed. We could learn how to process them by visiting other countries. But some of our people may have experience of processing them. If so, it would be better to learn from these people.

There should be a few members of staff at the Ministry of Fisheries to take charge of shallow-sea culture.

To proceed, the sale of fish must be organized properly. Fish should be sold to the people at seafood shops and direct sales shops. In socialist society shops are supply agencies that serve the local people. So, if fish are to be distributed equally among the people, the fish must be sold through the single system of these shops.

If the seafood shops and direct sales shops keep a good stock of fish, the people will be able to buy them freely, without queuing. Some years ago, the Kangson Steel Complex obtained several tons of fish every day which it sold to its workers. So, there was no need for the customers to stand in queues, nor was there any practice of backdoor
selling, nor was there anyone complaining that fish was unavailable. If sufficient amounts of fish are on sale at these shops, the management at fishing stations and fishermen’s cooperatives will not have to run about distributing fish to institutions and enterprises, nor will there be any practice of taking credit for supplying fish or of showing favour. The only way of distributing fish fairly is to sell them through these shops.

If the officials of the fishing industry allocate fish indiscreetly to certain institutions that request it, there will be no end to undesirable practices. From now onwards strict discipline must be established, discipline under which fish are sold through the single system of seafood shops and direct sales shops.

The fish caught by the fishing stations should be sold at seafood shops and direct sales shops, and the fish caught by fishermen’s cooperatives and by sideline fishing teams at county seafood shops and seafood direct sales shops attached to factories and other enterprises. The fish caught and delivered to seafood shops by the cooperative farms which are engaged in both agriculture and fishing should not be taken into account.

Hostels should draw up contracts for fish deliveries with seafood direct sales shops, and households should buy fish at seafood shops.

If we supply 100 grammes of fish per head of the population every day this year, this will mean a daily supply of 500 grammes for a family of five. This is reasonably good.

In future the seafood direct sales shops under the Ministry of Fisheries should belong to both the Ministry of Fisheries and the Commission of Public Welfare. The former should supply fish to the shops, and the latter should take charge of distribution.

We must set appropriate prices for fish and processed fish. If the prices are not fixed properly, it may affect production. Formerly the people of Onchon, Hanchon and many other places on the west coast produced a great deal of pickled fish for the market. At that time, however, price assessors fixed the price of pickled fish too low, without really considering the matter. For some time, therefore,
no one produced pickled fish for the market. The production of pickled fish requires a lot of labour and seasoning. However, price assessors fixed the price of pickled fish arbitrarily at 15 jon a kilogramme simply because one kilogramme of unpickled fish cost 35 jon. They did not calculate accurately the costs of producing pickled shellfish, tiny shrimps and various other pickled fish. So, I criticized the price assessors and had the prices of pickled fish raised a little.

The current price of one kilogramme of fish is 35 jon. This is too low.

The price of one kilogramme of chicken is 4.8 won. So the price of fish is less than one tenth of the price of chicken. If we compare the nutritional values of fish and chicken, the nutritional value of fish is considerably more than one tenth of that of chicken. If the price of fish is to be reasonable, it should be at least one won. But now we can hardly raise the price of fish simply because it is low.

Furthermore, you will have to revise this year’s fishing plan.

You have planned to catch 290,400 tons in the first quarter of this year, 282,000 tons in the second quarter, 278,600 tons in the third quarter, and 759,000 tons in the fourth quarter. The figure for the first quarter seems a little too low. It is absurd that you can catch only 12,000 tons during March. You will be able to catch more than 12,000 tons of large-eyed herrings and tiny shrimps alone, because March is the season for these fish in the West Sea. In my opinion, if you work hard you will be able to catch approximately 30,000 tons just in March. The officials in charge of the fishing industry must make a careful estimate of how much fish can be landed during March this year.

This year’s plan envisages catching 10,000 tons of large-eyed herrings. That should be altered to approximately 25,000 tons. The West Sea is teeming with large-eyed herrings.

As for sand eels, the estimated catch of 12,000 tons this year seems fairly reasonable. Last year 6,000 tons of this fish were caught. If you catch 12,000 tons this year, you will be doubling the amount caught. Sand eels are abundant in both the East and West Seas.
No amendment should be made to the 95,100 tons of anchovies planned.

Your plan of catching 5,000 tons of shrimps is also fairly reasonable. If you catch 5,000 tons of shrimps this year, you will be trebling the catch compared to last year.

As for tiny shrimps, you should plan to catch approximately 50,000 tons of them. Last year the catch of tiny shrimps was only 6,000 tons. If you meet the 50,000-ton quota, it will be a great achievement. The season for catching tiny shrimps is the longest of all the fishing seasons on the West Sea. So you will be perfectly able to catch approximately 50,000 tons. Tiny shrimps are extremely delicious.

The planned quota for seerfish must also be raised a little. Last year only 900 tons of seerfish were caught. If you are provided with enough nets this year, you will be able to catch some 10,000 tons, not just 5,000 tons. You say that only 7,000 tons are possible because these fish are more difficult to catch than others. This is an overcautious attitude. But I cannot order you to catch 10,000 tons because you, who are the people who will catch them, say that you can catch only 7,000 tons. This year a catch of approximately 7,000 tons will have to be envisaged.

The filefish is very palatable. This fish is scarce in our West Sea; it is said to teem in the waters off the Chinese coast. It does not matter whether you catch a great deal of it or not.

You have planned to catch 4,000 tons of gizzard shads. This amount is too small. There are plenty of them in the West Sea, and I do not understand why you are not intending to catch a lot more. If you cannot catch them in large quantities because nets are unavailable, you should still think of increasing the catch even if it means requesting more nets. Is it right simply to do nothing? Keeping your problems to yourselves, instead of raising them and trying to solve them, displays a lack of enthusiasm.

You must catch a lot of gizzard shads, too. They abound in the West Sea and are extremely delicious. If you do your work well, you will catch not just 4,000 tons, but several times more than that this year.
Generally, the fishing quotas for this year are too small. You must reexamine them and increase the amounts as you think appropriate.

The target for summer fishing in the East Sea is set at 557,000 tons. The amount to be caught by pelagic fishing should not be included in this target figure. If the estimated 200,000 tons from pelagic fishing this year is deducted from the figure for summer, 357,000 tons will remain as the target for summer fishing in the East Sea. This is quite low, but it will still represent a great increase on last year’s catch. Only 306,000 tons in all were caught in the East Sea last summer, including the catch from pelagic fishing. The fishing grounds in the East Sea are more extensive and the seafood resources there are richer than in the West Sea. So the people on the east coast ought to catch three to five times more fish than those on the west coast. However, I do not intend to assign a higher summer fishing target to the East Sea.

The best thing for the people on the east coast to do is conduct all-out summertime fishing operations according to this year’s plan. Fishing fleets on the East Sea should be organized for gillnetting, seining and even longline fishing from March onwards.

The officials of the General Bureau of East Sea Fishing must travel on board detection vessels to direct fishing operations instead of sitting in their offices.

I intend to appraise the fishing industry on the east coast on the basis of the results of its summer fishing operations this year.

This year’s planned fishing quotas for the West Sea must be raised a little. Last year the catch from the West Sea was small because of the shortage of fishing vessels and fishing gear. If they are provided with at least 300 additional vessels and with sufficient nets and other kinds of fishing gear this year, and if their fishing bases are developed so as to increase the number of fishing days to the maximum, the people in this region will be able to catch three or four times more fish than they did last year.

Nevertheless, the senior officials of the General Bureau of West Sea Fishing are going to allow the fishing to be done using outdated methods this year as they did last year, instead of thinking of
increasing the catch by developing fishing bases on the west coast and increasing the number of fishing days. They lack Party loyalty, the working-class spirit, and the spirit to serve the people. They lack the spirit to accept and implement Party policy without question and have not established a correct ideological attitude towards increasing the catch for the people. If they had Party loyalty, the working-class spirit and the serve-the-people spirit, they would not have set such low fishing targets for the West Sea this year. The senior officials of the General Bureau of West Sea Fishing are not working hard enough on implementing Party policy. They have become lazy and persist in the use of outdated methods.

The fishing industry will also be directed properly if young officials who have been educated at university under our system and are solidly equipped with the Juche idea take the helm.

The Administration Council must discuss in detail the planned fishing quotas for the West Sea with the officials concerned and revise them and submit them for approval.

The fishing sector must establish strict discipline under which the planned assignments are carried out without fail, in addition to drawing up a reasonable revised plan.

Just as the industrial sector is called strictly to account when factories and other enterprises have failed to carry out their production quotas assigned under the state plan, so the fishing sector must be brought to account if it fails to fulfil its planned targets. The state plan is a law, and no one has the right to violate it. Whichever sector has failed to implement the state plan must naturally be held responsible before the Party and the state and called to legal account.

The fishing sector must not simply meet the planned targets by catching pollack in large quantities in the winter after doing nothing during the summer, as has been the practice in the past. It must work hard to carry out its quotas for every ten days, for every month, and in terms of every variety of fish.

The fishing industry must review its fishing operations in detail every ten days and every month. Each workteam, each workshop, each
enterprise, each province and the Ministry of Fisheries must review fishing operations. The central authority must review the productive efforts of the fishing industry every ten days and every month and report the findings to me. This will ensure that the fishing industry establishes strict discipline under which the plan can be carried out.

In previous years the fishery sector has frequently submitted false reports by exaggerating the size of the catch. This practice must be eliminated.

Provincial, city and county Party committees must improve their guidance of the fishing industry.

Because these Party committees neglect the guidance of the fishing industry, innovations are not being made in this sector, the officials in charge lack the spirit to accept and implement Party policy without question and the tendency towards idleness has not been eliminated. The provincial, city and county Party committees must strengthen their guidance of the fishing industry and ensure that this sector carries out Party lines and policies promptly.

My original intention was to convene a national agricultural conference this year, and then hold a conference of the activists from the fishing industry in March in order to review how the tasks put forward at the Meetings of Activists from the Fishing Industry on the East and West Coasts have been implemented and to encourage the senior officials and men of the fishing industry to achieve success in summer fishing this year. But the fishing industry has carried out few of the tasks which I assigned. So it would be pointless to convene a conference of activists from the fishing industry this year. It would be better to hold it next year once the fishing plan for the first year of the Second Seven-Year Plan has been carried out by putting greater energy into fishing operations this year.

The fishing industry must increase the catch by carrying out the tasks I have given at the meetings of active fishing workers and at this consultative meeting of fishery officials.
ON EASING THE STRAIN ON RAIL TRANSPORT

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of the Officials of the Rail Transport Sector

March 13, 1978

Easing the strain on rail transport is a very important factor in the development of the national economy.

As I always say, the railway is the artery of the country and stands in the forefront of the national economy. Solving the problem of rail transport is the key to achieving steady production in all sectors of the national economy and to fulfilling the Second Seven-Year Plan. But rail transport is not satisfying the rapidly-growing needs for transport of the national economy. Because the railways cannot carry raw materials and other essential supplies to factories and other enterprises on time, production is being restrained in no small measure.

Last year the railway sector conducted a “200-day battle for a revolution in transport”, but rail transport is still under considerable pressure. This year we organized another “200-day battle for a revolution in transport”, starting on January 5. If we fail once again in our attempt to ease the strain, the country may be disgraced. Whether or not we ease the strain on rail transport affects the dignity of the country.

The railway sector must accelerate the revolution in transport and eradicate the strain on rail transport once and for all.

In the first place, it must work hard to electrify the railways as soon as possible.
At the First Session of the Sixth Supreme People’s Assembly, we set out the principal task of the Second Seven-Year Plan: it is to consolidate the economic base of socialism and improve the standard of living of the people by making the national economy Juche-oriented, modern and scientific as soon as possible.

If the railway sector is to make transport Juche-oriented, it must electrify the railways. Our country is not as yet producing crude oil. Therefore, if we use diesel engines, instead of electrifying the railways, we have to import oil and we will inevitably become dependent on other countries for it. This is contrary to the Party’s policy on making the national economy Juche-oriented.

Some officials have suggested importing diesel engines. If we do so, crude oil will pose a problem. If other countries refuse to sell oil to our country after we have imported diesel engines, the consequences will be serious. Although we have used many diesel engines on main lines in the past, we should only use them on lines within factory compounds. We should retain only the number of diesel engines which would be needed should war break out. In a war, diesel engines are better than electric locomotives because electricity lines can be cut by the enemy’s air-raids. In the event of a war, diesel engines are desirable. The oil needed for the diesel engines can be imported. We must keep some diesel engines in reserve by producing a number of them ourselves and importing sufficient to make up for any shortage. With an adequate number of diesel engines, we shall be perfectly able to ensure wartime transportation.

In a war steam locomotives cannot be used effectively, either. They need frequent supplies of water and are fuelled by coal. That is very complicated work. Steam locomotives should be used on the branch lines in North Hamgyong Province and other parts of the northern region. Where it is unavoidable, some may be used on main lines, but they should work mainly on branch lines and in factory compounds. Steam engines are outdated. They should be used on branch lines and shunting lines rather than on main lines.

If the railways are electrified, they can dispense with the use of coal
briquettes. These briquettes are needed by metallurgical works and many other factories, but not enough of them are produced because the briquette works are not supplied with enough coal. We have been short of coal since liberation. By using briquettes for steam locomotives a great deal are wasted. If we export the coal usually fed to steam locomotives, this alone will allow us to import all the copper needed to electrify the railways.

The electrification of the railways also makes the repair of locomotives easier because only electric locomotives are used. As matters stand at present, the railway sector is using both electric and diesel engines, not to mention steam engines, so that quite a few complex problems are arising in repairing them.

The electrification of the railways will enable us to increase the volume of goods transported, while reducing the running hours.

An electric locomotive can pull a load of up to 3,000 tons cross-country and still pull heavy loads even up a steep gradient. But a steam locomotive can pull only 500 tons up a steep slope. As our country is mountainous, it is an enormous advantage to electrify the railways.

We must complete the electrification of the railways as soon as possible, although some copper is still needed for the project, and we must carry out the Party’s policy on developing unit train transport, the joint operation of different transport services, and container transport, so as to increase the volume of goods transported to the different economic sectors.

The electrification of the line between Kilju and Hyesan must be finished quickly. This project is near completion, but electric wires have not been laid because of a lack of beams, I have been told. So I gave instructions that they should be supplied as soon as possible.

The Sariwon-Haeju line must be electrified. This is necessary so that cement can be carried quickly from the Sunchon Cement Factory to the port of Haeju.

The Pongsan-Kowon and Kusong-Kujang lines must also be electrified. These lines are not used a great deal at present. They must
be electrified quickly. Once it has been electrified, the Kusong-Kujang line will be good for transporting coal. If the Pongsan-Kowon line is electrified, all the lines linking the east and west of the country will have been electrified, and then the volume of goods transported can be increased. If a unit of the People’s Army is assigned to the project on this line, the work will be finished in approximately six months.

The Pyongyang-Nampho, Sinanju-Manpho and Jongju-Chongsu lines will also have to be electrified. The work on the Sariwon-Unnyul line can wait for a while because the volume of goods carried on this line is not large.

The sector concerned must study and determine the order of priority for the electrification of these lines and carry out the work quickly.

At least 500 to 600 kilometres of railways must be electrified annually. Then, the whole project will be completed within a short period. We must see that all the men working on the project display a high degree of revolutionary enthusiasm and creativity and increase the speed of their work.

The electrification of the railways requires the production of a large number of electric locomotives.

The number of these locomotives now being produced is too small. We must produce at least 50 or 60 annually. If the officials concerned organize the work carefully, they will be able to tap the enormous reserves for the production of electric locomotives. If the Kim Jong Thae Electric Locomotive Factory organizes its work shifts rationally and mechanizes and automates production processes, it will be able to increase its output of electric locomotives.

A certain amount of the mica needed for this purpose will have to be imported. The amount needed annually in the production of electric locomotives is only a few dozen tons, and importing this amount will not cost us a great deal of foreign currency.

Apparently the Kim Jong Thae Electric Locomotive Factory is in urgent need of 700 men. Discharged soldiers should be sent to the factory.

In order to electrify the railways, we must solve the problem of
copper. Copper is the most important single item in electrifying the railways. Because of the acute copper shortage we cannot electrify more of the railways, although it would be possible otherwise.

If copper production is to be increased, the smelteries must be fed with adequate amounts of copper-ore concentrate. There are large heaps of the concentrate at copper mines, but it is not carried away promptly so copper production cannot be increased. I telephoned the senior official of the Party Committee of Ryanggang Province, asking him how copper-ore concentrate was being produced. He said that there were large piles of it at the copper mines, but it was not carried away promptly. I told him that Ryanggang Province was partly responsible for the delay in the transportation of the concentrate, although the railway sector was mainly responsible. I asked why he was not speeding up the electrification of the railways in his province. He replied that he would do so as soon as the thaw set in.

In order to solve the problem of the copper that is needed in the electrification of the railways, we shall have to import a certain amount of copper-ore concentrate. There are many countries that want to sell us some. So, if we develop our foreign trade, we shall be able to import as much as we need by exporting cement and similar goods. Since there are smelteries in our country, we can mass-produce copper if copper-ore concentrate is available.

We must solve the copper problem once and for all, and ensure that the copper needed for the electrification of the railways is supplied.

Approximately three tons of copper is needed per kilometre of railway to be electrified. If we supply approximately 3,000 tons to the Ministry of Railways, a large section of the rail network can be electrified.

Next, we must build considerably more waggon.

We have laid the foundation for increasing waggon production. If we expand and make effective use of the waggon production bases already in existence, we shall be able to produce approximately 6,000 heavy-duty waggons annually. This is a good number. An annual production of 6,000 heavy-duty wagons is more than enough to meet
the needs of the railway sector, and will also mean that the old waggons can all be replaced with new ones.

An annual production of 5,000 waggons would be fairly good. If we are to ease the strain on rail transport, we must think and act boldly, instead of working lackadaisically, taking only stopgap measures.

You have planned to be producing 3,500 waggons annually by the end of the Second Seven-Year Plan. This will not solve the acute problem of rail transport. The railway sector must amend this plan and considerably increase waggon production.

In order to boost the production of waggons, it is necessary first for the June 4 Rolling Stock Factory to increase its capacity to produce waggons. There are a large cupola and a wide area of building space at this factory, and the technical skill of the work force is high. Therefore, it will be perfectly able to increase its production capacity. It is economically much more sound to increase the capacity of this factory than to build a new rolling stock factory. An annual production of 3,000 waggons at the June 4 Rolling Stock Factory is inadequate. This factory has not been supplied with enough materials and it has never been able to run at full capacity, so there is no knowing how many waggons it could actually produce. If it is supplied with sufficient materials, if its production processes are mechanized, semi-automated and automated so that serial production can be introduced, and if its management is improved as required by the Taean work system, this factory alone will be able to produce 4,000 waggons annually.

The Ministry of Railways should summon the management of the June 4 Rolling Stock Factory to a meeting and discuss those problems that must be solved in order to increase waggon production.

The Chongjin Railway Factory must also produce waggons.

Because the June 4 Rolling Stock Factory has been the only works to produce waggons in our country, we intended to build a waggon works at Kangdok, Chongjin, by importing the equipment that would be needed. But we had to abandon the idea due to unavoidable circumstances. Since the equipment needed to produce waggons has not been imported, the Chongjin Railway Factory has to produce
waggons. This factory should be provided with the equipment it needs to manufacture waggons so that it can produce approximately 2,000 waggons annually.

If waggon production is to be increased, we must set up an axle-steel forging base and a rubber-hose production base under the Ministry of Railways.

At present, the Ministry of Railways cannot forge enough axle steel to meet its own needs and has to be supplied from elsewhere. If the ministry is dependent on others for these supplies, it will be unable to ensure steady production. In our country there are only a few large metallurgical works, and it is impossible for them to produce all the different kinds of steel needed by the many sectors of the national economy. However much you may criticize the officials of the metallurgical works for their failure to produce sufficient steel, it will get you nowhere because the metallurgical works are overburdened. If the Administration Council assigns quotas to the factories and other enterprises and to locally-run steel works that are equipped with cupolas, they will be able to produce a large amount of steel.

The Ministry of Railways should build its own forges and produce axle steel to meet its own needs.

The Ministry of Railways also needs its own base for the production of rubber hoses. The Pyongyang Rubber Factory is the only factory now producing rubber hoses, so everyone demands rubber hoses from it. This factory alone cannot meet the requirements of the different sectors of the national economy for rubber hoses. The Ministry of Railways must build its rubber-hose production base, displaying to the full the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance, and obtain raw materials and other essential supplies to meet its own needs.

The Ministry of Railways must, without fail, be supplied with pig iron. The metallurgical works are using all their pig iron for the production of steel, so that different sectors of the national economy are not provided with the pig iron they need. The Administration Council must investigate how much pig iron is used daily by the Ministries of Railways and of Machine-building Industry and by the
Agricultural Commission and ensure that definite amounts of the pig iron produced by the metallurgical works are supplied to the Ministries of Railways and of Machine-building Industry and to the Agricultural Commission. If the metallurgical works fail to produce and supply pig iron to these ministries and this commission, they will be assessed as not having carried out their production quotas.

The railway sector must be provided with tin, antimony and other raw materials and essential supplies.

We must also take measures to produce heavy-duty rails ourselves. In view of the fact that we are using a large number of heavy-duty waggons, we must consider producing heavy-duty rails ourselves by every means possible, instead of thinking simply of importing them. The Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex is now working on the installation of a heat-treatment furnace and a rectifier. When this project is completed, we shall be able to produce heavy-duty rails.

The Ministry of Railways must hold detailed consultations with the Ministry of Metallurgical Industry concerning the capacity of the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex to produce heavy-duty rails.

If we are to electrify the railways and use heavy-duty waggons on a wide scale, we must mass-produce concrete sleepers.

In view of the shortage of timber in our country, a long time ago I stressed the need to produce concrete sleepers and concrete props as an alternative to wooden sleepers and wooden props. We can produce as much cement as we need, so we must switch over to concrete sleepers and concrete props. The present capacity of the Sunchon Cement Factory alone is three million tons annually. The Administration Council suggests constructing two more kilns at this factory, but there is no need to do so. Even now production at this factory is being held back because its output is not being carried away quickly enough. If two more kilns are built, the shortage of transport to carry away the cement from this factory will present itself as an unresolvable bottleneck.

I think it would be better to extend the Chonnaeri Cement Factory rather than expand the Sunchon Cement Factory. Anthracite and plenty
of limestone are available on the east coast. By extending the Chonnaeri Cement Factory at some time in the future, we shall be able to produce a large amount of cement there.

Concrete sleepers, made from high-strength cement, are good. Concrete sleeper works must be supplied with the high-strength cement produced by the Sunchon Cement Factory. The Ministry of Railways has ensured that 8 mm high-strength steel bars, not 4 mm high-strength wires, are used in making concrete sleepers. That is splendid. The Ministry of Railways should be supplied with 8 mm high-strength steel bars by steelworks and not try to produce them itself to meet its own needs. It would be better for steelworks to produce steel bars for the railway sector.

Furthermore, in order to ease the strain on rail transport, the work must be better organized. If rail transport is better organized, a greater volume of goods can be carried to the different sectors of the national economy even under the present conditions and unaffected by natural contingencies and seasonal factors. We must be prepared for any contingency, particularly natural disasters caused by the cold front. The United States and other capitalist countries are creating a fuss about disasters caused by the cold front. Last winter the severe cold and heavy snow caused severe disruption in the United States. Traffic throughout the country came to a standstill and a state of emergency was declared in many states. Many countries around the world are creating a fuss about the effects of the cold front, and no one can predict with assurance that our country will be completely free from natural disasters. Even now rail transport here is badly affected every year by the cold front in the rainy season and during the winter.

The Ministry of Railways need not keep too many locomotives in reserve to provide against seasonal factors and natural disasters. It is not a bad idea to have locomotives to provide against an emergency, but keeping reserve locomotives does not provide a complete solution to the problem. In order to overcome seasonal factors and natural disasters, the railway sector must organize transportation better and increase the amount of goods carried to factories and other enterprises
so that these industrial establishments can keep a stock of goods. If they have nothing to fall back on should a natural disaster or other contingency occur, they may find themselves in a state of chaos. Thermal power stations are not yet generating electricity on a steady basis, and this is due mainly to the fact that they have no stocks of coal.

I receive a number of reports every day about the production of electricity. The thermal power stations have difficulty generating on a steady basis because the railway sector delivers barely enough coal to them to meet their daily needs, far from sufficient to allow them to keep some in stock.

From now onwards, the railway sector must transport greater amounts of goods to the factories and other enterprises in spring, summer and autumn, when the conditions are favourable for transportation, so that industry can keep goods in reserve. Suppose the amount of goods the railways are required to carry daily is 240,000 tons. Then, the railways must transport 250,000 to 280,000 tons daily rather than just 240,000 tons. The factories and other enterprises must build warehouses to keep the surplus. If they do this, they will have sizable amounts of raw materials and other essential supplies in reserve. Factories and other enterprises must keep reserves of these materials sufficient for at least 15 days, or for one month. Then, they will be able to maintain steady production even if rail transport is interrupted during the rainy season or in the winter.

Export goods must also be transported well in advance so that some of them can be kept in reserve. These goods are under contract with other countries and they must be delivered on time. As matters stand at present, we are keeping no exports in reserve so, if rail transport is interrupted because of some accident, our export trade is badly affected.

The Administration Council and the State Planning Commission must plan rail transport in detail by taking into consideration seasonal factors and ensure that greater amounts of goods are transported during spring, summer and autumn.

The “200-day battle for a revolution in transport” this year must be
reviewed in detail. We are going to review it at a plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee early in August this year. The Ministry of Railways must begin now to compile in detail the problems to be solved in rail transport during the Second Seven-Year Plan and submit the plan to the plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee.

All the workers, technicians and office workers of the rail transport sector must motivate themselves once again and press forward the “200-day battle for a revolution in transport” and make great, new advances in rail transport.
The Ministry of Electric Power Industry has submitted a written suggestion on the possibility of producing electricity by making use of excess heat from boilers at factories and industrial furnaces. This is a very interesting idea. The ministry says that if these boilers and furnaces are equipped with generators they will produce a great deal of electricity from their excess heat. A 35-ton boiler is said to be capable of generating 3,000 kilowatts. This is splendid.

Increasing the production of electricity is very important in carrying out the Second Seven-Year Plan with success. It is only when a satisfactory solution is found to the problem of electric power that all the sectors of the national economy can ensure that production is on a steady basis.

The effects of the cold front are so severe that our hydroelectric power stations alone are no longer able to generate sufficient power. That is why we have constructed many thermal power stations over recent years. These are now playing an important role in solving the problem of power. But the situation is still grave. Therefore, it is very important to generate electricity by using excess heat from
industrial boilers and furnaces.

There are many such boilers and furnaces in our country that can be used to produce electricity.

The steam pressure produced by the boilers at some factories and other enterprises is too high, and it has to be reduced by decompressors before it is used for production and heating. Having to reduce the high steam pressure obtained by burning large amounts of coal is tantamount to throwing away a lot of precious coal. If we fit these boilers with generators, we shall be able to obtain a great deal of electricity and still ensure satisfactory production.

There are many large furnaces for industrial use in our country. If things go well, they will generate a great deal of electricity. Take a coking oven for example. If the coke is cooled dry, not with water, excess heat from producing it can be used effectively and the quality of the coke can be improved as well.

If we take into account the factory boilers and industrial furnaces that are to be constructed and also the boilers for heating the urban communities in addition to the existing factory boilers and industrial furnaces, we can find enormous potential for generating power.

We are planning to provide Anju, Phyongsong, Nampho and some other cities with several 35-ton boilers each for heating. Then, they can be fitted with generators. If the boilers for heating cities have generators, they can not only heat but also produce electricity. Since our country produces large quantities of steel pipes, central heating can be provided for urban institutions and blocks of flats. Central heating that relies on a few large boilers is more economical than using many small boilers to heat each building separately. If urban communities use many small boilers scattered across the city, as they do now, a great deal of labour is required and a lot of coal is wasted. There is an old saying that the more furnaces you have, the more fuel you need. If an urban community uses many boilers, smoke from their chimneys and coal ash pollute the town and make the environment unhealthy.

Generating electricity from the excess heat from factory boilers and industrial furnaces is also necessary to get the officials of the economic
sectors into the habit of managing the national economy carefully.

One of the most serious shortcomings revealed among these officials is their slapdash management of the nation’s economy. The land area of our country is small, yet its population is large. In our country all the children and students, or over half the population, are brought up at state expense and given free education. We have a large army and the number of civil servants is by no means small. In such circumstances, we will not survive unless we manage the nation’s economy carefully.

It is very important for the officials to rid themselves of the habit of working in a slipshod manner and to cultivate the habit of working painstakingly.

In evaluating the work of officials, I consider it very important whether or not they keep themselves, their houses and their workplaces clean. My inspections of units of the People’s Army have convinced me that a unit whose commander is neat, tidy and efficient is well ordered and well disciplined, and that a unit whose commander does not shave regularly and neglects his appearance is indisciplined and inefficient. The situation at thermal power stations in factories also shows that those under the care of diligent managers are well run, and that those in the charge of careless managers are not well run.

The capacity of our thermal power stations in factories is quite large, and they are fairly well run. Although I am satisfied with them, they must be run even better so that they work at full capacity.

These power stations are not operating at full capacity partly because their boilers and generators are old, partly because the capacities of the boilers and generators are not well balanced and also because some of their generators are not used. Economic management workers must see to it that the boilers and generators at thermal power stations in factories are well maintained and repaired and that any idle generators are put into operation so that these power stations generate electricity at full capacity.

Agricultural production in our country has been increasing rapidly over recent years. This can be attributed to the fact that, taking
agriculture in hand ourselves, we have introduced new farming techniques, improved farming methods and established discipline, as well as urging the workers in the agricultural sector to work carefully and raise crops strictly in accordance with the technical regulations.

Take tobacco cultivation as an example.

When I was on a tour of inspection in North Hamgyong Province in 1976, I discovered that the tobacco yield per hectare there was scarcely one ton. So I went into details and found that they were planting 12 seedlings per phyong. At the time agriculturists were saying that the local farmers were right. Sowing 12 tobacco plants per phyong is very backward. According to my information, 34 to 37 tobacco plants have long since been sown per phyong abroad.

If our agriculturists had studied the matter properly, they would have discovered their mistake and corrected it immediately. Although the economic situation in our country in the days immediately after the armistice was difficult, I had one million books imported and a large library established. But scientists seldom go there; only students go there to study. As they do not study, agriculturists are not well informed of world trends, nor do they put forward any acceptable ideas for the rapid development of agriculture.

Since last year, 37 tobacco plants have been grown per phyong in North Hamgyong Province. Thirty seven plants per phyong means more than 110,000 plants per hectare, whereas 12 plants per phyong amounts to only 36,000 plants per hectare. So you can see how great was the loss of tobacco we incurred by growing 12 plants per phyong in the past.

This example alone shows how slapdash the officials in charge of agriculture have been in the performance of their duty. In our country, where the area of cultivated land is small, it is impossible to eat and survive unless we increase the production of cereals by growing crops carefully, even should we sow as many plants as possible.

The same is true of the industrial sector.

Management at factories must acquire the habit of working carefully. Then, they will be able to eliminate any waste of manpower
and materials, discover new potentials, and increase production with the equipment, materials and manpower they have.

In order to generate electricity by using excess heat from factory boilers and industrial furnaces, we must ensure that turbines, generators and other items needed for the purpose are supplied.

To this end, we have to organize the domestic production of generating equipment on the one hand, and on the other we must take measures to import some. By relying on both sources, the project will go without a hitch.

The production of turbines and generators must be undertaken by the Taean Heavy Machine Works, which is now under construction.

The Minister of Machine-building Industry suggests that these turbines should be produced by the Ryongsong Machine Factory, but I cannot agree with him. If we give this factory the task of producing turbines when it has no turbine shop, the production of custom-built equipment will have to be suspended.

The Ryongsong Machine Factory does not have the capacity to produce turbines. Whenever the Administration Council needs to have custom-built equipment produced, it summons the manager of this factory, with the result that he attends meetings all the time and is not managing the enterprise properly. The senior officials at this factory have become more greedy for fame and have got into the habit of taking things easy. We must not praise this factory any more. It gained its reputation by making 6,000-ton and 3,000-ton power presses and an eight-metre turning lathe and producing custom-built equipment for the February 8 Vinalon Factory. Since then, it has done nothing worthy of merit. It is now on the downgrade. Few of the machines produced by this factory over recent years have operated smoothly from the start. The continuous sintering furnace was built a few years ago, but it still cannot be operated properly. The large drill broke as soon as it was installed. The Ryongsong Machine Factory has done great harm to its reputation.

The Ryongsong Machine Factory must not be told to produce turbines. It is the only factory that produces important custom-built
pieces of machinery in our country. We must no longer give it other assignments. We must ensure that it makes good custom-built equipment. I have already made this clear.

We must speed up the construction of the Taean Heavy Machine Works so that the project is finished as soon as possible and then the factory can produce turbines and generators.

The construction of the Taean Heavy Machine Works is not progressing well at the moment. No one is clearly in charge of the project, and no one is controlling and directing it properly. The officials are halfhearted about the project and are not pushing it forward. It is three years since the construction of the factory was started, but it is still dragging on. The Administration Council must take measures so that it is finished quickly.

It must, first of all, concentrate construction forces on the major projects, instead of dispersing them. This is the way to finish a project quickly. The weather is not cold now; this is a good season for construction work, so we must concentrate our efforts on the major projects and finish some of them within the first half of this year.

In order to accelerate the construction of the Taean Heavy Machine Works, sufficient cement, steel and other building materials must be supplied.

I have been told that the building has not been roofed because tin plate is unavailable. Roofing does not necessarily require tin plate. Sheet iron will serve the purpose. Roof the building with sheet iron, spread minium over it and then paint it. If you do this, it will look good, be rust free, will not leak, and will withstand vibration.

The Kim Chaek Iron Works must produce 2-mm sheet iron for roofing the Taean Heavy Machine Works.

I am not going to give the Taean Heavy Machine Works a production quota this year. This year it must draw up designs, produce wooden moulds and make various other technical preparations, and then initiate a production plan next year. From next year onwards it must produce 3,000-kW and 5,000-kW generators, as well as turbines.

If you do not gain experience of making generators and turbines,
you will never be able to make them properly. Continual practice in public speaking makes a man an orator, ceaseless writing makes him a good author and tireless training in marksmanship makes him a crack shot. In the same way, you can make good machines only through practice at machine building. Making generators and turbines is not very difficult. If you go at it with determination, you will be perfectly able to make good ones.

The Taean Heavy Machine Works may have a problem with technical staff for manufacturing turbines. It would be a good idea to select people experienced in this work from among the men of the Ryongsong Machine Factory and form a technical workforce.

Producing boilers will pose no great problem. A boiler is a connection of pipes. Therefore, if sufficient pipes can be supplied, we shall be able to produce as many boilers as we need. We must establish a system for producing 35-ton boilers and mass-produce them.

The Ministry of External Economic Affairs must import some items of generating equipment. This year 21 small generators must be imported. Apparently 92,000 tons of coal can be saved by providing 21 small generators for some factory boilers and industrial furnaces. That is a big saving.

All the factory boilers and industrial furnaces capable of producing power must be provided with generators and must generate electricity.

Now I shall touch on the subject of geological prospecting.

We must strengthen the ranks of the geological prospecting sector by appointing able-bodied young men.

We must conduct wide-scale geological prospecting. A short time ago some people in Unpha County, North Hwanghae Province, struck a coal seam while sinking a well. This shows that geological prospecting was not done thoroughly in the past. The coal seam is located not far from the Pongsan Coal Mine which existed during Japanese imperialist rule. Immediately after liberation, because the coal briquette works had suspended operation, it was very difficult to run trains. So we exploited the Pongsan Coal Mine to our benefit for two or three years. After that I told the officials of North Hwanghae
Province to organize careful prospecting in the vicinity of Pongsan and reminded them about the matter on several occasions, but they have still done nothing. If they had done so, they would have discovered the nearby coal deposits a long time ago.

If we conduct geological prospecting carefully, we shall discover deposits of coal and many other minerals. In the past people said there were no deposits of manganese in our country, but according to reports manganese has been discovered in South Hwanghae Province, although the quality is not high. Currently we are importing gypsum, but we have discovered deposits of it in our country. If we make prospecting more efficient, we shall be able to obtain a greater variety of minerals ourselves.

If we are to conduct wide-scale geological prospecting, we must have more prospecting workers. I said a long time ago that the number of prospecting workers must be increased to at least 80,000, but the number at present is scarcely 50,000. We must send the necessary additional manpower to the geological prospecting sector and also supply it regularly with equipment.

At some time in the future the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee will consider the work of geological prospecting. The Administration Council must draw up a plan for appointing more geological prospectors and for supplying them with the equipment they need, and submit it to the meeting.

To proceed, I shall talk about health care.

As matters stand at present, health services are inadequate. I have been told that rural hospitals are not being supplied with enough medicine and good medical equipment. Although we have criticized the health service on more than one occasion and adopted corrective measures, no notable improvement has been made as yet. So, we are going to examine closely how medicines and medical equipment are being produced, discuss the matter at a meeting of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee, and then take practical measures.

Even people in the counties talked loudly for some time about
making such things as X-ray equipment, but nowadays there is no such talk and things have become quiet.

If the work is properly organized, medical appliances can be made by any factory in our country. In particular, those factories where the technical level is high can make a few pieces of medical equipment if they are given the assignments. But the Ministry of Public Health does not organize this kind of work. As a result, hospitals are not being supplied with sufficient small items like disinfectors.

Not enough medicines are available for the hospitals.

There are many large pharmaceutical factories in our country. The production capacity of the aspirin factory, for instance, is very large. If this factory is well run and produces a large amount of aspirin for the export market, we shall be able to import medicines which we do not produce domestically. This will be a considerable help in solving the problem of medicine. If we produce medicines in large quantities and export them, we shall also earn a lot of foreign currency. Our officials, however, never think of doing this; they cannot even ensure the production of medicines to meet the needs of our own people.

It seems to me that the production of medicine has become more inefficient since the pharmaceutical industry was put under the control of the Ministry of Public Health. The output of penicillin is low, and other kinds of medicine are not being produced properly. As a result, hospitals sometimes run out of medicine to treat a cold, I have been told. On my visit to North Phyongan Province last summer, I inspected the Sakju County hospital and discovered that medicine was in short supply and the medical appliances there were not good.

Hygiene and the prevention of disease are also being neglected.

Long ago measles disappeared in our country, but through the neglect of anti-epidemic work measles was allowed to infiltrate into a part of North Phyongan Province from abroad last year. This situation meant that the children of the province could not participate in the national art festival for children held in Pyongyang last year.

In order to improve health care, we must first make radical changes in how medicines and medical equipment are produced.
We must put great efforts into the pharmaceutical industry and increase the production of medicines, particularly those that are needed in large quantities.

In addition, it is important for the medicines to be well packaged. Medicine is for the people, so it must be packaged neatly and attractively. The same medicine looks good if it is packaged well, and looks bad if it is packaged badly.

I have stressed on many occasions the need to improve how medicines are packaged, but these instructions have not yet been implemented properly. The packaging of medicines is still very poor. Foreign demands for our penicillin and streptomycin are great, but we cannot sell them because the bottles are no good. There are bottle factories and skilled workers in our country, so why can they not make good bottles? If only officials pay attention to this matter, they will be able to produce excellent bottles. We must modernize the packaging of medicines even if we have to spend some foreign currency to import packaging equipment.

High-quality plating is important in the production of medical equipment. The designs of medical appliances produced domestically are fairly good, but they are not attractive because the quality of the plating is poor. Their foreign counterparts are more attractive because they are well plated. Medical appliances, like medicine, are used in the treatment of people, so they must appeal to the eye.

At the planned meeting of the Political Committee, we are proposing, before the start, to show officials every single medical appliance produced in our country. We must help them to appreciate the importance of medical equipment and then speed up production. If different sectors tackle the task and produce a few items each, they will solve the problem of medical equipment.

In future, the plating of medical equipment should be undertaken by the plating works that is to be built, and the production of stainless steel and other kinds of steel needed in the production of medical appliances must be undertaken by the sector concerned.

We must revolutionize the production of medicines and medical
equipment during the Seven-Year Plan. If we rely on the industrial base of our country in tackling this task, there will be no problem that cannot be overcome.

We must make innovations in the pharmaceutical industry and in the production of medical equipment; this is the way to give full play to the advantages of the system of free medical care. However good the system of free medical care we have established may be, the working people will be unable to benefit from it fully unless sufficient medicines and medical appliances are provided.

We must develop traditional Korean medicine.

Recently I went through some information from abroad and found a prescription for longevity apparently submitted by a man who is one hundred and twenty years old. I showed it to some of our doctors, but they could not understand it clearly. So I told them to discuss it with those who specialized in Korean medicine. They found that all the ingredients of the medicine could be found in our country. Our health workers have neglected the study of Korean medicine, so they are ignorant of this sort of thing.

Traditional Korean medicines have been used widely in our country from olden times. We ought to encourage their use in every way in the future, too.

They are very effective when the diagnosis is accurate and the prescription suits the physical attributes and ailment of the patient. A few doses of Korean medicine very quickly cure bad digestion.

In order to ensure that the prescription is correct, modern and traditional medicine must be combined. When examining their patients, doctors of Korean medicine judge the cases mainly by taking the pulse. It is impossible to diagnose diseases and prescribe correctly simply by taking a pulse. Therefore, modern methods of testing blood and urine and measuring blood pressure must be employed. This is essential for a correct diagnosis.

Traditional Korean medicines have a tonic effect and can prevent disease. Modern medicines have scarcely any protective and tonic properties. The vitamin content is the only major protective property of
modern medicine, and most of the rest is disinfectant.

We must mass-produce traditional Korean medicines and use them widely. A Korean medicine pharmacy has now been established in every county, but not much traditional medicine is available. These medicines must be produced in large quantities and put on sale at the Korean medicine pharmacies.

We must see to it that health foods are mass-produced.

In our country there are many types of food which are effective in preventing and curing disease.

Western people are now studying why Orientals look younger for their years and live longer. They are said to be examining the Oriental diet in particular. Most Korean people eat bean mash rather than milk, and still they are healthy. That is because bean mash contains a great deal of amino-acid protein. Bean mash contains nothing harmful to the health, but milk contains a lot of animal fat which is not very good for the health.

Foreigners study the good aspects of our country, yet some of our officials tend towards sycophancy and try to copy Western things. We must not worship foreign things. We must work hard to preserve and develop our own things, our diet included.

There is plenty of seafood in our country, such as kelp, sea cucumber, laver and brown seaweed. These foodstuffs are very effective in preventing and curing disease.

Kelp is very good for man’s health. From olden times, Korean people have eaten a great deal of kelp. I have been told that kelp eliminates noxious substance from the human body and prevents cancer.

Foreigners know that it is good for the health and take a little of it at a time as a medicine. Many years ago, when I met the Head of State of one country, I saw him taking some sort of black tablets after each meal. I asked him what they were, and he told me that they were kelp. Foreigners take kelp as medicine, but from olden times Koreans have eaten it as a soup or fried.

You say that at least 1.2 million tons of kelp can be obtained from
our waters annually, so we must gather a large quantity of it for the people. We must also study further how to process it into food and develop this processing method. Apparently in some countries tea is made from kelp and children’s food from its meal.

Sea cucumber is also good for a man’s health. The East Sea of our country is rich in it. Sea cucumber is scarce in other countries, and not many people can afford to eat it. In capitalist countries only the rich can afford it, not the ordinary people. I have been told that one country imports it from us and serves it only to its most distinguished guests.

We must also produce laver and brown seaweed in large quantities. Laver is palatable and good for the health. Brown seaweed is very effective in the prevention of endemic diseases. In some districts brown seaweed is supplied only to women who have just given birth. We must produce large quantities of it so that it can be supplied to everyone. If you establish brown seaweed farms, you can produce a large amount of it by laying ropes to help it grow.

We must also mass-produce fish meal. For our children to be taller, they must be fed a lot of fish meal and a variety of other seafoods.

Sand eels and tiny shrimps are also good for a man’s health. These fish contain a lot of calcium, protein and other nutrients. But the people of North Hamgyong Province do not favour pickled tiny shrimps because they do not realize that these are good food. It is necessary, therefore, to publish plenty of articles on food and make information on food widely available through the media.

The Administration Council must work out measures for implementing the instructions I have given today and put them into effect one at a time.
Comrades, today I am going to play you some tape-recorded information about one country’s economy and technology. Although it may contain things you already know, I think it will do you good to listen to it.

Since the whole world is now experiencing a fuel crisis, other countries are working very hard to make economies in their use of electricity, coke and fuel oil and to make use of excess heat. But still nothing is happening in our country. A few days ago the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee adopted a resolution to strengthen the campaign for economizing on fuel and electricity. But this is not progressing well. Prompt measures should be taken to economize on fuel and electricity and make use of excess heat.

After listening to this recorded information about that country’s economy and technology today, you should take it into account when organizing scientific and technical seminars by sectors which deal with the problems of economizing on electricity, coke and fuel oil and of using excess heat; that is, separate seminars on economization in the use of electricity, on that in the use of coke, coking coal and fuel oil and on making effective use of excess heat. If scientists and technicians are allowed to discuss freely at these seminars, various good scientific and technical ideas will emerge.
First of all, you must hold a scientific and technical symposium on the economic use of electricity and launch a campaign for making economies in its use.

We anticipate that electric power will continue to pose a problem in the future, too. Since the influence of the cold front will last, we must build a lot of thermal power stations, and this will take some time. Even though power stations will be built according to a plan over the next few years, their total capacity will amount to no more than a few hundred thousand kilowatts. The amount of electricity required by the new factories that will be built during the same period far exceeds that. In order to meet our needs for electricity, therefore, we must not only build power stations to increase the amount of power generated but also work hard to economize on electricity. No matter how many power stations we may build, they will be of no use if electricity is wasted wantonly. We would be pouring water into a bottomless jar.

The most important factor in economizing on electricity is for those domains which use a lot of power to work particularly hard to make economies. Needless to say, lighting should also be used economically in houses and cities. But that is a mere trifle. The greater part of electricity generated in our country is being used by industry. That is why the chemical industry and other sectors which consume a lot of electricity should campaign harder for economization.

By introducing a variety of methods for industry to use less electricity, the developed countries are now making great economies. We should conduct a general investigation into the chemical industry which produces carbide, caustic soda and ammonia, and other industries which use large amounts of electricity and we should take measures for more economy there. Even rich countries with a well developed economy are making efforts to use less power, so, our country which is not so rich in resources should fight to make economies, shouldn’t it?

In order to make large economies in our use of electricity, we should apply strong sanctions against any waste of electricity, while, at
the same time, starting a technical innovation movement for using less electricity. Although many people are talking about the need to economize on electricity, merely shouting slogans will not bring success. You must not emphasize economization on power in word only, but should keep people informed of the advances in technology and experience so that they apply them. This is the way to achieve wide-scale economization on electricity.

Data reveals that if, in the production of carbide, the humidity in the anthracite is decreased a little, a lot of electricity can be saved and that removing impurities from unslaked lime, a raw material for carbide, can also reduce the consumption of electricity considerably. Apparently, if carbide furnaces are made airtight and the gas collected from them is used to preheat the infusing raw materials, a great deal of electricity can be saved. But our officials have taken no steps for using less electricity by investigating these methods; they halt the carbide furnaces simply because the supply of electricity is slightly reduced.

Since carbide is a principal raw material for our chemical industry, if carbide furnaces are brought to a standstill, other chemical factories cannot operate properly. There are carbide furnaces at the February 8 Vinalon Complex, the Sunchon Nitrolime Fertilizer Factory and the Chongsu Chemical Factory. They are not fully operational because of the power shortage, and as a result, production is suffering at other chemical factories. The present shortage of carbide is a hindrance to the production of vinalon and nitrolime fertilizer and the regular operation of polyvinyl chloride factories.

The metal industry, too, is making no effort to economize on electricity. I was told that it had been saving a great deal of electricity in electric furnaces for some time by preheating the raw materials, so I even sent my thanks. But now this preheating method is not being applied anywhere. Instead of applying this method to economize on electricity, steel plants have fixed the consumption of electricity per ton of steel at a high level and are congratulating themselves, claiming that they have not exceeded this standard and that they have saved so much electricity. However, this does not mean they are economizing.
Even though they do not exceed this high standard of electricity consumption per ton of steel, they are still using too much electricity in many cases.

It is of no use simply to fix the limit of electricity consumption without taking effective measures for making economies. This limit must be fixed only after steps have been taken to economize on electricity. If you set it without making any preparations, it is only natural that you will exceed it. Therefore, you must adopt a variety of technical measures to save power.

Great efforts should be made to economize in the use of coke and coking coal.

There are only two major iron works in our country which use coke and coking coal. If senior economic officials make sure that the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex and the Kim Chaek Iron Works adopt a variety of advanced techniques to use coke and coking coal economically, it is quite possible for them to solve the problem they have with these fuels. But they have not done this. Even though they are unable to study new technology, they should still be able to introduce technology that has already been tested.

At present various methods to save coke and coking coal are being tested and used in production abroad. Apparently coke can be saved simply by increasing the humidity of the air which is blown into the furnaces. According to reports, in one country the humidity of the coal is being reduced before it goes into coke ovens in order to raise productivity and economize on coking coal and in another country the coal is preheated to raise the productivity of its coke ovens and, moreover, it is mixed with other low-coking coals, even as much as 50 per cent. If such methods are applied to blast furnaces and coke ovens, production plans can be fulfilled with the same amounts of coke and coking coal that are used at present.

Data shows that advanced techniques, if applied in the production of pig iron, can lower the standard of coke consumption per ton of pig iron by 300 to 335 kilogrammes. If we can lower this standard in the production of pig iron to this extent, we will have no problem in
producing 5 or 6 million tons of pig iron every year with the coke we use now.

The scientific and technical data available in our country shows that it is a good idea to preheat the air before blowing it into blast furnaces or to blow pulverized coal into them. Nevertheless, senior economic workers have not taken any positive measures for introducing such methods.

I am told that many experiments have been conducted on blowing pulverized coal into blast furnaces, but it was pointless making these experiments if the results have not been put into practice. Technical tasks should be assigned so that the results can be used in production after they have been confirmed through experimentation. In the past, if factories and other enterprises failed to carry out the technical tasks they were assigned, we considered they had not fulfilled their plans and took the matter very seriously. But recently they have been showing indifference to technical tasks and not fulfilling them because control has not been strict. From now on, strict discipline should be established so that technical tasks are given and fulfilled without fail.

It would be advisable to hold a scientific and technical seminar on economization in the use of coke and coking coal at the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex or the Kim Chaek Iron Works. The seminar should be a wide-ranging discussion on the techniques that will have to be introduced by the iron works in order to save coke and coking coal, and the results should be reported to the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee. The Political Committee will receive the report and then adopt measures for making economies.

A scientific and technical seminar should also be held on the matter of using excess heat.

A few days ago I spoke about the need to use excess heat to generate electricity. It should be put to many uses.

One country is said to utilize excess heat three or four times. In capitalist countries industrialists make use of it several times as a way of making more profit. In socialist society, where all the wealth of the country is the common property of the people, excess heat should be utilized more effectively than in capitalist society. To spend wealth
wantonly in this society on the pretext that it is the common property of the people is not a communist attitude.

Utilizing excess heat is a matter of particular importance. It would be fine to use excess heat just once or twice, instead of three or four times like in other countries. For the time being, it would be fairly good to use the excess heat just once, instead of wasting it.

Efforts should also be made to solve the problem of fuel oil. The world is now undergoing a fuel crisis, and our country, too, is short of it.

In order to find a solution to the fuel problem, it is imperative to make more use of the railways and accelerate the electrification of them. In the past when we used petrol like water, we tended towards using motor vehicles for transportation, but this era has passed. Now is the age of rail transport. Therefore, it is absolutely right for us to make more use of the railways and effect the electrification of the railways in our country.

This will reduce pollution markedly. It is reported that the Japanese people in major cities are suffering a great deal from the pollution caused by cars’ exhaust. They themselves call the major cities of Japan the “hells” of pollution. According to information, most of the people living in the centre of Tokyo have lung problems because of pollution. Therefore, you should never be envious because there are large numbers of cars in foreign cities.

In order to prevent pollution, I have given the task of starting the mass-production of bicycles for the people to ride and of refraining from increasing the number of buses in the provincial cities. In the future in Pyongyang only trolley buses and storage battery cars should be run. Some countries are using electric buses. Our country should also produce and use them in the future.

In order to economize on fuel and prevent pollution, the machine industry should complete the building of a jet orifice factory as soon as possible. Some cars give off black smoke because their carburettors are bad and the oil does not burn properly. Therefore, the construction of the jet orifice factory should be completed quickly to mass-produce
good carburettors which will increase the rate of combustion.

Besides this, the scientific and technical information contains many matters of interest, including those of generating electricity by using subterranean heat and of making peat into coke. For the moment, however, you should organize scientific and technical seminars on using electricity, coke and fuel more economically, and on making use of excess heat.

You must ensure that the seminars are attended by scientists and technicians, university lecturers and top students as well as field workers. In the future a large number of these seminars should be organized so as to enlist and employ the efforts and intellect of scientists and technicians in economic construction and to combine their scientific and technical knowledge with the experience and skills of the people who work on production sites.

You should start now to prepare these seminars properly, and hold them in the summer. You should publicize these seminars widely and assign study tasks to those people who will attend them so that they can spend about two months preparing themselves. It would be pointless to convene the seminars without making preparations.

You should provide scientists, technicians and workers with the proper conditions for them to make full preparations for the seminars. First of all, you should ensure that there are plenty of scientific and technical books from other countries available for reference. In addition, you should take measures so that these people can become involved in research actually on production sites for a fortnight or a month, as the occasion demands.

Technical officials of the machine industry should also be allowed to take part in the scientific and technical seminars, which will be classified by fields. Only then can they form an accurate judgement on whether or not the technical problems discussed at the seminars can be introduced into production.

The scientific and technical seminars to be held this summer should be organized under the auspices of the State Commission of Science and Technology. The organization of these seminars should not simply be
entrusted to the Science and Educational Affairs Department of the Party Central Committee. So far as administrative bodies are concerned, the State Commission of Science and Technology and the Administration Council should be responsible for the organization of the seminars and so far as Party bodies are concerned, the Science and Educational Affairs Department of the Party Central Committee should be responsible. The economic affairs departments of the Party Central Committee should offer active support to the undertaking. The relevant departments of the Party Central Committee should conduct efficient ideological mobilization so that the seminars will be a success.

The scientific and technical seminars should be proposed and arranged by the Science and Educational Affairs Department of the Party Central Committee. But this department is unwilling to organize the seminars and offers no leadership to scientists, being engrossed only in practical matters. Unless scientists are given effective Party guidance, they cannot work properly, nor can they achieve any results in their research.

The scientific and technical seminars should be truly democratic affairs. There can be no superiors or inferiors in discussing scientific and technical problems. In particular, cadres should refrain from speaking about scientific and technical problems before others have their chance. They should criticize their own faults if scientists and technicians find fault with some failure to introduce new production methods, and if they propose valuable scientific and technical opinions, they should support them. This will encourage a great variety of good ideas to emerge from the seminars. If senior officials do not listen to their ideas about scientific and technical problems, putting on airs, scientists and technicians will not speak their minds, although they have good ideas.

Even though one or two people may offer opinions which are opposed to those of the overwhelming majority, the scientific and technical seminars should still give them careful consideration. Although a small number of people have different opinions on some scientific and technical problems, there must be no instances of
adopting a subjective attitude and ignoring them.

If democracy is given full play at the seminars, a number of good views will be suggested for solving the problems arising in the carbide, caustic soda, iron and other industries.

After the seminars, you should draw up detailed plans for introducing into production any good scientific and technical views that have been advanced at the seminars and submit them to the Administration Council. You should work out detailed plans, classified by fields and by factories, on what economies they will make and to what extent by introducing what new techniques this year and next year respectively. On the basis of these plans, the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council, factories and enterprises should work hard to economize on electricity, coke and fuel oil and make use of excess heat.

If they organize the work efficiently along these lines, the senior economic officials will be able to save a great deal of electricity, coke and fuel oil and will make a great success of using excess heat. When conducting the let-one-machine-tool-make-another movement in 1959, the technical level in our country was very low. Even in those circumstances we produced more than 10,000 additional machine tools in a year. If we really put our backs into it, nothing is beyond our power in the present conditions.

Next, you should take measures to mass-produce high-quality coal cutters at the May 10 Factory.

I have been told that coal mines have had trouble because the coal cutters produced at the May 10 Factory were of poor quality, and the inquiry into the matter has ascribed the cause for this to the hydraulic motors. It has been suggested that we should import some machines needed for making hydraulic motors, so the vice-director of the First Economic Affairs Department of the Party Central Committee should take a few mechanics and researchers at the Academy of Sciences with him to the May 10 Factory to investigate personally the problem of coal cutter production and then report on the matter. You should ensure that high-quality coal cutters are mass-produced, even if it means
importing the machinery and equipment needed.

The Anju General Coal Mine and many other collieries have prepared cutting faces, but they are unable to cut more coal, which otherwise they could, due to a lack of coal cutters. The Anju General Coal Mine alone is demanding four more coal cutters. The deposits at this coal mine are large, its output is great and the quality of its coal is high. For our country to have enough coal, this mine must meet its production quotas.

We should use every means at our disposal to make our own high-quality coal cutters as soon as possible. There is no country which is willing to sell us coal cutters immediately and, if we order coal cutters from another country now, we are not sure how long it will take, perhaps one or two years, for them to reach us.

In order to make high-quality coal cutters, we have to import some of the machinery and equipment needed for making hydraulic motors. However, buying imports takes us a long time, so other machine factories under the Ministry of Machine-building Industry which have these machines and equipment should hand them over to the May 10 Factory on the understanding that we will import replacements at some time in the future.

Next, senior officials of the Ministry of Railways should organize the production of cement containers made from wood, and do so quickly.

They talk about a design and so forth, but in fact they are not making cement containers. I cannot understand what the problem is in designing cement containers. It is enough to make strong boxes from board so that they can stand up to weight and pressure. They say that they will make the lids out of iron plate, but it is all right to make them with board.

Since cement containers are in daily demand, even wooden ones should be produced and supplied as soon as possible. It is true that iron-made cement containers will last longer, but making them takes some time. Therefore, you should make cement containers out of wood for the time being, while planning to make them out of iron plate in the future.
Today I shall speak about some problems concerning the reclamation of tidal flats.

Over recent years the area of paddy fields in our country has been reduced by tens of thousands of hectares. This is very serious. It is true that the decrease is, in some ways, related to the fact that some of the paddy fields which had been terraced have been turned back into dry fields. In an attempt to expand the area of paddy fields, a considerable area of dry fields in which maize could have thrived was terraced so rice could be cultivated. On the flat highland along the road to the Ryongchon Cooperative Farm, Hwangju County, North Hwanghae Province, many terraced paddy fields were created. So I gave instructions that they should revert to dry fields. But this area will probably amount to only a few thousand hectares.

The main reason for the reduction in the area of paddy fields is that factories, houses and roads have been constructed on them.

It is very important to compensate for the decrease in the area of paddy fields. However, this does not mean that dry fields should be converted into paddy fields.

The sea has been walled off to create a considerable area of
tideland. We must cultivate this land. According to the report submitted recently by the Economy Commission of the Central People’s Committee, the area of such tidal flats totals 30,899 hectares, of which 14,687 hectares are located in South Phyongan Province, 11,986 hectares in North Phyongan Province and 4,226 hectares in South Hwanghae Province.

Of the tidal flats created by walling off the sea, 24,414 hectares are being used as paddy fields, reed fields, reservoirs, fish farms and salt fields, and the remaining 6,485 hectares are not being used. Of the 6,485 hectares of uncultivated land, 1,420 hectares were secured between two and five years ago, 4,287 hectares between six and ten years ago and 778 hectares over ten years ago.

It is a serious mistake not to make good use of these tidal flats which have cost the state such a large amount of money.

The neglect of these tidal flats is due mainly to a lack of irrigation, labour and machinery. The master plan for reclaiming tidal flats on a long-term basis will be discussed next autumn. For the present we must take steps to cultivate the tidal flats that have been reclaimed.

First of all, we must take measures to solve the problem of irrigation.

Unless this problem is solved, it will be impossible to cultivate the reclaimed tidal flats properly. Scientists say that the cold front will continue to affect us for 23 more years. We cannot be certain that it will not last longer. That is why we must first work out how to solve the problem of irrigating the reclaimed tidal flats. If we want to solve this problem, we must use this approach and not deal with it in a conventional way. If the effects of the cold front continue, the water problem will have a serious effect on the cultivation of tidal flats.

When raising crops on the reclaimed tideland, we must be particularly economical in our use of water. I have been told that 12,000 cubic metres of water are used per hectare in cultivating rice on the reclaimed tideland. This is 2,000 cubic metres more water than is used in ordinary rice fields. Of course, a little more water will be needed for newly reclaimed fields because the salt has to be washed
away. But if more water is used even after the paddy fields have been desalted, the result may be a depletion in our water resources. It will be all the more difficult to provide sufficient water once the plan for reclaiming 100,000 hectares of tideland has been completed. At the rate of 10,000 cubic metres per hectare, 1,000,000,000 cubic metres of water will be needed to irrigate 100,000 hectares. Where can we obtain such a vast amount of water? There is no site near the tidal flats for a large reservoir capable of storing 1,000,000,000 cubic metres of water. The existing major reservoirs are situated mostly inland. So it is very difficult to supply water to the tidal flats from them.

If we are to use the minimum amount of water to irrigate the reclaimed tidal flats, we must establish a percolation irrigation system.

It is not very difficult to build such a system in the paddy fields on the tidal flats. As I have said on many occasions, it is simple to build a percolation system. All you need to do is dig waterways at regular intervals, cut ditches crosswise and bury holed plastic pipes. You should bury the plastic pipes at a depth of one metre at intervals which permit the water flowing out of the holes of adjoining pipes to meet.

In Onchon County, South Phyongan Province, a percolation system has been set up in 500 hectares of reclaimed paddy fields. This will serve as an example. As it was built without even a design it was not made properly in spite of being expensive. Now, we are in a position to build a good percolation system according to a good design. If officials in the agricultural sector have not seen the one in Onchon County, they should go and do so.

The percolation system can both irrigate and drain the fields. It can water the fields when the weather is dry and can drain them when they are flooded. If you raise the water level in the ditch and plug one end of the pipe in the dry season, the water will flow through the holes of the pipes and spread upwards through the soil; on the other hand, if the water level in the ditch is lower in the rainy season, the water will seep through the soil and escape through the holed pipe. In this way the system can provide the amount of water needed for growing crops in both the dry and rainy seasons.
In one country a perfect percolation system has been established in the reclaimed tideland. In that country the weather is so cold that they do not grow rice, maize and the like but wheat, barley and potatoes. The per-hectare yields in that country are 5,400 kg of wheat, 4,200 kg of barley and 35 to 40 tons of potatoes. These figures are the highest in the world for these crops. Because the people of this country cultivate their small area of farmland efficiently, they can produce enough meat for themselves and even export some.

We should establish a percolation system in the reclaimed tidal flats and grow dry-field rice there rather than wheat or barley. If we do this we shall use the minimum amount of water for irrigating the crop, only 3,000 cubic metres per hectare. If we use only 3,000 cubic metres per hectare, we shall have no worries about water even after reclaiming 100,000 hectares of tideland.

If we establish this system in the paddy fields on the tidal flats we shall not only economize in our use of water but also remove the salt quickly so that crops can be planted. If we leave the reclaimed tidal flats as they are or use them as reed fields, it will be a long time before sufficient salt has disappeared to allow the planting of crops. But, if you establish a percolation system, you will be able to plant crops in the same year that the land is reclaimed.

Experiments have shown that the fields irrigated by the percolation system yield 1,500 kg of rice per hectare in the first year after the fields have been reclaimed, three tons in the second year, four tons in the third year and five tons or more from the fourth year onwards.

The percolation system of irrigation for reclaimed tidal flats has many advantages.

We must establish it in the reclaimed tidal flats, irrigate them liberally so as to rid them of salt in the first few years, and then reduce the amount of water to 3,000 cubic metres per hectare.

Large quantities of plastic pipes are needed in order to establish a wide-scale percolation system. Therefore, we must take steps to mass-produce them.

If we are short of the polyvinyl chloride needed for the purpose, we
shall have to import some. It will still pay even if we import it. Apparently one ton of polyvinyl chloride is needed to establish this system in one hectare of reclaimed tidal flats. If the pipes are made a little thinner, less polyvinyl chloride will be needed. Polyvinyl chloride costs 100 pounds per ton, so it is economically sound to import it even though one ton is needed to establish the percolation system in one hectare. If this system is introduced, 1,500 kg of rice will be produced per hectare in the first year. So, if we sell this amount, the revenue will be more than enough to cover costs. However, we do not have to import all the polyvinyl chloride we shall need.

We have already built a 50,000-ton capacity polyvinyl chloride factory. At present this factory is failing to produce at full capacity because of the power shortage. If sufficient electricity is supplied, there will be no problem in producing polyvinyl chloride for making pipes.

Measures should be taken to secure water resources to irrigate the paddy fields reclaimed from the tidal flats.

South Phyongan Province is suggesting that it will obtain water for the reclaimed tideland paddy fields in the Onchon area by cutting a tunnel to link the Phyongwon Reservoir and the Tokjwa Reservoir and by channelling the water from the Phyongnam Irrigation Works to the Kiyang Irrigation Works. On its own this will not solve the problem. Pools and small reservoirs will have to be dug near the tidal flats.

Apparently one country has built reservoirs in the reclaimed tideland to irrigate the fields. In Onchon County, South Phyongan Province, a reservoir is being built in the reclaimed tideland. Reservoirs should be built in this way. It may be a little difficult to fill these reservoirs because the amount of rainfall is decreasing due to the effects of the cold front, but if water is pumped up, there should be no problem in filling these reservoirs.

The agricultural sector should start building reservoirs now under a long-term plan that specifies the areas to be reclaimed and the reservoirs that will irrigate them.

Furthermore, we should take measures to produce and supply the
machinery needed to reclaim and cultivate tidal flats.

The reclamation of tideland involves a great deal of construction work. The construction of the percolation system alone requires a variety of complex undertakings including digging ditches and laying pipes. It is no easy project to wall off the sea. It is difficult to do this huge project with manual labour, and a tremendous amount of manpower would be needed. Moreover, the manpower situation in our country is very serious at present because a great number of young people are away serving in the People’s Army. Some agricultural officials always ask for discharged soldiers. There are simply not enough discharged soldiers to meet all their demands for manpower. Discharged soldiers must be sent to industrial establishments and to areas on the plains where there are many paddy fields, so we cannot afford to send a large number of them to work on reclaiming tideland.

The work of tideland reclamation must be fully mechanized, so the machinery needed for the project must be produced. The problem of building the vessels and other equipment which are needed to wall off the sea should be discussed at a later date and measures adopted. We must first take steps to produce the machines to develop the reclaimed tidal flats into farmland.

The machines to dig ditches, lay percolation pipes and align the fields should be produced first.

Digging ditches for the pipes manually will be difficult and will also require a tremendous amount of labour. But machines can do this work with ease because tideland is not stony.

One country is producing these machines and using them. These machines are said to be capable of digging to a depth of two metres. We have imported several and are employing them. They are very effective. These machines should be manufactured in our country, too.

All the farm work on the tideland paddy fields should be mechanized.

The reclaimed tidal flats are a vast area of plains. Therefore, if we obtain a variety of farming machinery, the cultivation of these paddy fields can easily be mechanized.
A long time ago I gave the June 3 Cooperative Farm in Onchon County, South Phyongan Province, the task of mechanizing farm work and using chemicals widely so that each farmer could tend three hectares of tideland paddy fields. But this task has not yet been implemented. The senior officials of the South Phyongan Provincial Party Committee have not even visited the farm. This is a grave error.

The chief secretary of the South Phyongan Provincial Party Committee is a member of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee. A member of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee who is appointed chief secretary of a provincial Party committee must be well aware of the task we have given, and must make strenuous efforts to carry it out. But he does not seem concerned about how the task is being implemented. He is putting on airs, cooped up in his office.

In order to make a success of rice cultivation in the tidelands, the officials must rid themselves of their outdated way of thinking and their outdated methods of leadership. From now onwards 10,000 hectares of tideland will be reclaimed every year. This is by no means a small area. The area under cultivation in each county in North Hamgyong Province is said to average 5,000 hectares. Ten thousand hectares of reclaimed tideland are equal to the area of cultivated land in two counties of North Hamgyong Province. The thousands of hectares which are to be reclaimed at a stretch by walling off the sea cannot be attended to properly by the methods used to cultivate small plots of farmland in the olden days. Because they are trying to handle the vast area of farmland by their old-fashioned ways of thinking and leadership, the officials are not working effectively.

We must think of farming on a large scale. Each farm must deal with 2,000 hectares by ploughing the paddy fields, sowing seeds, weeding, harvesting and threshing in the fields, all by using modern machinery, and bring in only the grain. In this way each farmer will be able to attend to three hectares of paddy fields. If each farmer were to cultivate one hectare as is the situation now, 100,000 able-bodied people would be needed to tend the 100,000 hectares to be reclaimed.
This would pose a great problem. Even if we assume that both the husband and wife from each family work, 50,000 families would be needed.

We must ensure that all the work on the reclaimed rice-producing farms on the tidal flats is done by machinery and chemicals so that one farmer can tend at least three hectares. To this end, the necessary machines must be produced.

In order to mechanize all farm work, we must not only produce a lot of modern farm machinery, but also lay out the fields to make them a standard size. Fields should each be 40 hectares in size, and one sub-workteam should take charge of one field. It would be a good idea for one tractor driver to manage one field, with several farmers under him.

If we are to produce and supply these machines properly, we must develop their production base.

I am of the opinion that either a machine factory to produce only these machines should be built in Nampho or the Mangyongdae Bulldozer Factory in Pyongyang should produce them in addition to bulldozers. The Mangyongdae Bulldozer Factory is under no pressure, so it will be fully able to produce these machines.

As matters stand at present, many machine factories are failing to produce on a proper basis. We should equip such factories better and make each of them produce one kind of machine. If each one is provided with a few of such machines as large lathes, every one of them will be able to produce one kind of machine needed for tideland reclamation. The Agricultural Mechanization Research Institute under the Academy of Agricultural Science is not really doing anything. It should make such things as ditching machines.

The work of building a factory specializing in the production of these machines should not be entrusted only to the Agricultural Commission. The Administration Council must assume the responsibility and take measures for building this factory after discussions with the Ministry of Machine-building Industry.

Next, we must adopt measures to solve the problem of seeds.
Even though they talk a great deal about the reclamation of tidal flats, agricultural officials are paying scant attention to the problem of obtaining rice seeds for planting in the reclaimed land. Such being the case, we have no rice seeds that are suited to the fields reclaimed from the sea.

We must obtain good varieties which can be sown directly in the reclaimed paddy fields. Direct sowing can be done by machinery and this will save a lot of manpower because there will be no need to transplant the seedlings.

Late-ripening varieties should not be sown directly. If they are sown directly, the yield will fall. Approximately ten years of experiments on the direct sowing of late-ripening varieties have shown that the per-hectare yield is 500 kg less than that of the varieties grown in a cold frame and transplanted. The Hwasong Cooperative Farm in Ryongsong District, Pyongyang, for instance, suffered a low yield because there one of the late-ripening Ryongsong varieties was sown directly. The reason for the low yield is obvious. The direct sowing of late-ripening varieties has to be done one month later than those seeded in a cold frame and they sprout at a certain time after their seeding, so that they do not have enough time to grow properly, whereas those sown in a cold frame have one month more to mature. Therefore, plants that are sown directly cannot grow to full maturity and fail to develop many stems and do not bear many seeds. That is why the yield of directly sown late-ripening varieties is low.

If direct seeding is to be successful, an early-ripening and high-yielding variety must be produced, a variety that thrives in the fields reclaimed from tidal flats. The Academy of Agricultural Science should be given the task of producing such a variety.

It is quite a good idea to plant dry rice in the tideland paddy fields where a percolation system has been established. The reason we do not normally plant dry rice is that it is difficult to weed. However, if the percolation system has been established and weed killers are available, there will be no harm in planting dry rice. Dry rice fields can be weeded by herbicide. If rice seeds for planting in dry fields are
available, they should be planted on an experimental basis this year.

Proper seed selection of dry rice should be undertaken. This rice must also be resistant to salt and ripen early.

I hope that we can import dry rice seeds that grow in 120 to 130 days. We should try to obtain such a variety.

The chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees, their secretaries in charge of economic affairs and the officials of the agricultural leadership organizations must, guided by my instructions, study carefully how to solve the problems of establishing a percolation system, securing water resources, producing machinery for tideland reclamation, ensuring the proper layout of the fields and obtaining early-ripening varieties needed for cultivation on the tideland farms. These problems will be discussed in detail by the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee in one month’s time.

In future, the work of reclaiming tidal flats should be more efficient, according to a far-sighted plan.

The area of arable land in our country is small, but the population continues to increase. Therefore, we must pay close attention to solving the problem of food. We have been working on a solution to this problem by increasing the per-unit-area grain yield through making maximum use of the existing area under cultivation. But this method alone will not provide a satisfactory solution to the food problem.

If we are to find a full solution to this problem, we must reclaim a large area of farmland at the same time as making maximum use of the existing area under cultivation. Unless we continue to obtain new land, we shall be unable to provide food for the expanding population. Then, our country, presently self-sufficient in food, will have to start importing food. Therefore, we must take far-sighted measures and work hard to expand the area of farmland.

The only source of new farmland available in our country now is the tidal flats. There is one European country which reclaims tidal flats on a large scale by walling off the sea. I think we shall have to do the same. I have been told that in that country stone is being imported at
the cost of a lot of foreign currency to wall off the sea to a depth of 80 metres. In the future, we must also wall off the West Sea, to a greater depth. If we wall off the sea to a depth of 80 metres, we shall be able to extend the farmland 50 miles out to sea. The officials concerned must study this matter. There are reclaimable tidal flats in Kumya County, South Hamgyong Province, so I have been told. These should also be reclaimed.

Our target during the Second Seven-Year Plan is to increase the area of paddy fields in our country to 650,000 hectares. In order to attain this target we must secure 100,000 hectares from the sea and create 70,000 hectares of paddy fields before the end of this new long-term plan. Once the sea has been walled off, there is no great problem in laying out paddy fields and cultivating rice.

If we create 70,000 hectares of paddy fields on the tidal flats, we shall be able to produce 420,000 tons of grain at a rate of six tons per hectare. With 420,000 tons of grain we can feed 1,600,000 people for a year at a rate of 260 kg per person per year. Then we shall be able to solve the problem of food to cover the growth in the population over the period of the new long-term plan.

This year we must prepare approximately 10,000 hectares which have been obtained from the tidal flats but are still not in use so that we can start cultivating them next year. You say that there are 6,485 hectares of such land, but if we survey it carefully, it will amount to 10,000 hectares. If it truly is difficult to obtain 10,000 hectares, we should aim for about 7,000 hectares and lay them out so that they can be cultivated from next year. From next year onwards we should obtain 10,000 hectares annually for several years by walling off the sea so that they can be cultivated from the following year. Over the last few years of the Seven-Year Plan we should obtain 20,000 hectares from the tidal flats every year and cultivate 10,000 hectares of them from the following year. In this way we shall obtain 100,000 hectares from the tidal flats according to the new long-term plan and attain the target of establishing 70,000 hectares of new paddy fields.

It is by no means an easy task to obtain 10,000 hectares in one year.
by walling off the sea. It will be very difficult to obtain 10,000 hectares a year by doing the work manually as we do now. We must think of making the job easier by producing and using machinery. If plenty of cement is available, we can do the work easily by making cement blocks and shipping them and laying them up. If we use cement blocks and stone, we shall be able to wall off the sea over a large area of tidal flats within the next few years.

The Agricultural Commission should hold consultative meetings with the officials concerned, discuss the matter in all its aspects with experienced people and study information from abroad and thus discover the best way of reclaiming the tidal flats.

One of the vice-chairmen of the Agricultural Commission should take charge of directing the reclamation of tidal flats. The setting up of a General Bureau of Tideland Reclamation has been suggested. However, you cannot solve the problem simply by setting up this bureau and appointing a chief. The point is not to set up an institution but to reclaim the tideland in practice.

The success of this work depends on how the state provides the necessary materials for the project, how local government bodies control the work and how local Party organizations support it. Local Party organizations offered good support to this work for some time, but recently they have not been doing so.

All the tideland reclamation companies under the management bureau of tideland reclamation and irrigation construction, which are being mobilized for other work, should be returned to their posts. The Amnokgang General Irrigation Construction Company, which was mobilized for the Namdung Reservoir project last year, should also be returned if this project has been finished.

A long-term plan for the reclamation of tidal flats should be drawn up and discussed next autumn and the reclamation work should be undertaken on a planned basis from next year onwards.

South Phyongan Province has suggested building houses. I think this can be done only when building-materials production centres are established in the province and this should be done quickly. The
province covers a large area and must carry out many projects. So it should be provided with building-materials production centres. It would be best to build one in Nampho and another in the Anju area.

North Phyongan Province should establish one in the Jongju area, which is situated in the centre of the province.

The practice of wasting farmland must be completely eliminated. Every inch of land is valuable in our country, where the area of cultivated land is limited. However, the waste of farmland does not cease. Only yesterday the People’s Army asked for approval to use some farmland for construction. I told them to build houses on waste land at the foot of a mountain. From now onwards strict control should be exercised to stop houses being built on farmland.

Many trees are being planted along roadsides to improve the scenery. This should not be done.

The practice of turning crop fields into orchards should also be stopped. At the moment, there is a tendency towards turning fields which are difficult to cultivate into orchards. This must not be done. People can live on rice; they cannot live on fruit alone. We should not try to increase the area of orchards; we must tend the existing ones well. If we establish a proper fertilizing system, improve the varieties, and replace old fruit trees with new ones, we shall be able to increase fruit production considerably and supply sufficient fruit to the people, even without any need to expand the orchards.
ON INCREASING LOCAL BUDGET REVENUE

Speech at a Joint Meeting of the Political Committee of the Party
Central Committee and the Central People’s Committee
April 11, 1978

The Minister of Finance has submitted a report on how the state budget for 1977 was executed and on the state budget for 1978. This year’s local budget seems to have been set too low.

The local budget must be set higher. It must not merely be an estimation of the amount of money earned by locally-run industries, which is barely enough to pay the factory and office workers and finance some small construction projects. It must aim at a stage higher. The size of the local budget must be increased so that the provinces produce miscellaneous everyday necessities and other consumer goods in large quantities, expand communal amenities and improve service work.

Miscellaneous goods for daily use are in short supply and the service network is small at the moment. This is a serious shortcoming. The officials must study hard how this situation can be rectified within a short space of time.

In capitalist society a lot of miscellaneous goods are produced because individuals make small items for the market in order to earn their living. But in our country only some large factories make daily necessities. So, if production at a toothbrush factory is in difficulties, the whole country will run short of them, and if production at a match factory is halted matches become unavailable throughout the whole country.

There are not many service facilities in our country, either. A visitor
from a capitalist country said that there were too many restaurants, public houses, repair shops and so on in his country and that this caused trouble. Of course, in socialist society we do not need so many service facilities as in capitalist society, but it will not do for the numbers to be too small.

I am now thinking of a variety of ways of ensuring the mass-production of daily necessities and of improving service work. At some time in the future I am going to write a thesis on commerce. All officials must carefully study the speech I made at a consultative meeting of the chairmen of the provincial people’s committees on April 8, 1962 entitled *On Improving the Performance of the Commercial Sector*. It has been published recently. It deals with the problems of increasing the supply of daily necessities and of improving service facilities and managing them properly.

The main way of increasing the production of various commodities, including small items for daily use, and of improving service work is to set the local budget at a high level so that local government bodies can earn more money for the state treasury, while meeting the daily needs of the people. A large local budget will enable the officials of local government bodies to build more, produce more and take the initiative in earning more money. Then, more daily necessities will be produced and the people’s lives will be more comfortable.

The provinces are rich in resources for boosting the production of daily necessities and other consumer goods and for earning money. They will be able to make dinner tables, wooden basins, brooms and the like or pick blueberries and other kinds of wild fruit for the market. Simply processing the pumice stones that are abundant on Mt. Paektu and selling them will earn a great deal of money.

However, the provincial, city and county people’s committee chairmen and administrative committee chairmen neither think deeply nor make any efforts to earn more money. I have been told that housewives in mining villages are now idling away their time because they have no work to do, and this is a ridiculous state of affairs. It is a result of officials displaying no initiative and making no organizational
arrangements. If they form producers’ cooperatives or housewives’ workteams they will be able to provide the housewives with jobs. If there really is no work for the housewives to do, at least they can plant snake gourds.

Our officials are not working as hard as people living in capitalist society. Take fishing for example; the fishermen in capitalist society try their best to catch as many fish as they can because, if they have no fish to sell, they cannot support their families. By contrast, our fishermen do not work hard to catch more fish, even though there are many fish in the sea, because they have no worries about food. In our country rice is supplied at a low price, practically free, to the workers and office workers, whether they work hard or not. So no one is worried about food. This is why they do not work heart and soul like people in capitalist society. So, on more than one occasion, some officials have suggested that the system of rice supply should be abolished and that rice should be sold at the market price. True, this will compel the people to work harder to earn enough to eat, but, if the state does not supply rice and the people have to buy it themselves, small families will have no problem, but larger families with fewer bread-winners will have difficulties. Our system of rice supply is a good system which enables all the people to live well with no worries about food, so I told these officials to examine methods of solving the problem other than by abolishing that system.

In order to increase local budget revenue and produce large quantities of goods for mass consumption, including small items for daily use, we must develop local industry further.

The revenue from local industry is not high at the moment. The Administration Council must summon the provincial administrative committee chairmen and the heads of the general bureaux for local industry, hold wide-ranging discussions with them and draw up a plan for increasing the earnings of local industry one-and-a-half times or twice as much as last year. We must increase the funds for the capital construction to be undertaken by the provinces so that they themselves build more of the factories they need and improve those which need
improvement. At the same time, of the raw materials and other goods which centrally-run industries use to produce mass consumption goods, two or three per cent over and above the figure in the state plan must be transferred to local industries.

It is important to expand the service network and improve service work, thereby increasing income from the services.

There are many things the service sector can do to make money. Our country is rich in mineral water. If this is sold, a lot of money can be earned. If it is bottled and delivered to the railways, all the train passengers will buy and drink some when they are thirsty. Kangso mineral water improves the digestion and prevents stomach trouble. We built a fine mineral water factory in Kangso and placed it under the management of Pyongyang. But the officials in Pyongyang did not manage the factory properly, claiming that nobody bought and drank the mineral water. So, I gave the recently appointed Taean City Party chief secretary the task of improving the factory.

More work must be done to process foodstuffs for sale. The work should be adapted to suit regional conditions; in those areas where plenty of seafood is available, seafood must be processed for the market, and in those areas which are rich in farm produce, these must be processed for sale. Formerly, a great deal of planktonic shrimps and the like were pickled and sold and pepper and sesame leaves and garlic were also salted and sold in large quantities, but such processed foodstuffs have been very scarce in recent years.

Noodles, boiled rice and bread must be sold as well.

Only a few tens of thousands of tons of wheat or potato starch will suffice to make noodles to meet the demand. Many restaurants must be run, even if it means that the state has to provide some food grain.

From olden times boiled rice sellers have made a lot of money. That is why in the past many people in our country kept inns, selling meals. Some officials used to define innkeepers as merchants, on the grounds that they made a lot of money. That was a mistake. In 1971 I visited North Phyongan Province where I asked about the family backgrounds of the people and found that many people who had kept inns were
defined as merchants. So I said that these people were not merchants but were the equals of handicraftsmen and belonged to the proletariat.

Ice-cream, ice-lollies, syrup and soft drinks should also be mass-produced and sold. Green maize ears should be steamed and sweet potatoes baked for the market according to the season.

When I tell some officials to arrange these things, they request that such matters should be included in a plan. Needless to say, they should be planned. However, the problem is not a lack of planning, rather it is that the officials lack enthusiasm and initiative in their work. If the officials work hard to see that maize is planted on the edges of vegetable fields, plenty of green maize can be produced for sale in the shops. Sweet potatoes to be baked for the market can be produced easily if sloping fields or waste land are tilled and cultivated properly. Therefore, it is most important for the officials to think hard and display initiative in their work.

In order to improve service work, its network must be increased in relation to the population.

Nowadays there are not enough service facilities. It would be a good idea to supply materials to the provinces so that they can build the service facilities they need for themselves. We must not discourage the provinces from building more of such things as noodle restaurants. They should be allowed to build schools for themselves and the bridges they want. It will not do if they are prevented from building even sanitary facilities, allegedly for the sake of unified and detailed planning. It will be quite all right if any slipshod building is remedied through inspection and criticism at a later date.

We must establish a variety of communal facilities in larger numbers, such as repair shops, laundries, bathhouses and barbershops.

It would be better to run these facilities by forming housewives’ workteams or service cooperatives instead of having them all run by the state. It will be of greater benefit if such organizations are managed efficiently. Those people who work in cooperatives will work hard and offer a better service in order to earn a lot of money because they have to buy their food with the money they earn.
It is not difficult to form and run housewives’ workteams. A barbers’ workteam, for instance, can have a barbershop in the basement of a block of flats and let those housewives who do not go to work do the haircutting there. Part of the money earned should be given to the state treasury and the remainder shared by the workteam members. It is quite possible to form more housewives’ workteams to do such jobs as processing foodstuffs, tailoring, repairing articles of daily use, running bathhouses and laundering. If we form a lot of housewives’ workteams and run them well, we will be able to solve many problems.

At present we derive the budget revenue mainly from the sale of fabrics and other major commodities. We must not rely on these alone but increase communal amenities and make a lot more money. If we form and run many housewives’ workteams or service cooperatives we will be able to increase state income and make the daily lives of the people more comfortable. For instance, some towns and workers’ districts now supply anthracite to all the families in the area. If housewives’ workteams or service cooperatives are formed to make and supply anthracite briquettes, the streets will be clean, anthracite used economically and the people will be comfortable.

We do not need to give the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council the assignment of forming housewives’ workteams and service cooperatives. Commercial officials can form and develop them in the workers’ districts and mining villages.

Apparently the bathhouses and barbershops at factories and other enterprises are not kept clean and these, too, had better be transferred to housewives’ workteams or service cooperatives.

Those materials and equipment which are needed by the housewives’ workteams and service cooperatives must be supplied by the state. And other things that are needed must be purchased and used by the commercial network.

This year we must plan to earn more revenue from the local budget to form part of the state budget so that the provincial people’s committee and administrative committee chairmen have to work hard.

Their view of the local budgetary system has deteriorated because
they have been given a small budget in the past. We must set them higher targets so that they will have to work hard to implement the budget. But because we have given them only a small budget in the past, they have always believed it easy to implement a budget. In the People’s Army, when divisional and regimental commanders are ordered to conduct a live firing exercise, they worry a great deal and work hard to ensure its success. But the provincial people’s and administrative committee chairmen make light of their budget assignments. At present few officials of the local government organs strive to make such things as daily necessities for sale by using the by-products from large factories of centrally-run industry.

The provincial Party chief secretaries are fairly busy because recently they have taken charge of centrally-run industry and I myself am controlling and promoting it. But the provincial people’s and administrative committee chairmen simply stand with their arms folded and do not act properly as masters. They do not care if the provinces run short of eggs or their price goes up. Nowadays the provincial, city and county people’s and administrative committee chairmen neither visit the rural areas to give lectures on breeding large numbers of domestic animals like chickens and rabbits, nor think of solving the protein feed problem by breeding earthworms.

We must give the provincial people’s and administrative committee chairmen many assignments both for production and for consumption and we must ensure that they work hard to fulfil them. Also, the second economic affairs department of the provincial Party committee must give them effective help in their work.

The Administration Council must redraft the plan in line with what I have said today so that the local budget is increased. The senior officials of the Administration Council, vice-chairmen of the Economy Commission of the Central People’s Committee, the chairmen of the provincial administrative committees, and the officials of the Second Economic Affairs Department of the Party Central Committee should meet and hold wide-ranging discussions on the problem of enlarging the local budget.
I am most pleased that you have visited our country and I welcome you warmly.

I am very grateful to you for the letter of congratulations and the gift you sent on my birthday and for your unremitting efforts to strengthen the friendship and solidarity between the peoples of Korea and Japan.

I will not talk at length on this occasion because you have visited our country frequently in the past.

No major change has taken place in our country since you, the head of the delegation, visited it in 1976.

Last year we completely removed the strain in some sectors of the national economy, the strain which had been in evidence in the course of carrying out the Six-Year National Economic Plan. We also achieved great success in agriculture last year.

We are now carrying out the Second Seven-Year Plan. This is the first year of the Second Seven-Year Plan. Things have been going smoothly in all fields of the national economy since we embarked on this plan.

Tomorrow we are going to open the Second Session of the Sixth Supreme People’s Assembly. Originally we were planning to hold it from April 19, but it will be convened one day earlier because a foreign
head of state is visiting our country on the 21st.

The forthcoming session of the Supreme People’s Assembly will adopt a socialist labour law. This will mean that our country will be the first to have a most excellent socialist labour law.

The enactment of the socialist labour law is a significant event. This law will give us a better chance to educate all the people to love working. A man reforms his ideological consciousness and creates the material wealth of society through his work.

I think you have some interest in the socialist labour law because you are leaders of the labour movement.

We are always grateful to you for the active support and encouragement you offer to our people’s struggle for national reunification. On this occasion, too, you have consulted some of our officials concerned regarding various ways of supporting our people’s cause of national reunification. We are very pleased about this.

A Korean proverb says that “Little strokes fell great oaks.” If you continue to work in support of our people’s cause of national reunification, good results will be achieved. I am convinced of this.

The struggles of the Korean and Japanese peoples are closely related to one another. Once the progressive forces have grown in Japan and the labour movement has emerged victorious, Korea’s reunification will be easily achieved.

As I said when the delegation of Diet members from the Japan Liberal-Democratic Party, who were interested in the Korean question, came to our country in 1975, the Park Chung Hee “regime” of south Korea cannot maintain itself without the support of either the US imperialists or the Japanese reactionaries.

We strongly support the struggle of the Japanese people. Their struggle is our people’s struggle. We will fight hand in hand with the Japanese people for ever.

The situation in our country today is very tense. US President Carter is not keeping his election pledge to withdraw US troops from south Korea, and the US imperialists are staging ceaseless military exercises in south Korea.
There are many US bombing ranges in the vicinity of Okinawa; they hold bombing exercises in south Korea. Why should they? Even now that Carter has become President, US Air Force B-52s still continue to fly over to south Korea to conduct bombing practice.

This year alone they have made dozens of sorties to Asan Bay, south Korea, from Okinawa to stage bombing exercises and more recently, a large-scale south Korea-US joint exercise has taken place. This is meant to threaten us and the south Korean people. But however great the enemy’s threat, the growth of the revolutionary forces in south Korea will never be halted.

Where there is oppression, there is resistance; and where there is resistance, there is a revolutionary struggle. So, although the Park Chung Hee puppet clique oppresses and exploits the south Korean people with the backing of the US imperialists, the south Korean puppet regime will not last long.

Nowadays the capitalist countries are experiencing a serious economic crisis. This is true of the United States and the capitalist countries of Europe. Therefore, the US and other imperialists are trying to divide the non-aligned and newly independent countries, plunder them of their raw materials and fuel and maintain the old international economic order. The imperialists are instigating clashes between the countries of the third world, dividing them and playing one off against the other, taking advantage of the complex problems that are a result of colonial rule. To divide and rule is an old imperialist ploy.

At present the US imperialists are making crafty manoeuvres to dominate the world. With food and weapons they are trying to achieve this aim by selling small amounts of food to those countries which are suffering a food shortage, and they are also trying to impose their political will upon other countries by selling them weapons. In short, the US imperialists are scheming to subordinate the newly independent countries and achieve their aim by using food and weapons.

There are some among the newly independent countries which dare not openly denounce the US imperialists because they import food
from them. These economically dependent countries cannot speak their minds. I do not think this state of affairs will last for long. As a result of the economic crisis worldwide, the eyes of the people are being opened and their struggle is heightening.

You say that you have a keen interest in strengthening the unity of the international working-class movement. We consider that in order to do this, every country must firmly maintain its independence. When the working class of every country fights with resolve to carry out the revolution independently in its own country, the unity of the international working-class movement will be strengthened. I think that this is the only way.

The world’s people are opposed to domination and subjugation. They call for independence. The current trend is for many countries to advocate independence.

The editor-in-chief of the French newspaper *Le Monde* visited our country last year and asked me what I thought of European-style communism. I told him that we knew nothing about any European-style communism, nor Asian-style communism nor any other style of communism. I said to him that European-style communism was a term invented by capitalists, and therefore we did not agree to the term European-style communism.

I think it right that European Communist Parties are resolved to make the revolution in their own way, emphasizing their independence. It is the working class and the other ordinary people of a country that know the situation in their own country better than anyone else, whether the method they apply to the revolution is violence or any other. Therefore, the revolution must be carried out in the people’s own way. This will encourage everyone to take an active part in the revolution and the broad masses to stand by the revolution.

This year an art delegation of our students and children will visit Japan. There was going to be such a visit to Japan in 1976, but this was impossible, because the Americans provoked the “Panmunjom incident”. On its visit to Japan the art delegation will endeavour to strengthen the friendship and solidarity between the peoples of Korea
and Japan, and I hope you will do the same.

You have formed the Japan Committee for Supporting the Independent and Peaceful Reunification of Korea, and we are very grateful to you for your efforts. You, the head of the delegation, have said that the second international conference supporting Korea’s independent and peaceful reunification will be held in Japan in November this year. We consider this a very good thing. Of course, such a conference may not have any great effect immediately on the question of our country’s reunification. However, if world opinion is stirred by arranging such a conference on frequent occasions, good results will be achieved.

Your work will not be in vain. It is extremely necessary both for strengthening the friendship and solidarity between the peoples of our two countries and for uniting the world’s people. I have been greatly moved by your wonderful work.

Once again I welcome you warmly on your visit to our country. Your current visit will contribute greatly to strengthening the friendship and solidarity between the peoples of our two countries.

I hope that you, on your return to Japan, will make even greater efforts in this regard.

I wish good health to you, the head of the delegation, and to your company.
THE SOCIALIST LABOUR LAW
OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S
REPUBLIC OF KOREA

Adopted at the Second Session of the Sixth Supreme
People’s Assembly of the Democratic
People’s Republic of Korea
April 18, 1978

CHAPTER 1. THE FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES
OF SOCIALIST LABOUR

Article 1. Labour under socialism is independent and creative
labour by the working people who have been freed from exploitation
and oppression.

In the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea the working people
work with enthusiasm and creative initiative for the prosperity of the
motherland, for the well-being of the people and for their own welfare.

Article 2. Labour is the source of all material and cultural wealth
and a powerful means of transforming nature, society and man.

Socialism and communism are built through the creative labour of
the working millions.

In the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea labour assumes the
most noble and honourable nature.

Article 3. Under socialism, labour is conducted collectively by the
working people for their common goals and interests.
The working people in the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea work together, assisting and helping each other to advance, on the collectivist principle of “One for all and all for one”.

**Article 4.** Under socialism, every citizen is in duty bound to work. All able-bodied citizens of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea participate in social labour according to their abilities.

**Article 5.** Under socialism all working people have the right to work. In the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea unemployment has been eliminated for all time.

All working people choose their occupations according to their wishes and talents and are provided with secure jobs and working conditions by the State.

**Article 6.** Under socialism, labour is based on the high awareness of the working people who are the masters of the country and society, and of the revolution and construction.

The State strengthens the ideological revolution to equip the working people with the Juche idea of the Workers’ Party of Korea and to foster the attitude of master towards their labour.

**Article 7.** It is an indispensable requirement of the building of socialism and communism to eliminate the basic differences between various kinds of work, and to make labour enjoyable and a vital need of the working people.

The State promotes the technical revolution and thus eliminates the differences between heavy and light labour and between agricultural and industrial labour, frees the working people from arduous toil, and gradually reduces the gap between physical and mental labour.

**Article 8.** Raising the cultural and technical levels of the working people as a whole is a sure guarantee for accelerating the construction of socialism and training the working people to be competent builders of socialism and communism.

The State provides every condition for all the working people to study while working, through the medium of the advanced educational system and people-oriented educational policy.

**Article 9.** To ensure the constant increase of labour productivity
and develop production rapidly are the law that governs the building of socialism and communism.

The State ensures a high rate of growth of labour productivity and the rapid development of production by promoting the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions, widening and developing the Chollima Movement, giving priority to political work and managing economic work skilfully.

**Article 10.** Labour under socialism is social labour performed under the unitary socialist economic system.

In accordance with the policy of unified and detailed planning, the State organizes social labour in a planned and efficient way in all sectors of the national economy.

**Article 11.** In the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea all the material and cultural wealth created by labour is used solely for the prosperity and development of the country and the improvement of the working people’s well-being.

The State applies the socialist principle of distribution according to the quantity and quality of work done and constantly improves the working people’s material and cultural standards.

**Article 12.** To combine work with recreation properly and to protect the working people in their work is an inherent requirement of the socialist system which values man above all else.

The State guarantees sufficient rest for the working people so that they can restore the energy they use in their work and safeguards their lives and health through the systems of universal free medical care and advanced labour protection.

**Article 13.** The socialist labour policy of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea is a precious revolutionary gain won through the struggle to introduce the revolutionary labour programme formulated in the days of the glorious anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle and to carry out the democratic and socialist revolutions.

The State works to develop the socialist labour policy further and to implement the people-oriented and democratic labour policy throughout the nation.
CHAPTER 2. LABOUR IS THE NOBLE DUTY OF THE CITIZEN

Article 14. The working people of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea are revolutionaries fighting to achieve the communist ideal.

It is an honour and the most sacred duty of the citizen to love labour and to work conscientiously.

Every citizen must participate voluntarily in worthwhile labour for socialist and communist construction.

Article 15. In the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea the minimum working age is 16.

It is prohibited by the State for children under the working age to work.

Article 16. The working day is eight hours.

Because of the difficulties and special conditions inherent in some types of labour, the State may set the working day at seven or six hours.

The working day of a woman worker with three children or more is six hours.

Article 17. The working people must become revolutionary and working-class through labour and work in a way which is worthy of masters by maintaining the communist attitude towards labour and displaying a high degree of the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance.

Article 18. The labour discipline of socialism is a voluntary discipline and to strictly maintain this discipline is the bounden duty of the working people.

The working people must strictly maintain the labour discipline of socialism and keep to the stated working hours; they are not allowed to leave their workplaces freely without observing due formalities.

Article 19. It is an essential duty of the socialist working people to
develop the technical revolution with all their energy.

The working people must establish new norms all the time and produce and build more within the unit hour by raising their technical and skill levels and taking an active part in the technical innovation movement.

**Article 20.** The working people should take great pride and display a high sense of responsibility in their work and so use all their wisdom and energies and always overfulfil their daily, monthly and quarterly quotas by tapping all reserves and potentials.

**Article 21.** The working people must be diligent and constantly improve the quality of the goods they produce by keeping strictly to the technical regulations and standard procedures in production and construction.

**Article 22.** The working people must prize and take great care of their machinery and equipment, increase the use made of the equipment, and make every effort to save raw materials and other supplies.

**Article 23.** The working people must keep their workplaces tidy and hygienically clean, guard them with vigilance, and strictly observe the labour protection law and regulations to prevent accidents.

**Article 24.** In the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea the position of a citizen is determined by whether he works conscientiously or not. A model worker enjoys the love and great respect of the people.

Those who work as masters and perform great labour feats in socialist construction are awarded State decorations, such as the title of Labour Hero, and other titles of honour.

**CHAPTER 3. THE SOCIALIST ORGANIZATION OF LABOUR**

**Article 25.** The rational organization of social labour is an
important guarantee for making the best use of all the country’s manpower resources and allowing full scope for the creative enthusiasm and talents of the working people to ensure continuous, high growth in output.

The State explores and employs all the manpower resources in both town and country in a coordinated way.

**Article 26.** The State meets in full the requirements of the Taean work system in the organization of social labour.

Factories, enterprises and social-cooperative organizations must turn labour administration into work with the people, follow the mass line in the organization of labour, and use manpower carefully and rationally.

**Article 27.** Labour planning is fundamental to the proper organization of work and the effective use of manpower resources.

The State draws up and carries out realistic and dynamic labour plans which coordinate the country’s labour resources with the demand for manpower down to the last detail.

**Article 28.** The State adheres firmly to the principle of maintaining a proper balance of manpower between industry and agriculture, between the productive and non-productive branches, and between the basic and auxiliary branches of production.

The State organs, including labour administration offices, enterprises and social-cooperative organizations, must distribute manpower on the principle of deciding on the number of workers in the non-productive branches in keeping with the country’s level of economic development while giving priority to the growth of the number of workers in the productive branches; and they should steadily increase the proportion of manpower in the branches directly involved in production.

**Article 29.** The State taps the country’s manpower resources and fosters labour reserves systematically to meet the needs for labour of the national economy on a planned basis.

The economic institutions and labour administration offices at all levels should draw up their plans for replenishing and regulating manpower in accordance with the requirements of the State’s
economic policy and thus promptly meet the demands for manpower envisaged in the plan for the development of the national economy and regulate and distribute manpower properly to the different economic branches and to the different regions.

**Article 30.** The State institutions, enterprises and social-cooperative organizations must appoint workers in accordance with their sex, age, physical constitution, their wishes and their technical and skill levels so that the working people can give full rein to their creative wisdom and abilities.

**Article 31.** The State provides all the necessary conditions for women to take an active part in social labour.

The local government bodies and the relevant State organs, enterprises and social-cooperative organizations must develop nurseries, kindergartens, children’s wards and public service facilities for the convenience of working women, and form home industry workteams and home cooperatives so that women who do not go out to work may join them if they wish.

**Article 32.** Factories, enterprises and social-cooperative organizations must eliminate any waste of labour and enable their workers to make full use of the 480 minutes of daily working time by organizing the work properly in conformity with the specific character of the production processes, the standard of the equipment and working conditions, establishing strict order in labour management and providing full working conditions for them.

**Article 33.** In organizing the life of the working people the State observes to the letter the principle of eight hours of work, eight hours of rest and eight hours of study.

The State institutions, enterprises and social-cooperative organizations should combine work, rest and study properly and thus put the labour of the working people on a regular basis, make their study an everyday affair, and ensure that they have proper rest.

**Article 34.** When unavoidable circumstances lead to a temporary surplus of manpower, the State institutions and enterprises must take prompt steps to employ it temporarily at other factories, enterprises
and cooperative farms to help in their productive work.

State institutions and enterprises have no right to dismiss workers at will simply because there is a temporary surplus of manpower.

**Article 35.** It is strictly forbidden to mobilize at will the workers of factories, enterprises and cooperative farms for other work.

The productive workers at factories and enterprises must not be mobilized for other work without the approval of the State.

In the busy farming season no one is allowed to mobilize farmers for work which is not connected with farming.

**Article 36.** Management at factories, enterprises and cooperative farms is in duty bound to take part in productive labour for a period prescribed by law.

---

**CHAPTER 4. SOCIALIST DISTRIBUTION**

**BY THE WORK ACCOMPLISHED**

**Article 37.** Distribution according to the quantity and quality of work done is an economic law of socialism; and distribution according to the work accomplished is an effective means of raising the working people’s enthusiasm for production and their technical and skill levels and stimulating the development of the productive forces.

The State applies the socialist principle of distribution thoroughly, according to the quantity and quality of work done, while steadily raising the working people’s political and ideological consciousness.

Irrespective of their sex, age and race, the working people receive the same remuneration for the same work.

**Article 38.** The State fixes the pay scale on the principles that the working people need to restore the physical and mental energies expended in work and that it guarantees their livelihood.

The State institutions, enterprises and social-cooperative organizations should pay the workers, office employees and
cooperative members according to the pay scale and to the principles of payment stipulated by the State.

**Article 39.** The basic forms of pay which apply to the workers, office employees and cooperative members are piece rates and fixed rates, and the forms of additional pay are extra allowances and bonuses.

The State institutions, enterprises and social-cooperative organizations must apply the different forms of payment correctly so as to encourage the working people’s enthusiasm for production and to allow them to give free rein to their creative ability.

**Article 40.** The State allocates wage funds to factories and enterprises on the basis of an accurate assessment of the fulfilment of their production quotas and their cost plans according to the principles of business accounting.

Factories and enterprises ought to grant bonuses to model workers on the basis of an accurate assessment of the fulfilment of their production assignments, the quality of the goods they produce, the use they make of the equipment and materials and so on.

**Article 41.** The work norm is the gauge for evaluating the results of work, and fixing work norms correctly is an important condition for a proper application of the socialist principle of distribution.

The State firmly adheres to the mass line in fixing work norms and implements the principle of determining them on the basis of an accurate estimation of the working people’s level of ideological consciousness, their technical qualifications, the latest achievements of science and technology, and so on.

**Article 42.** In each branch of the national economy the State establishes a model factory where enterprise management has been put onto a regular and standard basis and production normalized in keeping with the requirements of the Taean work system and fixes standard national work norms on the basis of the data from the model factory.

The State institutions, enterprises and social-cooperative organizations must set accurate and progressive work norms in accordance with the national standards to suit the developing situation and specific conditions, apply them correctly and renew them constantly.
**Article 43.** Daily work-points are the gauge by which to evaluate the results of the work of farmers and workers in the service of cooperative farms and to fix the amount of their share.

Cooperative farms must assess the daily work-points correctly, and regularly make them known to the public, and allot their share properly to the farmers and the workers in their service according to their work-points.

**Article 44.** The sub-workteam management system and workteam premium system are an important guarantee for educating the agricultural workers in the collectivist spirit and implementing the socialist principle of distribution correctly.

The agricultural guidance organs and cooperative farms should introduce the sub-workteam management system and the workteam premium system and thus assess the daily work-points accurately and make proper additional payments for work.

**Article 45.** The State maintains the principle of rationally readjusting the balance of pay between the workers and office employees in all branches as industry and agriculture develop and labour productivity grows, of raising the incomes of the farmers in different areas equally, and of improving the general living standards of the workers, office employees and farmers proportionately.

---

**CHAPTER 5. LABOUR AND THE TECHNICAL REVOLUTION; IMPROVEMENT OF THE WORKING PEOPLE’S TECHNICAL SKILL**

**Article 46.** The main task of the technical revolution is to eliminate the basic differences in labour and free the working people from arduous work.

The State endeavours to free the working people, now rid of exploitation and oppression, even from the restraints of nature and to
ensure them complete equality in labour, by taking the technical revolution onto a new, higher stage on the basis of the successes achieved in socialist industrialization.

**Article 47.** The State removes the difference between heavy and light labour, and eliminates labour under heat-affected and harmful conditions, through comprehensive mechanization, semi-automation and automation in various fields of the national economy, particularly industry.

**Article 48.** The State further consolidates the successes achieved in the irrigation and electrification of agriculture and brings the wide use of chemicals and comprehensive mechanization to early completion through the promotion of the rural technical revolution, thereby achieving the industrialization and modernization of farming and eliminating the differences between agricultural and industrial labour.

**Article 49.** The scientists, technicians and producers must expand the technical innovation movement on a mass scale by improving their creative cooperation. The State institutions, enterprises and social-cooperative organizations must give great incentive to the movement for creative ideas and rationalization and must introduce new ideas and rationalization concepts into production without delay.

The State confers benefits on inventors, originators and production innovators who have made a significant contribution to the development of the national economy, and grants technical qualifications to them.

**Article 50.** The State trains all the working people to be competent personnel equipped with the latest science and technology, with a good knowledge of modern machinery and equipment and capable of managing the national economy skilfully. This is done through the system of regular education and the various forms of part-time education, such as factory and farm colleges, factory and farm higher specialized schools, evening schools and correspondence courses.

**Article 51.** The State institutions, enterprises and social-cooperative organizations must establish proper systems for learning technical skills and for passing on these skills to raise the
working people’s technical and skill levels steadily and to assist all of them in acquiring more than one kind of modern skill and in becoming proficient in the use of their machines and equipment as well as in the skills of their individual branches of work.

**Article 52.** The State enforces the system of examinations for engineers’ grades and for technical skill rating in order to improve the technical qualifications of the working people.

The State’s scientific and technical institutions and labour administration offices must organize these examinations on a regular basis.

**CHAPTER 6. LABOUR PROTECTION**

**Article 53.** Good labour protection is an important condition for providing the working people with free, safe and better refined and hygienic conditions for work, and for safeguarding their lives and promoting their health.

The State implements the policy of giving priority to labour protection in advance of production.

**Article 54.** The State institutions, enterprises and social-cooperative organizations must set up a system of education in work safety for the working people to understand the labour protection policy and acquire a technical understanding of work safety, thus making them regard labour protection as something which concerns them personally.

No one is allowed to put people to work before instructing them about the labour protection policy and giving them a technical grounding in work safety in their particular branch of work.

**Article 55.** Providing the working people with safe, tidy and hygienically clean working conditions is the foremost task of all State institutions, enterprises and social-cooperative organizations.

They must prepare work safety devices and provide hygienic
industrial conditions to counter high temperatures, gas and dust and provide good lighting and ventilation; and they must constantly improve and perfect them to prevent accidents at work and occupational diseases and to enable everyone to work in safe, tidy and hygienically clean workplaces.

**Article 56.** The State institutions, enterprises and social-cooperative organizations must carry out comprehensive checks to ensure that working conditions are safe before organizing production and work, and must immediately eliminate anything which endangers the lives or is detrimental to the health of the workers.

If there is the danger of an accident occurring in any production process, production must be stopped immediately; it should only be resumed after the danger has been removed.

**Article 57.** Construction and design establishments and the relevant State institutions and enterprises must provide comprehensive labour occupational safety for the working people in building factories, enterprises, other buildings, structures and in manufacturing machines and equipment.

The factories, enterprises, buildings and structures which have recently been built, enlarged and repaired, and new machines and equipment must not be commissioned or put into operation before the relevant inspecting and controlling organs have inspected them and given permission for them to operate.

**Article 58.** The State institutions, enterprises and social-cooperative organizations must organize regular medical examinations for the promotion of the working people’s health and take prompt measures to maintain their health.

**Article 59.** The State pays special attention to the work safety of women.

The State institutions, enterprises and social-cooperative organizations must provide suitable labour protection arrangements and sanitary facilities for working women.

It is not permitted to assign arduous and harmful labour to women, and to put pregnant women or nursing mothers on night work.
Article 60. The State provides the working people with labour protection equipment and supplies them with free working necessities and additional nutriments.

While at work, the working people should always use the specified labour protection equipment and working necessities, and must not use labour protection supplies wastefully.

Article 61. The State institutions, enterprises and social-cooperative organizations should introduce a strict system and order in production, and lay down standard procedures for operation and labour protection regulations, ensuring that all officials and working people observe them strictly.

The State must exercise strict control so that labour protection is not carried out in such an irresponsible way that it endangers the safeguarding of the working people’s lives and the promotion of their health.

CHAPTER 7. LABOUR AND RECREATION

Article 62. The working people have the right to rest. The State guarantees the working people the full right to rest through the eight-hour day, paid holidays, accommodation in sanatoria and rest-homes at State expense, a steady increase in cultural facilities, and similar provisions.

Article 63. The working people rest when the working day is over. Economic establishments and enterprises are not allowed to make them work overtime.

Article 64. The working people have one day off each week. Holidays as specified by the State and Sundays are rest days.

If the State institutions, enterprises and social-cooperative organizations make people work on a holiday due to unavoidable circumstances, they must give them a day off without fail during the following week.
Article 65. The workers, office employees and cooperative farmers have a fortnight’s regular holiday every year and, in certain types of occupation, an additional holiday of from 7 to 21 days may be granted.

Article 66. In addition to the regular and additional holidays, working women are entitled to maternity leave, 35 days before and 42 days after childbirth, irrespective of the length of their service.

Article 67. The State extends the networks of sanatoria and rest-homes in many ways, modernizes their facilities and organizes many trips to see and explore beauty spots in order to meet the growing needs of the working people for cultural recreation.

The State institutions and enterprises concerned should manage their sanatoria efficiently so as to enable the working people to take sufficient rest while working.

CHAPTER 8. STATE AND SOCIAL BENEFITS FOR THE WORKING PEOPLE

Article 68. The State regards it as the supreme principle of its activities to assume responsibility for the livelihood of all the working people and to raise their material and cultural standards steadily.

Besides remuneration for their work, the working people receive a number of additional benefits from the State and society.

Article 69. The State provides functional, modern houses and hostels for the working people.

The State builds modern rural houses at its own expense and offers them free for the use of cooperative farmers.

Article 70. The State supplies the workers and office employees and their dependants with provisions at low prices.

Article 71. The State raises the children of the working people in modern nurseries and kindergartens at State and public expense.

Article 72. The State gives compulsory education to the children of
the working people who are under the working age and provides them with free education in schools of all levels up to university.

All pupils and students are supplied with uniforms and school books at low prices by the State, and the students at higher specialized schools, colleges and universities receive grants.

**Article 73.** The State grants subsidies to those working people who are temporarily disabled by labour accidents, disease or injury under the State and social insurance system and, if the period of disability extends beyond six months, gives them disability pensions under the State and social security system.

**Article 74.** The State grants old-age pensions to working men of 60 and working women of 55 when they have completed a given length of service.

**Article 75.** When people who have given distinguished service to the State and have performed great feats in their work and social and political activities are disabled or die, the State grants special benefits to them or their families.

**Article 76.** The State and social-cooperative organizations grant the workers, office employees and cooperative farmers average pay or give them an average number of work-points during their regular and additional holidays, and pay temporary subsidies or give an average number of work-points during maternity leave.

**Article 77.** When working people are killed in labour accidents, or die from disease or injury, the State grants bereaved family pensions to their dependants and takes charge of the children who have no one to support them.

**Article 78.** The State looks after incapable old people and cripples who have no one to support them free of charge at homes for the aged and sanatoria.

**Article 79.** The State gives medical aid to all working people under the system of free medical care.

The workers, office employees, cooperative farmers and their dependants receive every kind of medical care, such as treatment, accommodation in sanatoria, preventive aid and midwifery, free of charge.
ON ENHANCING THE ROLE OF THE OFFICIALS
OF THE PEOPLE’S GOVERNMENT ORGANS

Speech Delivered to the Officials
of People’s Government Organs
April 20, 1978

I originally intended to make a speech in connection with the adoption of the Socialist Labour Law at the recent session of the Supreme People’s Assembly. However, I have not done so because of the lack of time. So, I would like to avail myself of this opportunity, when the chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees and administrative committees and the officials of the Central People’s Committee and the Administration Council are gathered together, to refer to some tasks confronting the officials of the people’s government organs.

1. ON THOROUGHLY IMPLEMENTING
THE SOCIALIST LABOUR LAW

The recent session of the Supreme People’s Assembly adopted the Socialist Labour Law. This law is fundamentally different in character from the Labour Law which was promulgated during the period of the democratic revolution immediately after liberation.
The labour law which was issued immediately after liberation was a democratic labour law, the aim of which was to free the working people from colonial and feudal exploitation and oppression. However, the labour law that has recently been adopted is a socialist labour law, the aim of which is to provide the working people, who have been completely freed from exploitation and oppression, with an independent and creative working life.

In adopting the Socialist Labour Law at the recent session of the Supreme People’s Assembly our main intention was to get all the working people to form a correct attitude towards labour and display great revolutionary enthusiasm and creativity in the building of socialism and communism.

Some people believe that in a communist society one will be able to have an easy life and not have to work. This is a wrong view of communist society. Communist society is not at all a society in which one will have an easy life. Even in a communist society people will have to work. Without working, people can neither develop society nor maintain their own existence. Therefore, if the building of socialism and communism is to be successful, all the working people should be encouraged to love labour and be faithful in it. Educating the working people in this spirit presents itself as a still more important issue in the period following the triumph of the socialist revolution and when the problems of food, clothing and housing have been generally solved.

As I said when the *Theses on Socialist Education* were published at the 14th Plenary Meeting of the Fifth Party Central Committee, the revolutionary enthusiasm of the people runs very high at the time of the agrarian reform and agricultural cooperation. However, their revolutionary enthusiasm declines gradually when they no longer have any worries about the essentials of life, such as food, after the material and technical foundations of socialism have been laid following the triumph of the revolution. This is true in the light both of the experience of those countries which carried out the socialist revolution a long time ago and of our own experience in building socialism here.

In our country today everyone has the right to eat from the moment of
his birth. The state supplies factory and office workers with provisions for next to nothing and provides housing for all the working people. Therefore, our people have no worries about their livelihood. This is why in the past some people who were ideologically backward loathed labour and did not work faithfully. This shows that idleness may breed among the working people if education in labour is not conducted properly among them when the problems of food, clothing and housing have been generally solved following the establishment of the socialist system. That is why we have always regarded education in labour as an important factor in communist education, and directed great efforts towards educating the working people to love labour and work faithfully.

If we are to persuade all the working people to work faithfully in a socialist society, we should intensify not only ideological education, but also legal control.

In socialist society labour is noble and honourable. However, differences in working conditions still exist and labour has not yet become the primary requirement of life. Furthermore, in this society many remnants of obsolete ideology still linger in the minds of the people. Therefore, until communism has been made a reality, it is necessary to stipulate by law that it is the duty of everyone to work. It is precisely because such legal control is needed that the state exists.

Socialist society is a society based on collectivism, in which all the working people work and live in unity. If a large number of people are to work and live collectively, there should be some standards of behaviour and everyone should be made to observe them strictly.

The People’s Army has a variety of military regulations such as the internal service regulations and garrison regulations. They stipulate the daily routine of the soldiers, how to stand sentry and how to conduct themselves in battle. Because soldiers behave according to these military regulations, they all act as one and strict discipline and order are maintained in the unit.

Like the army, society should also have norms and regulations which stipulate how work should be organized as well as the duties and
rights of the working people in their working life. And the state should exercise control so that all the citizens observe them without question. This is the way for all the members of society to form a correct attitude towards labour and work faithfully and for socialism and communism to be built successfully. That is why we conceived and prepared the Socialist Labour Law a long time ago and had it adopted at the recent session of the Supreme People’s Assembly.

The Socialist Labour Law is a textbook of communist education for educating all the working people to love labour and work faithfully; it is the code of behaviour which should be abided by in communal labour for society and the collective. Our Socialist Labour Law will exert a great revolutionary influence on the progressive people the world over and will be a powerful encouragement to the people of many countries in their efforts to build a new society.

Not all the problems arising in the working life will be solved of their own accord merely because the Socialist Labour Law has been adopted. No matter how good the law that has been drawn up may be, it will be nothing more than a sheet of paper if it is not put into effect.

In the past we have adopted a variety of excellent laws. We issued the Socialist Constitution and, on the basis of this, adopted the Law on the Nursing and Upbringing of Children and the Land Law and also advanced the Theses on Socialist Education. Although it was not adopted as a law at the Supreme People’s Assembly, the Theses on Socialist Education is tantamount to a socialist education law. In addition, we have drawn up various state laws and regulations. However, the officials of the people’s government organs have neither organized the work properly for executing the laws, nor supervised and controlled the actual execution of the laws satisfactorily. As a result, even after the promulgation of the Law on the Nursing and Upbringing of Children and of the Land Law, there has been no great improvement in the safeguarding and promotion of children’s health, nor is land protection and conservation satisfactory.

All our laws and regulations reflect the will and demands of the working people and aim to defend their interests. Therefore,
implementing laws and regulations to the letter is the most important duty and an honourable task for the officials of the people’s government organs who serve the people. They should explain and conduct information about the laws and regulations widely among the masses of the people, increase the law-abiding spirit of the people and organize the work well to implement the laws fully; they should also supervise and control their execution properly.

I have been told that some chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees are now claiming that the officials of people’s committees have nothing in particular to do. But they are wrong. The Socialist Constitution, as well as the laws and regulations for different spheres which have been drawn up on the basis of this constitution, are the work content and directives for the chairmen of people’s committees to guide work. With the recent adoption of the Socialist Labour Law the chairmen of people’s committees have more work to do.

The officials of the Central People’s Committee and of the Administration Council, as well as those of the provincial, city and county people’s committees and administrative committees, should work hard to implement the recently adopted Socialist Labour Law.

The full implementation of this law is of extreme importance in remoulding the ideology of the people, establishing the socialist way of life and developing the productive forces. Whereas the Land Law is a law which aims to protect, conserve and harness nature, the Socialist Labour Law is a law which defines all the aspects of work with people, their working life. The Socialist Labour Law comprehensively defines the principles of labour organization and the standards of behaviour which should be adhered to in the working life. Therefore, it is only when this law is implemented fully that all the people will work faithfully, that a revolutionary habit of life to love labour will prevail throughout the whole of society and that the production of material wealth will increase rapidly.

If the Socialist Labour Law is to be implemented fully, the work should be organized well.

For one thing, if we are to persuade the workers at a machine
factory to make full use of the 480-minute working day, as required by
the Socialist Labour Law, we should fully implement the Taean work
system and carry the materials, tools and jigs which are needed to the
work places. Only then will the workers be able to continue production
for the full 480 minutes without leaving their place of work.

The fact that the workers at some factories and other enterprises are
now failing to make full use of the 480-minute working day can be
attributed to unsatisfactory working conditions. While giving
on-the-spot guidance at the coal mines in the Tokchon area in spring
last year I discovered that the miners lacked small tools such as axes,
saws and hammers which they ought to have had, and so wandered
around looking for them while they were doing propping work.
Because the working conditions provided were not adequate, the
miners’ actual daily working hours were short. So I ensured that every
miner was provided with a rock drill as well as such small tools as an
axe, saw and hammer. This brought about a considerable acceleration
in the speed of tunnelling and a sharp increase in coal production. This
demonstrates that it is only when the working conditions provided are
adequate that it becomes possible to implement thoroughly the
requirement of the Socialist Labour Law for making full use of the
480-minute working day.

The officials of the people’s government organs should not only
accept the Socialist Labour Law but take concrete steps so that the
tasks which are set out in this law are put into effect in all fields and
units. In this way the Socialist Labour Law will be implemented fully.

2. ON ENHANCING THE FUNCTION AND ROLE
OF LOCAL GOVERNMENT ORGANS

At present some chairmen of the provincial, city and county
people’s committees and administrative committees are unclear about
the relationship between the people’s committee and the administrative committee, and so are not playing their role properly.

The relationships between the provincial, city and county people’s committees and administrative committees are the same as that between the Central People’s Committee and the Administration Council. The Central People’s Committee guides and supervises the work of the Administration Council. Likewise, the provincial, city and county people’s committees are duty bound to guide, supervise, control and promote the work of the respective administrative committees. Furthermore, the local people’s committees have the authority to stop or annul any inappropriate acts on the part of the administrative committees.

In former days when there was no separate administrative committee, the chairman of the people’s committee did the work of both the power organ and administration. However, now that the people’s committee and the administrative committee exist separately, the chairman of the people’s committee should guide and control the work of the chairman of the administrative committee and should do administrative work through him.

The provincial, city and county administrative committees should be guided by the Administration Council on a national level, and in the provinces they should be guided and controlled by the people’s committees, which are local organs of power when the local people’s assemblies are not in session.

The local people’s committees have the duty and authority to guide and control the work of the administrative committees. However, the chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees are failing to guide and control the work of the chairmen of the administrative committees properly. This has allowed the latter to get out of control.

A short time ago at the joint meeting of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee and the Central People’s Committee, I assigned the local government organs the task of doubling this year the production of the sundry goods that are used daily and increasing local
budget revenue. However, it seems that the chairmen of provincial administrative committees have not been enthusiastic about implementing this task, claiming that it is difficult to increase production any more in local industry. We can see from this fact alone that the chairmen of the administrative committees are outside Party and legal control.

I have set the task of increasing the production of daily necessities as General Secretary of the Party Central Committee and as President of the State. So, from the Party viewpoint, the chairmen of the provincial administrative committees should be ideologically prepared to implement the instructions of the General Secretary as an absolute duty and without fail. And from the administrative viewpoint, they should carry out the order of the President of the State with a sense of legal obligation. From now onwards, both Party guidance to the chairmen of the administrative committees as well as administrative control on the part of the people’s committees should be intensified.

The chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees should guide the work of the chairmen of the administrative committees with the attitude of sharing responsibility for any failure in the work of the administrative committees and give them generous assistance so that they will serve the people more faithfully.

In order to enhance the function and role of the people’s government organs, we should further intensify the struggle against bureaucratic practices.

Our people’s government truly is a government of the people which serves them. The officials of the people’s government organs should not become bureaucrats who lord it over the people and give orders and shout commands to them, but should become their servants. However, some officials of the people’s government organs still do not have a clear understanding of the essence and mission of the people’s government organs and frequently commit bureaucratic practices.

Officials of the people’s government organs should intensify their study of the speech, *Let Us Further Strengthen the People’s*
Government, delivered at the First Session of the Sixth Supreme People’s Assembly and strongly combat bureaucratic practices. Thus, they should all become true, faithful servants of the people.

3. ON TAKING GOOD CARE OF THE PEOPLE’S LIFE

Taking good care of the life of the people is the most important duty of the officials of people’s government organs. The chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees and administrative committees in particular should do this work in a responsible manner. They guide the organs serving the people’s life directly. Local factories that produce daily necessities belong to the administrative committee. In addition, service organizations such as trade, city management and procurement and food administration, as well as educational and public health organizations are all directed by the people’s committee and the administrative committee. Therefore, whether the standard of living of the people is improved rapidly or not depends largely on how the chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees and administrative committees work.

The work of these chairmen should be appraised according to the standard of living of the population in the respective area. The work of factory and enterprise managers should be appraised according to the amount of goods produced. And the work of the chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees and administrative committees should be judged by how well they have equipped their factories, by how far they have expanded the network of service facilities and by how much more prosperous and convenient they have made the life of the population. The work of the officials of government organs should not be appraised according to how much they talk.
All the officials of government organs, including the chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees and administrative committees, should be strong in their Party loyalty, their working-class spirit and their spirit to serve the people and work hard to improve the standard of living of the people.

If the people’s living standards are to be improved, above all else local industry should be developed so as to increase the production of goods of mass consumption.

It is not food or fabrics that are now in short supply for the people, but minor items that are used daily such as toothbrushes, toothpaste, soap, pencils, paper, hairpins and perfume. Such everyday necessities as toothbrushes and toothpaste are all produced by local factories. Making these articles requires neither a large amount of materials and electricity, nor any special technical skill. If the officials of people’s government organs equip local factories well and guide them properly, we shall be able to produce as many of these daily necessities as we want for the people.

A long time ago I stressed that every province should build local factories in different places and produce large quantities of the goods that are essential for the population and that the officials of local government organs should manage the economic affairs of their respective area without outside help.

However, as yet the chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees and administrative committees are not working hard to improve the standard of living of the people, nor are they thinking seriously about how they can manage their economic affairs by themselves. At the moment some local factories are not operating at full capacity. This is because the officials of people’s government organs are not working in a responsible manner and are not guiding and controlling these factories properly. Some officials claim that the failure of local factories to produce articles of daily use properly can be attributed to the mobilization of their labour force for other purposes. However, they are only mobilized during the rice transplanting season. During this season the whole country should give assistance to the
rural areas. Therefore, local factories should also take part in this work. If these factories are operated properly at other times, their output can still be great.

Recently, the plan for the production of sundry goods that are used daily was discussed again, and it became clear that the officials of people’s government organs are not interested in the production of goods of mass consumption. It was with a view to implementing the task of increasing local budget revenue through stepping up the production of daily sundries at local factories that the Administration Council discussed again this year’s plan for the production of these goods with the chairmen of provincial administrative committees. Apparently some of them took no active part in the discussion. Later, the Administration Council discussed the plan once again and raised the targets higher than the original ones. However, the plan is still not satisfactory.

The revised plan for the production of indoor thermometers envisages only 30,000 more than the initial one. This kind of thermometer is needed by every household both in the towns and the countryside. Besides this kind, we need other kinds of thermometer, too—those for measuring the temperature of the rice-seedling cold-beds in the rural areas as well as those for laboratories. To this end, we should produce millions of thermometers every year. This is not a very difficult task. If local factories are provided with some glass and plastic, they will be able to produce as many indoor thermometers as are needed.

We should also supply large quantities of hygrometers and barometers. It is only when this is done that the people will be able to lead a more comfortable life. However, the plan for the production of hygrometers is also unambitious.

The revised plan for the production of needles envisages only four million more than the original one. Every person needs four or five hand needles a year. So this small increase will not be enough to meet the people’s demands in full.

The target for shaving cream production has been increased by 22
per cent above the initial one. But this is not sufficient, either.

If we are to provide the people with plenty of the necessities of life, we should at least double or treble the production of all kinds of daily sundries compared with the figures envisaged in the initial plans.

At present the variety of consumer goods is not great and the specifications of each product are not varied. In the case of needles, there should be hand needles, knitting-needles and sewing needles. And as for hand needles themselves, there should be thin, large, long and short ones. A long time ago we set the task of increasing the variety of consumer goods to 40,000 kinds. However, this task has not yet been fully implemented.

The officials of people’s government organs do not strive to augment the production of mass consumer goods. This is because they lack the spirit of serving the people. If the shops run short of those goods which our country cannot yet produce in large quantities, this is a different matter. But they even run out of those goods which our country can produce in large quantities. This shows that our officials are not enthusiastic enough and lack a sense of responsibility and the spirit of serving the people.

The officials of people’s government organs should have the firm determination to work with credit to ensure that the life of the people is prosperous and should work hard to develop local industry.

It is only when local industry is developed that it will be possible to produce large quantities of different kinds of essential goods. In the past when local industry was in its heyday, different kinds of daily necessities were turned out in large quantities, goods were piled up in the shops and the people’s life was prosperous.

We should all make strenuous efforts to revitalize local industry, in the same way as we built a large number of local factories in 1958.

All the regions should build more factories and form housewives’ workteams on a wide scale.

Local government organs should either equip factories if they need it, or build new ones in order to produce large quantities of those essential goods which are in short supply or which the provinces are
still unable to produce. Some officials of local industry are apparently reluctant to produce daily necessities, claiming that their output value does not increase much irrespective of how many of them are produced. They are mistaken. For local factories it is not important to raise the output value, but what does matter is to improve the standard of living of the people by making different kinds of essential goods in large quantities.

The number of medium- and small-sized chemical factories should also be increased. In the past many of these factories were built to produce different kinds of chemical goods including dyestuff, but this is no longer being done. I have been told that many of these factories have been transferred to nationally-run industries. This is wrong. There is no need for them to be taken over by these industries. If these industries fail to manage local factories properly, the construction of those factories will be pointless. From now onwards you should not amalgamate or transfer local factories to nationally-run industries without good reason.

In order to develop local industry, local factories should keep the same labour force.

This is the way to improve the level of the workers’ technique and skill rapidly and produce good-quality goods.

The Sakju Textile Mill started production with a few looms. Some housewives have been working at this factory for 20 years and now they are over 50 years old. So, the workers’ level of technique and skill as well as the quality of the goods they produce are very high.

Local factories will be able to maintain the same labour force for a long time and improve their technical expertise only when they employ many housewives, and not girls. However, some officials are reluctant to employ many housewives at local factories and do not direct due attention to keeping the same labour force for a long time. From now onwards local industry should employ many housewives as far as possible and leave the workers at their posts.

For the development of local industry it is also necessary to make rational use of the raw material resources in the provinces.
Local industry should adhere to the principle of turning out goods by making maximum use of the raw materials available in the province. If you rely on raw materials from other areas or those from nationally-run industry, you will be unable to develop local industry and mass-produce a wide variety of consumer goods. As I said on a previous occasion, people in Jagang Province used to make abacuses for sale using plastic brought from Hamhung instead of thinking of using the wood of which there was plenty in the area. You should not manage local industry in such a way.

The provinces abound in raw materials which can be tapped and used. Local factories can produce pencil cases, chopsticks, paper and similar things from wood. If we make effective use of raw materials that are available locally, we shall be able to make large amounts of different kinds of soft drinks for the people. People in Changsong County, North Phyongan Province, will be able to make syrup from the wild pears which are abundant in this area and those in Samjiyon County, Ryanggang Province, will be able to make syrup or jelly from blueberries.

Local factories should produce different kinds of consumer goods from their own raw materials whatever the circumstances and meet the demands of the population in their own areas. If they have any surplus goods, they should send them elsewhere.

Local industry should be developed along more modern lines. It is high time we improved the technical foundations of our local industry. Local factories should improve their equipment and raise the technical levels of the workers so as to produce large quantities of essential goods such as refrigerators, washing machines, bicycles and electric fans.

If they are provided with small electric motors and thin plate, local factories can produce as many of these goods as are needed. The small electric-motor factory now under construction should be completed as soon as possible and the production of thin plate should be increased so that we will be able to provide local factories with sufficient of these things. If this is done, local factories will be able to increase the
production of such essential goods and the standard of living of the people will be improved still more.

To proceed. The network of public service establishments should be greatly expanded.

As yet the number of these establishments is not large. Shops for the repair of sewing machines, radios and TV sets are few in number. And the repair shops we have are not widely used by the population because they do not have sufficient spare parts. In future we should set up more repair shops and supply them with sufficient spare parts and also equip various service establishments better so that the people will be provided with every convenience in their daily life.

We should also improve city management.

City management is a very important matter, the aim of which is to provide conveniences for the people in their life. Therefore, the chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees and administrative committees should pay great attention to this work.

The most important aspect of city management is the proper administration of the cities.

At present this work cannot be regarded as satisfactory. Neither provincial seats nor county seats are looked after properly. A short time ago I toured Taean. The city is very dirty; piles of coal are littered around the houses and coal ash is piled up.

A long time ago I gave instructions that the residents should be supplied with briquets. However, coal is still supplied in its original form and this makes the city dirty. If cities are to be kept clean, briquets must be supplied to the houses instead of providing coal in its raw state.

You are mistaken if you think that simply building plenty of houses and making the streets attractive means that everything is fine with city administration. You should not only build majestic, well-planned cities, but also keep them neat and manage them well.

If the cities are to be kept neat and tidy, enough vehicles should be supplied to the organizations which deal with city management.

The lorries intended for city management have been amalgamated
to the motor pool without thought and they are not supplied properly when they are needed for this work. As a result, some cities cannot carry away coal ash and dirt promptly.

We should set aside some of the lorries now belonging to the motor pools to be used exclusively for city management and form a motor vehicle corps or workteam and let city management organizations use them freely. The motor pools should mobilize these vehicles for city management alone and should never use them for other purposes. This will make it possible to improve the technical management of the lorries and also to solve satisfactorily the problem of transportation needed for city management.

An important aspect of city management is to provide a proper water supply and sewerage system for the houses.

Many flats have been built in provincial towns such as county seats and workers’ settlements. However, some of them are not provided with a proper water supply and sewerage system, and this is a source of inconvenience for the people.

People who are working in city management should provide the existing flats with a good water supply and sewerage system so as to offer convenience for the people and keep the cities more pleasant and hygienic. Those flats which will be built in the future should be provided well with these facilities.

Houses must be repaired promptly and kept neatly.

People’s government organs should ensure that shops always have on sale a variety of the materials needed for this purpose, such as wallpaper, glass and cement. It is only if this is done that the people will be able to keep their houses neat at all times.

If city management is to be satisfactory, sufficient money should be made available.

From now onwards, both national and local organizations should set aside a sufficient sum of money for city management from their budget. Nobody should be allowed to use this money for any other purposes.

Furthermore, public health work should be improved.
Public health work is a very important aspect of looking after the health of the people. The chairmen of provincial people’s committees and administrative committees and other officials of local government organs who are responsible for the life of the people, should always show deep concern for this work.

Above all else, the county and ri hospitals should be improved still further and they should be managed properly.

In our country there is a hospital in every county and the clinics in the ri have been converted into hospitals. So, the working people’s health can be safeguarded properly if the treatment and preventive work at these hospitals is satisfactory. The officials of local government organs should ensure that the working people’s health is fully safeguarded by further perfecting the county and ri hospitals and improving the treatment and preventive work there.

To this end, traditional Korean medicines should be produced in large quantities.

At the moment all the curative organizations tend to depend solely on medicines produced at pharmaceutical factories. They should not do this. If they do so, they will be unable to meet in full the demand for medicines, nor will they be able to offer a satisfactory medical service to the working people.

The provinces should make traditional Korean medicines in large quantities and use them in preventive work and medical treatment. There are abundant good materials in the provinces which can be used for this purpose. Therefore, if people in the provinces make a little effort, they will be able to make such drugs as phaedoksan and tincture of soda and produce rhubarb and peppermint. If you set up Korean medicine dispensaries in the counties and see to it that drugs are dispensed according to a doctor’s prescription, you will be able to meet the people’s needs for medicines in full.

Traditional Korean medicines are very efficient in safeguarding a person’s health. Medical workers say that chemical medicines contain material which is harmful to the human body, but there is no such thing in traditional Korean medicines, which are also widely used as tonics.
Of the chemical medicines, only vitamins can be used as a tonic. Therefore, we should never slight traditional Korean medicines.

In future all the provinces should produce more traditional Korean medicines, drawing on our fine tradition in this field. To this end, they should plant wide areas of medicinal herbs and launch an extensive campaign to gather those that grow on mountains.

Acupuncture and moxa cautery should be used widely in medical treatment.

At the moment some people commit bureaucratic practices by restricting, for no reason, those who treat people with acupuncture. They should not do so. Applying acupuncture is an effective method of treatment as well. Those who possess the art of acupuncture and moxa cautery should be provided with the conditions they need for their treatment and should also be educated. This will encourage them to take an active part in treatment.

In addition to acupuncture and moxa cautery, the method of applying cupping pots to boils should also be used in treatment.

To proceed. The officials of people’s government organs should work hard to provide the people with sufficient edible oil.

Last year some guidance teams went to our cornstarch factories and riced corn flour mills to do some improvement work. However, these factories are still not operating at full capacity. So we are unable to supply the people with sufficient edible oil. The chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees and administrative committees should be held responsible for putting these factories in order within the first half of this year so that the production of oil is put onto a steady basis.

The rice-oil mills which produce oil by rendering should also begin operation as soon as possible. It is only when these factories are operated properly that it will be possible to produce soap and lacquer from the oil which is manufactured there and also to find a more satisfactory solution to the problem of the people’s life. I have been told that production at these factories is being held up because of a shortage of catalytic agents. The people in the field concerned should
produce them as envisaged in the plan.

We have not yet fully implemented the decision of the August 1977 Enlarged Meeting of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee to bring about a revolutionary change in oil production and provide the people with sufficient oil. Today I would like to appeal to you once again to improve fully the cornstarch factories and riced corn flour mills by the end of June this year so that the people can be supplied with plenty of oil.

4. ON IMPROVING GUIDANCE TO MAKE THE PEOPLE MORE LAW-ABIDING

An important aspect of the work of the chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees is to give proper guidance to make the people more law-abiding.

At the moment they are not guiding this work properly. So there are in evidence both the liberalistic tendency of not abiding faithfully by laws and regulations and the tendency of recklessly punishing people on the plea of making them more law-abiding.

The most important aspect of guidance to make the people more law-abiding is to conduct efficient information and education so that everyone understands state laws and regulations and observes them voluntarily.

In making the people more law-abiding we aim to get them to observe the laws strictly. To this end, it is first necessary to ensure that everyone has a clear understanding of the laws and regulations. Otherwise, it will be impossible to implement them properly.

Whenever recruits join the People’s Army, they are first taught military regulations such as the internal service regulations. Likewise, if we are to make factory workers observe work regulations faithfully, we must teach them such things as labour safety regulations, technical
regulations and standard procedures of operation. And if we are to get all the members of society to observe state laws and regulations strictly, we must inform them of the various laws and regulations. This is the way to make the people observe them faithfully.

It is true that explanation and information concerning laws must be undertaken by Party organizations and working people’s organizations, but this work must also be conducted extensively by the people’s government organs. The officials of the people’s government organs must not think that this work should be done only by Party and working people’s organizations and that the only work they have to do is merely to organize the execution of laws and supervise it. The officials of the provincial, city and county people’s committees and administrative committees must do a better job than anybody else in explaining and conducting information about laws and regulations. By doing this they will encourage all the working people to form a clear understanding of the laws and observe them voluntarily.

In giving guidance to make the people more law-abiding, the officials of the people’s government organs must never resort to using disciplinary methods.

In the course of implementing laws, some people may break them. We must fight uncompromisingly against any violation of laws. However, this does not justify submitting people to prosecution without consideration or punishing them for no good reason. Punishment is not an end in itself. In every case, the aim of punishing people is to prevent them breaking the law again and to educate the people to take loving care of state and public property, work faithfully and defend the socialist system and, in this way, to remould them. For this reason, you should not punish people indiscriminately for breaking the law, but educate them through criticism or punish them either through administrative channels or apply proper legal sanctions, as the need may be. This is the way to re-educate more people and win them over to the side of the revolution and make them work more faithfully for the motherland and the people.

An important aspect of guidance for making the people more
law-abiding is to deal with complaints properly. Dealing properly with the complaints made by the people is important in combatting bureaucracy, military despotism and all other practices of abusing one’s authority. It cannot be said that every official who works in a state organ observes the law faithfully. Officials who work in the organs of power such as government organs, public security organs and judicial and public prosecutors organs, in particular, are apt to abuse their authority, break the law and behave bureaucratically. If we are to detect these practices promptly and launch a strong ideological campaign against them, we must listen immediately to the complaints which people make and deal with them properly.

However, there are many instances of officials of the people’s government organs not hearing complaints promptly or dealing with them without due consideration.

You must not deal with complaints on impulse. You must deal with them after a great deal of consideration on the basis of studying them closely and getting a full picture. Some of the complaints may be true to the facts and some others may not. For this reason, you may harm innocent people if you deal with complaints on impulse without gaining a full understanding of them.

When they receive complaints, the chairmen of people’s committees should make inquiries either themselves or through Party organizations, the public security organs or other relevant organizations, depending on the content and character of each complaint.

In inquiring into complaints, you must not hear either just the complainant or the accused solely. You must meet them separately and talk to both of them. Furthermore, you must also meet other people to discover the true facts. This is the way to gain a truthful understanding of the situation and deal with the matter fairly.

The chairmen of the provincial, city and county people’s committees should deal with complaints fairly and in a responsible way so as to eliminate completely any abuse of authority and all bureaucratic practices and improve the legal order of our society still further.
5. ON OFFERING EFFICIENT SUPPORT TO PYONGYANG

Pyongyang is the capital of our country and a city which is visited by people from many countries around the world. Last year heads of state and government from nine countries visited our country. This year we are expecting many more heads of state to come here. Pyongyang is visited not only by foreign heads of state, but also by various delegations such as economic and educational delegations.

We can call Pyongyang the face of our country. A man’s appearance is judged by his face. Likewise, foreign visitors to our country will appreciate how Korea has developed by seeing Pyongyang. Therefore, you must develop Pyongyang well. This work is tantamount to cleaning the face of our country.

The whole country must support the work of developing Pyongyang.

Each province must send to Pyongyang some of the daily necessities which it produces in its factories. If these goods are brought to Pyongyang for sale, this will mean supporting the capital city. In addition, this will be good for stimulating the development of local industry because the standard of all the provincial industries will be appraised by the citizens of Pyongyang.

The chairmen of provincial people’s committees and administrative committees must not fail to ensure the supply of those daily necessities which are scheduled to be sent to Pyongyang this year. They must send to Pyongyang only sundry goods of daily use, and may dispense with supplying it with cakes, eggs and meat. They must start implementing this task in May.

In order to provide Pyongyang with the daily necessities which are produced by local industry, the local government organs must organize
the work well and increase the production of goods to the required amount. It is only when they do this that they will be able to meet the demands of the people in the provinces in full even after they have given support to Pyongyang.

Those goods which are produced by nationally-controlled industries must also be supplied first to Pyongyang.

For instance, the toothpaste which is produced at the Sinuiju Cosmetics Factory must first be supplied to Pyongyang to meet its demand, and the remainder should be supplied to the provinces. Therefore, from now onwards the provinces must take measures to produce toothpaste and other daily necessities for themselves instead of depending on nationally-controlled industries for these goods. Things like toothpaste can be produced provincially if only the tubes are available. The provinces should take measures to build a tube factory and produce toothpaste for themselves.

The people in the provinces must do all they can to produce not only toothpaste but also other daily necessities themselves instead of depending on nationally-controlled industries for them and to manage their economic life through their own efforts.

I hope that you will work hard to implement the Socialist Labour Law which was adopted at the recent Supreme People’s Assembly and to carry out the tasks that have been set at today’s meeting and, above all, to make a fresh change in your efforts to improve the standard of living of the people by developing local industry.
I am very pleased that you, Chairman Asukata, are visiting our country again and I welcome you warmly.

In this delegation from your Party, there are some I am meeting for the first time and others whom I have met before. I am happy to meet you again, Chairman Asukata, and I feel that we are old friends.

Your current visit to our country, after the successful conclusion of your Party congress and your re-election as chairman, is an indication of your deep trust in our Party and people and a demonstration of the fact that the relations between our two Parties are very close.

I think that the visit to our country of you, the Chairman, and your company will contribute greatly to strengthening the friendship between our two Parties and the peoples of our two countries. Once again I welcome you warmly on your visit to our country.

I am very pleased that both you and the Japan Socialist Party are actively supporting us and that we have reached agreement on several issues at the talks between the delegations from our two Parties, when it was decided to continue our joint struggle.

Since hearing that you were to visit our country, we have never doubted that good results would be produced at the talks. This is because our two Parties have long since been on good terms. They have supported, learned from and closely cooperated with each other, and have a tradition of friendly relations.
We consider that the policy you, Chairman Asukata, declared at the congress of the Japan Socialist Party to make Japan advance independently, free from US control, and to encourage the Japanese people to maintain independence is absolutely correct.

It is the main trend of our times to demand and fight for independence. Nowadays not only the Japanese people but all the people of the world are calling for independence. No one likes to live in subjugation and subordination to others. I think it natural that the peoples of Korea and Japan demand independence.

Who is it that violates the independence of these peoples?

It is the US imperialists who violate the independence of the Japanese people and it is also they who violate the independence of the Korean people and stand in the way of the reunification of Korea. Korea and Japan are both subjected to aggression and pressure from the US imperialists. The Japanese government seems to be advancing independently, but in fact its policy is to follow US imperialism and is under pressure from it in a variety of ways.

It is clear that the Japanese government is pursuing a policy of following the United States and is subjected to US pressure, and this is demonstrated by its stand towards the establishment of a new international economic order.

The countries of the third world are calling for the establishment of a new international economic order. Actually, Japan could settle her economic affairs without any great problem even if a new international economic order were established as the third world countries demand. However, the Japanese government is following the United States, at the same time as opposing the efforts of the third world countries to establish this order.

The stand of the Japanese government towards the south Korean “regime” also shows us that it is employing a pro-US policy and is under pressure from the US.

Following the United States, the Japanese government is now claiming that the “government” in south Korea is not a puppet regime. The whole world knows that the south Korean “regime” is a puppet
regime, so, no one believes this claim, no matter how distorted the facts may be. It is an undeniable truth that the south Korean “regime” is a puppet one. Because the non-aligned countries know that the south Korean “government” is a puppet regime which maintains US military bases in south Korea, they will not allow the south Korean puppets to join the non-aligned movement.

The Japanese government is trying to make the puppet regime in south Korea a real government, and this is eliciting much criticism. It is doing so under US imperialist pressure.

We hope that the Japanese government will advance independently, free from US control. Needless to say, to achieve this is your immediate fighting task and a common desire of the Korean and Japanese peoples. After all, the destinies of the two peoples are linked.

If Japan advances independently, free from the control of the US imperialists, and assists the third world and developing countries economically and technologically and buys the raw materials she needs from them, while establishing good relations with them, we believe that she will be able to contribute a great deal to the peoples of many of the world’s countries. We also consider that this would help the development of Japan herself. Since Japan, an island nation, depends upon other countries for large quantities of raw materials, the only way ahead for her is to unite with the countries of the third world, use her advanced economy and technology to help them and establish a new international economic order that suits the interests of everyone involved. If Japan takes this road, we believe she will benefit.

As she is an economically developed country, Japan is quite able to survive independently without the need of support from the United States. Some reactionaries in Japan seem to believe they cannot keep on living without US backing, but they are mistaken. Rather, because Japan has US support at present, other countries dislike her and regard her as a leper. Japan will have good relations with a larger number of countries if she does not carry the US disease. It is because Japan has US backing that her people incur the hatred of the people the world over.
We think that Japan will receive support and a warm welcome from the peoples of the third world countries if she advances independently.

At the congress of the Japan Socialist Party you stated that you would encourage the Japanese people to maintain independence and strengthen their unity with broad sections of the world’s people and make Japan develop friendly relations with the third world countries; we consider that this will bring excellent results.

Nowadays many Asian countries are putting a lot of work into economic construction. In recent years I have met Heads of State and delegations from many countries of Southeast Asia, and they have all said that building an independent national economy is essential for the consolidation of the independence of any country.

Similarly, the countries of Africa and the Middle East say that they will build an independent national economy. However, they are technologically backward. If Japan establishes friendly relations with them and helps them economically and technologically, everyone will benefit.

The Japanese people are being awakened by you. It is only a matter of time before they are fully awakened.

To create “two Koreas” is the basic US strategy towards Korea at present. With this purpose in mind, the US imperialists are pretending to show friendly feelings towards us. Last year, the United States made a fuss about cancelling the restrictions on travel to Korea and other measures as if they were doing us a great favour, but the aim of all this was to create “two Koreas”.

US President Carter slandered a number of Latin-American and socialist countries by saying that human rights should not be violated but, in fact, there is no “regime” like the south Korean puppet clique for harshly suppressing human rights. We regard south Korea, of all the places in the world, to be the one where human rights are most severely suppressed.

Currently the south Korean puppets are arresting and imprisoning anyone who makes even the slightest utterance about peaceful reunification, or condemning them to death. They have gone to the
lengths of arresting and jailing Christians, labelling them as communists, simply because they express their opposition to the Park “regime”.

I am very grateful that you have spoken of the need for a struggle to be waged jointly by the peoples of Korea and Japan for making south Korean society democratic. Making south Korean society democratic is in accordance with the common interests of the peoples of our two countries.

However, it is no simple matter. The suppression in south Korea is so severe now that free press activities are forbidden. As for the struggle being waged against the Park “regime” by the Christians, it cannot be reported. So, the south Korean people are scarcely aware of this struggle.

We hope, therefore, that the Japan Socialist Party will, in the future as in the past, help to awaken the south Korean people by raising the voice of the Japanese people in demand of democracy in south Korea. Because the south Korean people listen to Japanese radio broadcasts and see a great deal of Japanese newspapers, they will be further awakened and fight harder for democracy in south Korea if the voices calling for democracy there ring out from Japan.

Of course, we shall have to fight for a long time before the “Japan-south Korea treaty” is cancelled, for instance. But we must continue to uphold the just cause.

When south Korean society has become democratic, the tension will be eased in Korea and US troops will pull out. It is only a few reactionary bureaucrats who are in favour of the presence of US troops in south Korea. The south Korean people dislike their being in south Korea.

Making south Korean society democratic will also mean that the reunification of our country can be achieved. We have no intention of forcing the socialist system on south Korea. Likewise, the south Korean authorities need not oppose our socialist system. When south Korean society is democratic, we can reunify the country by setting up a Confederation, leaving the two systems that exist in the north and the south as they are. Hence, your active support to the south Korean
people in their struggle for democracy is of great value to us.

Although we have already declared on several occasions that we have no intention of “invading the south”, the US imperialists are now concerned over two matters.

The first is that if the Park Chung Hee puppet clique continues to suppress them, the south Korean people might launch an uprising or revolution to oppose the clique and we might take advantage of the situation and attack.

The second is that should they have to remove Park Chung Hee from power, the result might be temporary disorder in south Korea and then we might rush to the attack by capitalizing on this opportunity.

Therefore, the US imperialists can neither leave the Park “regime” as it is nor, however, can they replace it with another immediately. In short, the US imperialists find themselves in a dilemma in south Korea, and do not know which way to turn.

In order to find a way out of this situation, the US imperialists are creating a fuss in south Korea by conducting military exercises. They have even brought the “B-52” strategic bombers of the US Air Force into south Korea from Okinawa for bombing exercises. Although there are many suitable sites for these around Okinawa, the US imperialists have conducted bombing exercises dozens of time again this year by bringing into south Korea the “B-52” strategic bombers of the US Air Force in Okinawa.

The US imperialists allege that the bombers from Okinawa are flying to south Korea to participate in the exercises so that the pilots become familiar with the air route. As today’s modern planes are designed to fly automatically along prearranged routes, it is nothing more than an excuse to claim that the pilots are flying to south Korea to become familiar with the air route.

The US imperialists’ military exercises in south Korea are designed to threaten the people in the northern half of Korea, in south Korea and in Japan. In other words, the US imperialists are conducting military exercises to threaten and intimidate the peoples of our two countries.

As for the US imperialists’ military exercises, we must fight against
them and so must you. We must not allow them to happen, because they are concerned with the violation of national sovereignty.

On this occasion you, Chairman Asukata, have taken the questions of making American troops pull out of Okinawa and out of south Korea to be one and the same issue and have said that you will fight to make it happen. I think that you have considered the matter in all its aspects and that your opinion is absolutely correct. I fully agree with you.

Even if we lay aside the question of whether the American troops will withdraw from Okinawa and south Korea or not, we must still set definite fighting aims for the peoples of our two countries. This is of great importance in combining their struggles and in consolidating friendship and unity between them.

I firmly support your opinion that our two Parties should, hand in hand, carry on a joint struggle against the US imperialist manoeuvres to threaten and intimidate the peoples of Japan and Korea and to obstruct the independent reunification of Korea and encroach upon the independence of the Japanese people.

We are thankful to you for informing us that our Pyongyang Students and Children’s Art Troupe is putting on successful performances in Japan.

The fact that the performances of this art troupe are a success is due to the active help rendered by the Japan Socialist Party as well as by many other democrats and organizations in Japan that are working for friendship and solidarity between Korea and Japan. I am very grateful to the Japan Socialist Party and the many other democrats and friendly organizations there for the positive assistance they have given to the art troupe in its work.
I am grateful to you for coming such a long way to visit our country. Your visit is an expression of your deep trust in and great love for us. Unless you trusted in us, you would not have crossed the ocean to come to this faraway country, bringing your family with you.

Your visit to our country will contribute greatly to strengthening the friendship and unity between the peoples of Korea and Peru.

Your words of high praise for myself, our people and our country have quite overwhelmed me. Your valuable remarks will be a source of great encouragement to our people who are working hard for socialist construction and national reunification.

I thank you for having conveyed greetings to me from the President of your country. I hope you will offer him my kind regards upon your return home.

I should have met you a little earlier, but I could not receive you immediately upon your arrival because several Heads of State have visited our country in succession. Since the beginning of April the Heads of State of six countries have been to our country; yesterday the President of Rumania returned home after concluding his visit. We are expecting the President of the People’s Republic of the Congo tomorrow.

We have diplomatic relations with only a few of the countries of Latin America. Our country maintains relations with only a small
number of these countries, such as Cuba and Guyana.

We would like to have many friends in Latin America. I thank you from the bottom of my heart for the support you are rendering to us in so many ways, displaying such good feeling towards our country. I am delighted to have such a prominent activist as yourself as a friend in Peru. Friends are not decided from the start. Meeting and becoming familiar with one another makes people friends. I think we will become more intimate the more frequently we meet and the more we deepen our mutual understanding.

We are highly appreciative of the independent policy pursued by the Peruvian government. We hope that the Peruvian people will continue to hold fast to independence.

This is the age of independence. The peoples of many of the world’s countries are demanding independence and following the road of independence.

Independence is the lifeblood of the state and the nation. A country without independence cannot be called a completely independent and sovereign country, even if it has gained national independence. Therefore, it is extremely important for states and nations to defend their independence.

To defend independence, it is imperative to fight against imperialism and colonialism. The imperialists are intensifying their aggressive manoeuvres against those countries which are following an independent line.

Our people are fighting imperialism and all forms of foreign interference in an effort to maintain independence.

You have called our country a developed country, but it cannot yet be regarded as such. It is a developing country. When the Second Seven-Year Plan has been carried out, our country will have almost reached the level of a developed country.

The prospects for the Second Seven-Year Plan, now under way, are very bright. The basic task of this plan is to make the national economy more Juche-oriented, modern and scientific so as to make the foundations of the socialist economy more solid and raise the people’s
Making the national economy Juche-oriented means building and developing an economy which is suited to the actual conditions of one’s own country, relying on domestic raw materials and technology. We are intending to improve the Juche-orientation of the national economy in the future, relying on the solid independent national economy which has already been established. This is the way to enable us to live independently, free from the domination of other countries.

It is most important to build an independent national economy. The defence of political independence depends on whether or not an independent national economy is built. The economy supports politics. The political independence of a country cannot be maintained unless it is supported by an independent national economy. This is a proven truth. Therefore, it is vital for a country to build an independent national economy in order to maintain its political independence.

The most important aspect of building an independent national economy is to open up and develop an industry based on domestic raw materials and fuel.

When building factories in the past, we ensured that they relied on the raw materials of our country. The vinalon factory you inspected in Hamhung is also based upon domestic raw materials and on our own technology. The factory is producing vinalon with our own technology using anthracite and limestone, of which there is an abundance in our country. Vinalon is the most stable raw material for our textile industry. We use it to make clothes for the people. The vinalon industry is a Juche-based industry of our country.

In the past, some of our scientists suggested the construction of oil-fired power stations. Of course, the construction of an oil-fired power station requires less funding and time than the building of a hydroelectric or any other power station. However, I did not agree to their suggestion because our country was still unable to produce oil. It was better to build thermal power stations using the coal that is plentiful in our country to fuel it than to construct oil-fired power stations at a time when oil was not being produced domestically. What
would we do when oil could not be imported after constructing oil-fired power stations? That was why I maintained that thermal power stations which relied on our domestic fuel should be built, although more time and funds would be needed.

At the moment, quite a few countries are experiencing economic stagnation due to the worldwide fuel crisis, but our economy is developing safely, unaffected by that crisis. This testifies to the advantages of our Juche-based industry. Korean people must live on Korean soil; they must not think of living in foreign lands.

Building an independent national economy does not mean closing the door to economic exchange with other countries or to advanced foreign technology. When such an economy is built, it will enable the country to make economic and technological exchanges better with other countries and to extend and develop foreign trade.

There are large deposits of iron ore in our country. It is more profitable to mine ore to produce steel for sale or to make the steel into machinery for the market, rather than to sell the ore as it is; moreover, this will make it possible to expand our trade with other countries to an even greater extent.

There is an abundance of anthracite and limestone in our country, and these can be turned into good quality cement. At present we produce 8 million tons of cement a year, and we intend to increase this to over 12 million tons in the future. An annual production of 12 million tons of cement exceeds domestic consumption. So, we are planning to trade our cement surplus with other countries. In particular, we are determined to help the third world countries with cement and in return they can help us. As these countries are now carrying out many construction projects, cement is in great demand.

In our country everything is progressing in accordance with Juche, in not only the economic but also the political, cultural, military and all other fields.

We are concentrating on educating everyone to have the proper ideas and viewpoint to serve the Korean revolution. Thanks to this, the minds of our people are filled with the Juche idea.
Juche has been thoroughly established in the fields of culture and the arts.

Culture and the arts must serve the people. Our people demand culture and art, and these are national in form and socialist in content. They prefer operas and songs from their own country to foreign ones. Such things from abroad rarely conform to the thoughts and sentiments of our people.

Our composers create songs which reflect the aspirations and demands of our people. The theatres in Pyongyang put on performances of operas that match our people’s thoughts and feelings. Our operas are socialist works of art which are national in form and socialist in content.

Juche must be thoroughly established in the military sphere as well. Being a man from a military background, you are well informed of military matters, I think. In the military sphere one must have one’s own military tactics that meet the specific conditions of one’s own country. Foreign tactics do not conform to the situation in one’s own country, and, therefore, one cannot defend one’s country properly with the military tactics of others. Of course it is necessary to learn foreign military tactics as well. This is in order to broaden one’s military knowledge and develop the military tactics of one’s own country.

Let me cite one example.

In one country the soldiers are taught the offensive tactic of driving hundreds of tanks in open order. In a country with a lot of open plains, the offensive tactic of driving hundreds of tanks at a time can be adopted. In our country, however, this tactic cannot be applied because there are no plains which permit the driving of hundreds of tanks.

Our country is mountainous, so the military tactic must be to turn the mountains to our own advantage. We teach our soldiers not foreign military tactics, but those which suit the particular situation in our country.

You have told me that the standard of living of our people is high, but it is not yet particularly high. However, our people have no worries about food, clothing and housing. Our children have the right to their
share of food from the day they are born. The state provides every child with food from the first day of its life. The state buys a kilogramme of rice from the cooperative farmers for 60 jon, and supplies it to the factory and office workers at a price of 8 jon.

Our people lead wholesome lives.

In our country, wine is sold in large quantities on holidays, but not on other days; instead, plenty of beer is available.

Every member of our society is a member of an organization, leading an organizational life: members of the Children’s Union in the CU organization, members of the League of Socialist Working Youth in the LSWY organization, members of the trade unions in the trade union organizations, members of the Women’s Union in the WU organization, members of the Union of Agricultural Working People in the UAWP organization and Party members in the Party organization. As everyone in our country is a member of an organization, there are no instances of people wandering around drunk; everyone leads a wholesome life.

Our compatriots in Japan number 600,000 and 100,000 of these have already returned home to the northern half of Korea. It seems that the women who have returned are pleased because their husbands, who drank alcohol to become the bothers of others and gambled while in Japan, have rid themselves of such habits since their return home. This shows that all our people lead wholesome lives.

You have said that you want to know the secret of our wise leadership. The most important factor is to go among the people and work for them.

I am always with the people. I mix with them to learn from and teach them.

I respect the opinions of other people. When formulating Party policy, I always listen attentively to the views of the people first.

When people meet me, they tell me of all their problems, such as the negligence of officials in doing work in accordance with Party policies, and offer their views on what should be done and how.

Let me tell you about something that happened during the period of
postwar reconstruction. After the war the US imperialists clamoured that Korea would not rise again for one hundred years. The whole of Pyongyang was demolished during the war, leaving no house intact. After the war we began to reconstruct Pyongyang on the ashes.

While Pyongyang was being rebuilt immediately after the armistice, I served as Chairman of the Pyongyang Municipal Reconstruction Commission. At the time, the officials in the construction sector tried to plant platanus alone as street trees. One day I visited a construction site in Pyongyang, where some old people said to me, “General, Pyongyang has been called ‘Ryugyong’ (the willow city–Tr.) from olden times. Why don’t we plant willows?” After hearing what they said, I saw to it that willows were planted.

The Juche farming method was initiated in the course of our visits to farmers to consult them on farming matters and guide them.

All the policies of our Party and of the Government of our Republic have been shaped to reflect the will of our people.

Some foreign journalists ask me how I find the time to guide the affairs of state as I am constantly out at factories and in the rural areas. So I tell them that the guidance to factories and rural communities is precisely the direction of state affairs.

As far as the question of our country’s reunification is concerned, the people of the world today desire this reunification. Korea must be reunified. Ours is a homogeneous nation which has lived with a single culture and language for thousands of years. None of the people in north and south Korea desire national division; they do want reunification. Only a very small number of the south Korean reactionaries are opposed to national reunification, plotting to split the nation.

From a political viewpoint, the Korean question is different in nature from that of Germany.

Germany was a defeated state in World War II, which she started. The countries that neighbour her do not want her to be reunified.

However, our country is not a vanquished state like Germany, which started an aggressive war and was defeated, and the
reunification of Korea will offer no threat of invasion to the neighbouring countries. Situated around our country are major powers such as China, the Soviet Union and Japan, which will never be threatened with aggression by our country even after its reunification. The peoples and the Heads of State of many countries are offering positive support to our people in their struggle for the reunification of their country. Our people will surely accomplish the cause of national reunification with the support of the world’s people.

You have asked me to talk about the anti-Japanese armed struggle. We formed the Anti-Japanese People’s Guerrilla Army in 1932 and launched the armed struggle against the Japanese imperialist aggressors for as long as 15 years and eventually achieved the liberation of our country. Even before the armed struggle, we were engaged in an underground struggle for a long time. If this underground struggle is counted, it was for more than 20 years that we fought against the Japanese imperialist aggressors. During the anti-Japanese armed struggle, we experienced much trouble and hardship as well as constant suffering. We suffered all the more in the winter because of the cold. In the northern parts of our country and the northeastern regions of China, it is snowy and bitterly cold in winter.

While waging the armed struggle against the Japanese imperialists, we received no assistance from outside. Nowadays the countries fighting for national liberation get assistance from abroad, but in those days the situation was different. At that time we had to secure everything, including weapons, for ourselves. We took weapons from the Japanese imperialists to arm ourselves.

During this armed struggle the people actively supported the Korean People’s Revolutionary Army. Whenever units entered a village, the peasants there would tell them which oxen belonged to the “people’s association” and which ones to the peasants. The men of the KPRA would not touch the peasants’ oxen and instead slaughtered those belonging to the “people’s association”, organized and patronized by the Japanese imperialists, and ate them with the peasants. When the KPRA left a village, the peasants would go to the
Japanese imperialists and inform them that the KPRA units had entered their village the previous evening and slaughtered the oxen. So, some Japanese imperialists would come to look around the village and ask why they had not touched a single ox belonging to a peasant but slaughtered only the oxen of the “people’s association”. The peasants replied that the members of the KPRA had been fully aware which oxen were owned by the peasants and which ones by the “people’s association”. In such ways, the peasants actively helped the KPRA, deceiving the Japanese imperialists.

The people also sent a large amount of grain to the units of the KPRA. In those days the Japanese imperialists applied strict control to prevent the people sending grain to the units of the KPRA, claiming that they intended to starve the men of the KPRA to death. The people, however, continuously supplied grain to the units of the KPRA, avoiding enemy surveillance in various ways. If they were unable to send grain because the enemy was watching too closely, the people would gather up the runners of potatoes to make the field look as if the potatoes had already been dug up, and would inform the KPRA units of the location of the fields where they could find potatoes. Sometimes, they picked ears of maize and hid them under trees, informing units of the KPRA of the fact so that they could take them.

As you can see, the KPRA fought against the Japanese imperialist aggressors, relying on the people and getting their positive support.

You have said that Pyongyang is one of the most beautiful cities in the world. We are trying to improve it. We are planning to construct a Grand People’s Study House in Pyongyang and to equip it with vast numbers of books from our country as well as some from many other countries. When this is built, Pyongyang will have all the essential buildings it needs. Then, Pyongyang will be a more beautiful city than ever.

There are many areas of natural beauty in our country, such as Mt. Kumgang.

I hope that you will visit our country again, partly to take a rest at one of these beauty spots.
ON MAKING GOOD PREPARATIONS FOR NEXT YEAR’S FARMING

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of the Officials in Charge of Agriculture
June 12, 1978

At this consultative meeting we are going to review how seedlings were transplanted this year and discuss how to make good preparations for next year’s farming and how to step up the development of terraced fields.

Firstly I shall review the transplanting of seedlings this year, and then refer to the tasks for making good preparations for next year’s farming.

Generally the farming methods we used this year were different from those of the past. Because the cold front is affecting agriculture, we have to change our farming methods. If we continue to raise crops in the same way as we did in the past, when the cold front did not affect agriculture, we shall be unable to avoid a crop failure and the people may go hungry.

For the six years since 1973 we have been attacking on the agricultural front, moving step by step towards our objectives. In the course of this, we have solved many problems.

This year we have started tackling the problem of timing the sowing season properly. This problem first drew our attention when we were investigating why agriculture in North Hamgyong Province has not been successful over recent years.
While studying agriculture in North Hamgyong Province, it occurred to me that sowing seeds at the wrong time might have been the major cause of crop failures in that province. On March 6 this year, therefore, I summoned to Pyongyang the chairmen of the management boards of cooperative farms, the chief secretaries of county Party committees and the chairmen of county cooperative farm management committees in the province. I checked up on the dates when rice seeds were sown in cold-beds and bedded out, and the dates when maize seeds were sown in humus-cakes and the seedlings transplanted in each of the counties last year. What was revealed proved that I was right in my belief. In all the counties of this province the dates when sowing was done had not been timed appropriately.

In North Hamgyong Province no study had been made of how to overcome the effects of the cold front in order to raise good crops. They had farmed by the conventional methods which had been used when the cold front was not affecting their farming.

The people of that province had not sown the rice seeds at the right time and had been unable to grow healthy seedlings. They had had to transplant the seedlings prematurely. That was why the per-hectare rice yields were very low. And maize cultivation had not been very good there, either. The senior officials of North Hamgyong Province had ordered the farms to transplant humus-cake maize seedlings from April 20, in spite of the fact that there was a late spring frost lasting until about May 15. The reason for their decision was that they were short of labour. As a result, the transplanted maize seedlings were frost-bitten and the maize crop had to be planted again, and the replanted maize crop did not ripen. Even the few seedlings which survived the frost lost their leaves and grew deformed and their seeds failed to ripen properly.

The failure of the farming in North Hamgyong Province was due mainly to the fact that the Agricultural Commission and the Administration Council gave no detailed direction to agriculture in that province.

As I always say, the weather and soil conditions in our country vary
from province to province, from county to county, and even from one side of a hill to the other on the same cooperative farm. Agriculture must, therefore, be directed down to the smallest detail, on the principles of the right crop in the right season and of the right crop in the right soil. But these principles have not been observed in recent years.

This year I discovered the reason for the crop failures in North Hamgyong Province and instructed all the officials in charge of agriculture and the chief secretaries of the county Party committees in that province to ensure that in the coastal districts of the province sowing rice seeds in cold-beds was begun on March 15, and that humus-cake maize seedlings were transplanted once the late spring frost was gone. Of course, to begin planting rice seeds in the cold-beds on March 15, when the farm lands had not yet thawed completely, was very questionable. But this year in North Hamgyong Province adequate amounts of humus were deposited in the seedbeds and sowing was begun on March 15 although the land had not thawed. I was told that, as a result, the rice crop in this province is as good as that in the vicinity of Pyongyang. In previous years rice seeds were sown in cold-beds from April 4 to April 20. At an estimate of 50 days needed for the seedlings to grow in seedbeds, the rice seedlings in the cold-beds where seeds were sown around April 20 will have to be transplanted around June 10. Rice seedlings that are transplanted as late as that are unable to develop many stems.

This year maize seedlings which had been grown in humus-cakes were transplanted when the late spring frost was over, and it has been reported that the maize crop is very promising. If this measure had not been adopted, the maize crop in North Hamgyong Province would have failed as it did last year. On May 12 this year the temperature in that province fell to as low as four degrees centigrade below zero. This year humus-cake maize seedlings were transplanted in 800 hectares of non-paddy fields in North Hamgyong Province before the late frost was over, contrary to our instructions, and these seedlings were all killed by the frost on May 12.
No one, not even meteorologists, can predict changes in the weather caused by the cold front. Frosts and rain occur all of a sudden, when they have not been forecast. Even so, this year the crop in North Hamgyong Province is not likely to fail as it did last year.

When I established the seasons for sowing rice and transplanting its seedlings and for transplanting humus-cake maize seedlings and gave instructions that these seasons should be observed, apparently the old people in this province said that now things were as they should be.

When I set agricultural matters to rights in North Hamgyong Province, it occurred to me that the same mistakes might have been made in the provinces on the west coast. I checked up on these provinces, and discovered that they were all delaying the seeding of rice in cold-beds. So I convened a meeting and took steps to ensure that all the people were mobilized to finish rice sowing on the west coast as quickly as possible.

This year the preparations for sowing rice in cold-beds were made a little late, but prompt measures were taken to speed up rice sowing, and as a result the crop situation is good. If no steps had been taken and things had been left as they were, the crop on the west coast might have failed.

The major conclusion drawn from the review of how seedlings were transplanted this year is that, in view of the effects of the cold front, rice seeds should be sown in cold-beds as early as possible. The early sowing of rice accords with biological principles. Because of the action of the cold front, spring arrives late and the autumn frost sets in early, and this means a shorter period for the growth of crops. Therefore, we have to sow rice in cold-beds early to allow sufficient time for the rice to grow and the rice seedlings to develop many stems.

What, then, is the best time for sowing rice seeds in cold-beds? Our recent inspection of several cooperative farms shows that the best time is from March 10 to March 20 on the west coast.

This year the Mangyongdae Cooperative Farm sowed rice seeds on March 10, raised the seedlings in cold-beds for 55 days, and then transplanted them on May 5. The rice crop on this farm was the best of
all those we inspected. I was told that the crop there this year grew even better than in the corresponding period last year.

The people at the Ponghwa Cooperative Farm, Kangdong County, said that they had sown rice seeds in cold-beds on March 10, but it seemed to me that they had actually sown them later than that. As far as I could judge, they had probably been sown between March 15 and 17. The rice crop on this cooperative farm was good, but not as good as that on the Mangyongdae Cooperative Farm.

This year rice sowing in the cold-beds on Farm No. 7 was not done at the right time. The rice was sown on March 17 at this farm, so that the seedlings had to be transplanted before they had developed properly. The rice crop on this farm is not so promising as that on the Mangyongdae Cooperative Farm.

The Chongsan Cooperative Farm, Taean, sowed rice in cold beds on March 12, and the first batch of seedlings was bedded out on May 5, so the period of growth in the nursery was two days shorter than that on the Mangyongdae Cooperative Farm. Two days in spring are very important for the growth of seedlings. The Chongsan Cooperative Farm actually suffered damage from salt water, on top of transplanting the seedlings two days prematurely.

The reason for the most successful cultivation of rice being on the Mangyongdae Cooperative Farm lies nowhere else than in the fact that the seeds were sown between March 10 and 20, so that the seedlings could grow strong in the nursery for 55 days before being transplanted at the right time.

This year’s experience shows that the best time for sowing rice in dry-field cold-beds in the provinces on the west coast is definitely between March 10 and 20. Because the climate on the west coast is mild, it is quite possible to begin sowing rice in dry-field cold-beds on March 10. There would be no problem if the rice was sown in paddy-field cold-beds a little later than that.

It would be a good idea for South Hwanghae Province to begin sowing rice in dry-field cold-beds a little earlier than that, say, on March 7.
In the areas north of Hamhung on the east coast and north of Jongju on the west coast, cold-bed rice sowing should begin on March 10, as is done in other parts of the country.

In theory, the colder the weather in an area is, the earlier cold-bed rice sowing should begin. If this work is begun late in a cold region, and if the seedlings are transplanted early, the period available for them to grow in the nursery will be short, so that seedlings that are too young and have only a few leaves and stems will have to be transplanted. The result of this will be a low per-hectare yield. That is why even in the areas north of Hamhung and Jongju dry-field cold-bed rice sowing should, as a matter of principle, begin on March 10. In these areas every possible measure should be taken to prevent the seedbeds freezing, and failing that, to thaw them early in spring so that rice sowing can begin on March 10. If it is absolutely impossible to begin sowing on that date because the land has not thawed, it must begin on March 15 at the latest. On those farms where cold-bed rice sowing begins late, the number of rice plants in each cluster should be increased a little when they are transplanted.

Because the cold front is continuing to affect agriculture, we must grow rice seedlings in nurseries for 50 to 55 days before bedding them out. Now that the weather in spring is cold, rice seedlings do not grow quickly. Therefore, the regulations which stipulate that rice seedlings should be raised in nurseries for 45 to 50 days must be revised. From now onwards rice seedlings must, without fail, be grown in nurseries for 50 to 55 days.

In addition, in view of the fact that rice seedlings are transplanted early, it is unnecessary to maintain the system of ploughing paddy fields three times. It is best to plough them once in autumn, once more the following spring, harrow them over and over again, and then flood them and harrow them one more.

Nurseries must be tended carefully. The care of nurseries must on no account be neglected as has been the case in the past. Our experience of rice cultivation this year shows that the careful management of nurseries is essential. If nurseries are to be tended
properly, they must all be provided with plastic tunnels and thatch and fenced all around with windbreaks and they must also be provided with thermometers. Moreover, a deposit of 30 to 35 kilogrammes of humus must be provided for every phyong of seedbeds. If all this is done, good rice seedlings can be grown, whatever the conditions.

If we sow the rice early in cold-beds, grow strong seedlings and then transplant them at the right time, we shall be able to increase the yield of rice.

On the Mangyongdae and Ponghwa Cooperative Farms where the rice was sown in cold-beds early and the seedlings transplanted at the right time this year, each cluster of rice plants has already produced 13 to 14 stems on average, or 1,700 stems per phyong. This number of stems will produce at least eight tons of rice per hectare. If the rice plants develop more stems, so that the number reaches 2,000 per phyong, nine to ten tons can be produced per hectare.

If we sow rice in cold-beds from March 10 to 20 and then transplant the seedlings quickly over approximately ten days, beginning on May 5, we shall be able to raise the per-hectare rice yield much more than in past years when transplanting was prolonged. These views carry more weight than those from the Academy of Agricultural Science because my information is based on my own experiments conducted on farms.

In order to sow rice in cold-beds early and transplant the seedlings at the right time next year, we must start now to make thorough preparations.

In the first place we must prepare sufficient plastic sheeting.

One important aspect of this is to preserve the plastic sheets that have been used before by taking good care of them.

Cooperative farms neglect the care of their plastic sheets. On my way back from Kangdong County yesterday, I saw washed plastic sheets being dried in the sun. They must not be dried in the sun. If they are exposed to sunlight, the plasticizer becomes gaseous and the sheets quickly become unusable. Last year I gave instructions that a short course should be held on how to keep and take care of plastic sheets. However, only a few farms are taking proper care of them. It is
doubtful whether my instructions were ever implemented. Cooperative farmers are not aware that drying plastic sheets in the sun spoils them.

Travelling by car recently, I have seen quite a few vegetable fields that are still covered with plastic tunnels. The frost is over, so I do not understand why they are still covered with plastic sheets. When the night temperature is five degrees or above, the plastic covering should be removed and put into store. Because the state supplies them with plastic sheets every year, the cooperative farms do not take good care of them. It is wrong for them to neglect the care of these materials which cost us foreign currency.

Apparently in one country plastic sheets are used for five and sometimes even ten years. But in our country they are used for only a year or two, and then discarded. This is due to the careless work attitude of the officials in charge of agriculture. Their slipshod work manner affects the farmers. They must correct this outdated work method as soon as possible.

We shall have to import some of the plastic sheeting we need, and supply the cooperative farms with all they require next year.

We must conduct a thorough examination of the amounts now in stock on each cooperative farm and establish a strict system under which only the amount needed to make up for any shortage is supplied. Last year we did take stock, so the amount each cooperative farm had at that time should be counted in addition to the supplies it received this year, and those cooperative farms which have received all that they need must not be supplied with any more. We must not simply comply with all their requests for plastic sheeting. Those which have already received all they need should be supplied again in five years’ time.

The cooperative farms must also prepare as much thatch as they need to cover their seedbeds.

Cold-bed rice sowing this year was done a little late because cooperative farms had not prepared enough thatch last year. This year they must prepare sufficient in the autumn for use next year.

Plenty of humus must be produced.

On more than one occasion I have emphasized the need to produce
sufficient humus, but still this is not being done satisfactorily.

Scientists say that the cold front will continue to affect agriculture until the year 2000. If this is true, we will experience the effects for 23 more years. Nevertheless, our officials are adopting a hand-to-mouth approach. If we take no positive steps to overcome the effects of the cold front, agriculture may fail.

In order to protect ourselves against the impact of the cold front and raise good crops, we must produce large amounts of humus. We need large quantities of it, particularly because we have to begin cold-bed rice sowing on March 10 next year. Unless humus is available, we cannot begin on March 10 because the rice seedlings may be damaged by the frost.

If we are to mass-produce humus, we must construct humus factories.

Humus does not appear of its own accord; we have to produce it. It would be ideal if humus could be made chemically, but this method has not yet been perfected. The only way to produce it at present is by rotting straw, grass, brushwood, rice husks and so on. Some cooperative farms are digging silt or collecting coal ash in an effort to produce humus, but this does not make humus. Humus must produce heat and be rich in nutrients. Therefore, we must build many humus factories and produce good-quality humus from rice straw, maize straw, brushwood and similar things.

We must not take humus production lightly. Humus is essential for grain production.

We must launch a widespread campaign to cut grass.

There is plenty of grass on river banks and railway embankments. Grass can be cut frequently because it never stops growing. But farmers show no enthusiasm for cutting grass. If the grass is cut regularly, the river banks and railway embankments will look neat.

In the past when grass-cutting campaigns were being conducted, people merely talked loudly about them, putting up slogans and making reports in newspapers, but actually they did not cut much grass. This year the same practice must not be repeated.
All the Party organizations and leadership bodies in the agricultural sector must promote the grass-cutting campaign and ensure that a lot of grass is cut. Farmers should be encouraged to cut a full load of grass on their way home from work.

Where there is brushwood, plenty of that should be collected; and where there is peat, a large amount of it should be dug.

People in the lowlands should start digging peat as soon as the rice has been harvested this year. We must supply excavators and other machines to mechanize peat digging.

A detailed study of humic acid should be conducted.

The information available says that humic acid can be used as a substitute for humus. But it must not be used without due consideration. One mistake made in farming produces grave consequences. Therefore, the people concerned must experiment on it for paddy-field rice and for other crops and obtain detailed data.

We must ensure that industrial workers are not mobilized to give manpower support to the rural communities next year.

Many industrial workers and other able-bodied men were mobilized in support of the rural communities during the transplanting season this year. Mobilizing industrial workers for one month for this work had a severe effect on production in light industry and the machine industry. Because a large number of workers were away helping farmers during the transplanting season, industrial production was not stable, although sufficient power was supplied. That is why we are not going to enlist industrial workers to give manpower support to the rural communities from next year onwards.

To this end, transplanting must be mechanized.

The mechanized transplanting of rice seedlings is more effective than manual transplanting. The transplanting machines now being produced in our country are good. These machines can work properly if the seedlings are transplanted four to five days after the flooded rice fields have been harrowed, that is, when the churned mud has settled.

If we are to mechanize transplanting operations fully, we must ensure a proper balance between transplanters and tractors. So in
March this year I sent officials of the Party Central Committee, the Economy Commission of the Central People’s Committee and the Agricultural Commission to Chongsan-ri, Kochang-ri, Taesong-ri, Yaksu-ri and some other areas of Taean on a mission to conduct experiments and determine how many tractors would be needed for every transplanter if transplanting operations were to proceed without interruption with precedence given to harrowing. According to the experimental data, one tractor for every transplanter is needed to ensure that all transplanting operations can proceed without interruption. In 1975, however, this factor was not taken into account when mechanized transplanting was ordered. In consequence, the Ryongjin Cooperative Farm, Kaechon County, and the Songhak Cooperative Farm, Anju County, suffered failures of their rice crops. Because of the shortage of tractors at that time, these cooperative farms were unable to harrow the rice fields four or five days before transplanting. Machine had to plant the seedlings in the unsettled mud immediately after harrowing, so that a large number of the seedlings floated away.

In order to mechanize transplanting operations we must sharply increase the production of tractors for the rural communities. Tractors are indispensable for mechanized transplanting.

We have no information concerning the exact number of tractors and transplanters now available to each sub-workteam at the cooperative farms and the number which must be supplied in order to make transplanting completely mechanized. The data now available is only a rough estimate, so it does not reveal the true state of affairs. If we are to maintain a good supply of tractors to the cooperative farms in the future, we must look into the situation there. A fact-finding mission should be set up, drawing on officials of the State Inspection Commission and of the Administration Council and it should be sent to the rural communities to conduct a detailed investigation into the matter.

Because we have no accurate information concerning the true state of affairs, there is no knowing the exact number of tractors, but
whatever happens we must produce 15,000 additional ones.

As I have already said, the Kum Song Tractor Factory must produce 1,200 *Chollima* tractors during every month of the “100-day battle”, 3,600 in all, and from September onwards 1,500 each month. If it can do this, it will have produced 15,600 tractors by the end of next April, of which 2,000 should be exported and 13,000 should be supplied to the rural communities.

In order to produce 15,600 *Chollima* tractors by that date, the factory must be provided with everything it needs for their production. Tyres must be supplied without fail, and other necessary materials and equipment must be supplied without question. Those materials which are difficult to produce domestically will have to be imported.

The request for manpower made by the Kum Song Tractor Factory must also be complied with immediately. We must, without fail, supply this factory with labour, even though it means that other factories will have to wait. We have already sent 500 of the 1,500 men requested by the Kum Song Tractor Factory. The remaining 1,000 men should be sent immediately.

The mechanization of transplanting requires not only the production of tractors, but also that of a large number of transplanters.

If we supply 13,000 tractors to the rural communities next year, 30,000 tractors will be available to the cooperative farms where mechanized transplanting is feasible. Therefore, 30,000 transplanters will have to be made available to them as well.

To this end, the transplanters now at the cooperative farms should be repaired and maintained properly, and at the same time new transplanters must be produced.

The officials concerned suggest that, in order to produce more transplanters, they will have to take over additional machine factories. But this must not be encouraged. If they are given a task, our officials request the use of other factories, simply in the hope of making the work easier. Even if another factory is placed at their disposal, they will not be able to benefit much from it. If it is turned over to them for the production of transplanters, the change of production items will
only create confusion at the new factory. It would be better to supply additional manpower and equipment to the factories now producing transplanters to allow them to increase production.

Transplanters must be produced by farm machine factories under the Agricultural Commission and by those under the Ministry of Machine-building Industry. The machine factories under the Mining Industry Commission or in other sectors must not be touched. The officials of the sectors concerned must organize the production of transplanters in detail.

If we produce large numbers of tractors and transplanters, we shall be able to mechanize transplanting in all paddy fields where mechanization is feasible, and we shall not have to mobilize industrial workers to support the rural communities from next year onwards.

If we mobilize just government workers, students and soldiers, 500,000 to 600,000 people will be going to help the farmers. The plans you draw up for transplanting must envisage the help of these people alone from next year onwards. Of course, it will be difficult to transplant all the rice seedlings at the right time with the help of only these people, but this must be our aim.

Should it prove unavoidable to mobilize industrial workers for transplanting, they must not be kept away from industrial production for a whole month as was the case this year. They should be organized to go to help the cooperative farms near their factories for a few days while the pressure of work at the farms is heaviest and go home in the evening after working on the farm.

Which is better for the state, to mechanize transplanting by producing tractors and transplanters and keep the industrial workers at their enterprises or to mobilize them in support of the rural communities so that they leave their factory work? It is better to mechanize transplanting and let the farmers stand on their own feet, even though this may cost the state some money, and keep the industrial workers producing at their own enterprises.

The diversion of industrial labour to assist rural work causes fluctuations in industrial production and construction and disrupts
labour administration, with the result that the state suffers a great loss. At an estimated 10,000 won average annual output value per head of the industrial workers, the loss of industrial output resulting from their mobilization for rural support will be enormous.

If we are continually sending these people in large numbers to help farm work, the farmers will get into bad habits. Over the past ten years a large number of men has been mobilized annually for farm work so that, in the final analysis, farm work has been done by the supporting people, yet it has been the farmers who have been rewarded. Nevertheless, the farmers consider this only natural.

We realized that the state would incur a great loss by mobilizing the workers for rural work, but we had no alternative. What else could we do when the people would starve unless the seedlings were transplanted, even though it meant mobilizing supporting labour because the rural communities were short of manpower and because agricultural work had not yet been fully mechanized?

We cannot, however, continue to mobilize industrial workers for rural work. From next year onwards production at the factories must be steady even during the transplanting season. The light industry sector, for instance, can increase production steadily if the factories are provided with raw materials and the other things they need and are kept operational all the time. But production is not proceeding smoothly because the workers are mobilized for transplanting.

If we are to ensure that production at enterprises is maintained on a steady basis and that seedlings are transplanted at the right time, we must sharply increase the production of tractors and transplanters for the rural communities. Every grain-producing sub-workteam where transplanting can be mechanized must be provided with two Chollima tractors and two transplanters, one tractor for ploughing and the other for harrowing. This will solve the problem. If we do not do this, we shall have to mobilize industrial workers for transplanting again next year, and this will cause a fall in industrial production.

Machines to dig up seedlings must be mass-produced.

These machines are being produced around the country and they are
said to be efficient. On my visit to Hamhung a short time ago, I inspected a cooperative farm where I saw a seedling digger which had been made in Hamhung. It was working very efficiently. The workers at the farm said that the machine was doing as much work as 30 men could do. We must mass-produce seedling diggers.

Sufficient herbicide should be supplied.

To do this, we must build a herbicide factory to produce it domestically. We are currently importing it and this causes difficulties in obtaining it in time for the farming season. As we are engaged in too many construction projects, we cannot start constructing a herbicide factory yet. But we must build one at the earliest possible date.

For the present we shall have to import more herbicide so as to reduce the amount of weeding that has to be done manually. A fairly large amount of it has been used in recent years, so that most rice fields are now weedless.

If we mass-produce herbicide, tractors, transplanters and seedling diggers for the rural communities, kill all the weeds with herbicide and mechanize all rice transplanting work, even the digging of rice seedlings, we shall have no need to mobilize industrial workers in support of the rural communities, and other supporting workers can return home after helping the farmers for only 40 days.

We must increase the production of fertilizer.

This year production at the fertilizer factories is relatively good. In particular the urea fertilizer factory of the Youth Chemical Complex is meeting its planned production quota. This factory is operating smoothly because its senior management takes good care of the factory equipment, although this is due in part to the fact that the equipment is new.

If the per-hectare grain yield is to be increased by intensive farming, we must produce large amounts of fertilizer. Grain cannot be produced from nothing. I have said that fertilizer means rice because the grain yield depends on the amount of fertilizer applied. Our experience over recent years shows that if one ton of nitrogen fertilizer is used per hectare, ten tons of grain can be produced. The ratio
between the amount of nitrogen fertilizer used and the grain yield is one to ten.

While guiding the Hari Cooperative Farm, Kangdong County, South Phyongan Province in the field yesterday, I asked the local workers what had been the per-hectare yield of maize from the terraced fields last year. They said that they produced only 5.7 tons. The reason was that the Administration Council had supplied them with only 550 kg of fertilizer per hectare because it was to be used in terraced fields. The farm is resolved to produce eight tons of maize per hectare from the terraced fields this year. An irrigation system has been established in these fields. Therefore, 800 kg of nitrogen fertilizer must be supplied per hectare.

There is no secret in maize cultivation, only those factors I always talk about. If water, \( F_1 \) hybrid seeds and fertilizer are available, you can produce ten tons per hectare without any doubt. If any of these three factors is missing, you cannot increase the maize yield.

The matter of fertilizer production is very important in preparing for next year’s farming. Therefore, the Administration Council must tackle this problem. The Party Central Committee departments concerned and the Economy Commission of the Central People’s Committee must also direct and control fertilizer production efficiently.

The production of nitrogen fertilizer is fundamental to fertilizer production. The Ministry of Chemical Industry is falling short of its nitrogen fertilizer production quota for this fertilization year. On no account must it fail to carry it out for the next fertilization year.

In order to produce the planned amount of nitrogen fertilizer for next year’s farming, the fertilizer factories must be properly repaired and maintained.

In particular, the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex is in need of good repair and maintenance, and the urea fertilizer factory of the Youth Chemical Complex, too, must be looked after properly. The former was built many years ago, so all its equipment is old now. It has been serviced and repaired every year, but the quality of the work has been
so low that it has rarely been able to work smoothly for a whole year. This time it must be completely overhauled so that it can work without accident until the next repair cycle.

All the materials needed for the repair and maintenance of the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex must be supplied without fail. Those items which are not produced in our country will have to be provided, even though it means importing them. Since the enterprise is going to continue production until the end of July and repair its equipment in August, it must begin now to prepare sufficient materials for about two months and then start an overhaul right from the beginning of August.

The Party Central Committee departments concerned and the Administration Council must send officials to the enterprise to investigate thoroughly the state of affairs there and take steps to provide the materials needed for the repair and maintenance of the factory.

In order to overcome the effects of the cold front, it is important to increase the production of phosphorus fertilizer. If not enough of this fertilizer is applied to a crop, the yield falls.

It is reported that a little over one million tons of phosphorus fertilizer are going to be produced during this fertilization year. One million tons are not enough to meet the needs of the rural communities. They need at least 1.3 million tons. During the next fertilization year 1.3 to 1.5 million tons of phosphorus fertilizer must be produced and supplied.

Thorough measures must be taken to ensure the production of phosphorus fertilizer. You are apt to relax and slow down the production of phosphorus fertilizer for a few months once the fertilization year is over. You must not do so. You must keep up its production. If we are to produce 1.3 to 1.5 million tons, we must increase the production of sulphuric acid and concentrate of phosphorus ore.

We must solve the problem of water.

A revolution to make use of subterranean water is very important in combatting the drought caused by the cold front and in solving the problem of water.

At a plenary meeting of its Central Committee held last year, our
Party set out a far-sighted policy on promoting the revolution to draw on subterranean water by digging well and sinking pipes into the ground. This policy is absolutely correct.

However, no one has assumed the responsibility for organizing the implementation of this policy. Superficially, someone seems to be doing it, but in fact no one is. This work is up in the air. That is why the Party’s policy on this revolution is not being implemented properly.

Wells have not been dug properly. I have emphasized on many occasions that deep wells should be dug, yet still there are few deep ones.

According to statistics, of those which have been dug in Pyongyang, 1,030 are less than five metres deep, 1,824 are five to ten metres deep, and none of them is deeper than ten metres. In South Phyongan Province 10,623 wells are less than five metres deep, 7,200 are five to ten metres deep, and 180 are deeper than ten metres. It is reported that, of these wells, 15,400 are now in use. But I am not sure if the report is accurate. In North Phyongan Province 23,159 wells have been dug, of which 13,636 are less than five metres deep, 9,494 are five to ten metres deep, and 29 are deeper than ten metres. But only 9,200 of them are actually in use. Also 3,618 water-lifting pipes have been sunk, but only 1,700 of them are in use.

The number of wells actually in use is very small in relation to the number of wells which have been dug. Wells which cannot supply water during a drought are useless. Digging such wells is simply a waste of labour and materials.

North and South Hwanghae Provinces have been very perfunctory in implementing the Party’s policy on making use of underground water.

The people of North Hwanghae Province have not dug wells and sunk pipes properly, relying on water from the Ryesong River.

In South Hwanghae Province they have built Lake Unpha with a capacity of 300,000,000 cubic metres of water and concentrated on digging tunnels and canals to draw water from this artificial lake, but they have paid scant attention to making use of underground water,
saying that the problem of water can be solved if the lake is full. Although they have dug the tunnels and canals and waited for the lake to fill up, only 40,000,000 cubic metres of water have been stored. As a result, seedlings have not yet been transplanted in 30,000 hectares of rice fields in this province because of a lack of irrigation. If the province had worked hard to implement the Party’s policy to launch a revolution to use underground water, it would not have failed to transplant seedlings because of a lack of water and would not have invited the serious consequences.

Because of this failure, South Hwanghae Province will lose a great deal of grain this year. If the decrease in the yield due to the late transplanting of seedlings is added to this loss, the amount will be considerable.

The provincial Party committees must work hard to make up for the loss in grain production in South Hwanghae Province. They must ensure that the crop fields are well tended and weeded. It is reported that the present crop situation in North Hamgyong Province is much better than last year and that the wheat, barley and potato crops in Ryanggang Province are very promising. If the farmers in these provinces work hard in the remaining time, the harvest there is likely to be excellent.

Ryanggang Province will have to be given effective assistance to harvest its crops on time. The fifty wheat harvesters requested by this province should be imported. If we hold reasonable negotiations with a foreign country, we shall be able to buy those we need. The Ministry of Foreign Trade must approach the foreign market as soon as possible and import 50 of these harvesters for the province. Since Ryanggang Province is in a cold region, it must harvest its potatoes quickly using machines. The province must be supplied with the amount of steel it needs so that it can make its own potato harvesters. If we take these steps, we shall have no problem in making up for the grain loss which South Hwanghae Province has incurred.

It is now becoming apparent that our officials have been very perfunctory in their implementation of the decision of the plenary
meeting of the Party Central Committee to launch a revolution to make
use of subterranean water. They have not yet rid themselves of the
practice of taking Party decisions lightly.

Party organizations at all levels and the sectors concerned must
criticize themselves severely for neglecting to act on this decision.

You must on no account take lightly the question of using
subterranean water for agriculture.

Many countries are suffering an acute shortage of water because of
the effects of the cold front. In recent years the drought in England has
been so severe that a capitalist in that country is said to have cried that
all the water in England had dried up except the tears.

No one can predict with assurance that such a situation will not
occur in our country. Under the influence of the cold front, the drought
may last until the autumn this year, and it may not even rain next year.
If this happens, the effects on agriculture will be disastrous.

The history of our country is not without instances of a large
number of people dying of hunger because of a long drought.
According to historical records, a severe drought and famine took a
heavy toll of lives in our country in 1919.

When I was on a tour of field inspection in Pukchong County after
the war, some fifty old men came to see me. They expressed their
gratitude to me for the food rations granted to them by the state when
they had been on the brink of starvation as a result of damage done by
flooding. They added, “General, the great many graves on the hill in
front of the village are those of the people who starved in 1919.”

In view of the forecast that the effects of the cold front will persist
for a long time, we must continue to dig wells and sink water pipes, in
addition to constructing reservoirs, so as to overcome these effects.
There is no harm in being doubly sure. Relying on a single line is
always precarious. It is only when we both construct reservoirs and
prepare wells and water-lifting pipes that we can be sure of solving the
problem of water even though the cold front may last for a long time.

There are not many sources of water above ground level in our
country. For the present, therefore, we must postpone the reservoir and
barrage projects and develop a widespread campaign to dig wells and sink water pipes.

It is true that so far you have prepared a considerable number of wells and water-lifting pipes, but most of them are substandard. They are not good enough to solve the water problem. That is why you must resume the revolution to draw on subterranean water. In other words, you must dig more wells and sink more water pipes. But you do not need to disregard the existing ones. Leave them as they are, and when some water collects in them you can draw it.

From now onwards, every single well you dig must be large and deep and every single water pipe must be driven well down. A shallow well cannot hold much water and soon dries up. If one well can irrigate only about a hectare, it does not pay. There are 600,000 hectares of paddy fields in our country. So, at the rate of one well for one hectare, we shall have to dig 600,000 wells. Therefore, each of the wells you are going to dig will have to irrigate dozens of hectares. The same applies to water-lifting pipes.

You must make a careful study of the depths of wells and water-lifting pipes to decide the depths necessary to obtain large quantities of water.

Senior officials of the General Bureau of Geology say that in view of the geological features of our country, water can be obtained anywhere at a depth of 20 to 30 metres below the surface. It is certain that there will be water at these depths. But the volume of water will not be great. Information from abroad says that the volume of subterranean water found at a depth of 30 metres is not large because it is merely infiltration from the surface, and that there are vast streams of water at depths of 100 to 200 metres. The Chinese also say that they have obtained large volumes of water in their country by drilling to depths of 100 to 200 metres.

The depth at which a large volume of water can be obtained will vary with the local geological features. In some places a large volume of water can be found at a depth of 50 metres, and in other places at a depth of 100 metres, 150 metres or 200 metres. So, what you must do is
dig wells and sink pipes until you reach major sources of underground water.

The officials of the agricultural sector must consult the workers in the sector concerned and study information from abroad to determine the sizes of the wells and diameters of the pipes suitable for the depths specified. I am of the opinion that wells should be dug as deep as 30 to 40 metres and that pipes should be driven in deeper, to a depth of 200 metres.

It would be advisable to try various methods of raising underground water. Information from abroad says that if a deep hole is drilled into bedrock, filled with explosives and then blasted, water will gush out of the crack in the rock. Some time ago I told the people of the Taean Heavy Machine Works to try this, for they had told me that, although they had searched for sources of subterranean water, they had been unable to find any. They followed my advice and found large amounts, I was told. This experience must be popularized.

All districts must promote the campaign to dig wells and sink water pipes.

The people of South Hwanghae Province must dig wells and sink pipes, and those in North Hwanghae Province must do the same. The people in the Onchon, Nampho, Jungsan, Ryonggang and Taean areas of South Phyongan Province also have a serious problem because their water is salty, and they must dig wells and sink pipes.

In Jagang Province, too, wells must be dug and water-lifting pipes sunk. In the past the people of this province used to sink wells to a depth of approximately five metres and then stopped digging because no water was found. The province is bordered by the Amnok River and the Tongno River runs through it, so it cannot be true that there are no sources of underground water there. If they drive pipes down to a depth of 200 metres, they will, without doubt, reach underground water.

It would seem advisable for Ryanggang Province, too, to dig wells and sink pipes. Some time ago the province suggested undertaking a project to lift water from the Tuman River in order to irrigate the fields of General State Farm No. 5. I examined their plan and found that the
project was so large that it would be impossible to meet the requirements for money and manpower. So the proposal was rejected. If the project had been undertaken, it would have been futile. If they build pumping stations at several different levels and lift the water from the Tuman River, all the water flowing through the canal will be sucked into the pumiceous ground. They must make efforts to draw underground water rather than attempt such a futile project. Lake Chon on the summit of Mt. Paektu is full of water, so it is impossible for there to be no water near the farm simply because it happens to be on high ground. Near the farm there may be a spring that does not freeze in winter and keeps flowing, without drying up even in a drought. If they drill a deep hole in such a place, a large amount of water can be obtained.

The Administration Council must calculate in detail the number of wells to be dug and water-lifting pipes to be sunk throughout the country.

The measures proposed by the Administration Council this morning are very conservative. They were motivated by a desire to maintain the status quo by keeping the existing wells and water-lifting pipes. They do not specify the number of wells and the number of pipes to be sunk in each province.

The proposal shows that our officials still do not seem to take into account the effects of the cold front, and they leave things to chance. Communists must not try to raise crops by relying on “God”. How can they depend on “God” for agriculture when the prediction is that the cold front will continue to affect us for a long time. If they depend on “God” for agriculture, their farm work will be chaotic.

The Administration Council must carefully work out the number of work forces and draw up a new plan that specifies the number of wells to be dug and pipes to be sunk. I think it would be best to plan to sink approximately 10,000 water-lifting pipes to a depth of 100 metres or more, and break down the numbers province by province. This is the way to solve the water problem and carry out the decision of the plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee on the revolution to make use of underground water.
We must work hard to dig wells and sink pipes according to a detailed plan for one year from now to the end of May next year. If we work efficiently, we may be able to finish the work by that time.

If we are to draw large quantities of underground water, we must first prospect for sources.

Some people are now looking for valleys where there used to be streams, instead of thinking of prospecting for underground water. They must not do this. Of course, they may find large sources of water if they sink wells and pipes there, but there are few such places.

Geological prospectors must be mobilized in this work for one month. Part of the prospecting forces of the coal industry can be enlisted for this.

The project for obtaining underground water requires state investment. The Administration Council must provide the equipment and materials needed for preparing wells and water-lifting pipes.

It is important to produce drills for the prospectors. The number of drills produced by the factories under the General Bureau of Geology is not enough to meet the needs for drilling holes for the pipes. So the machine factories under the Mining Industry Commission and all other factories capable of making drills must produce them. Phungnyon tractors are apparently needed for drilling to a depth of 100 metres or more. The Administration Council must make sure that the Chollima tractors and Phungnyon tractors needed for drilling are produced. In addition, water pumps will have to be produced.

The county urban and rural construction corps should be mobilized for digging wells and sinking pipes. Since no one in the county towns and rural villages is homeless, there will be no great harm in mobilizing these construction corps for this project for a short time. They must be mobilized for digging wells and sinking pipes alone, not for other work.

The construction of reservoirs and barrages must also be suspended for the time being, and the forces of the irrigation construction enterprises working on these projects must be diverted to digging wells and sinking pipes.
The well-digging and water-lifting pipe project must be directed by a Vice-Premier of the Administration Council, and by a vice-chairman of the administrative committee of each province, city and county.

The officials of the Party Central Committee department concerned, the Administration Council, the Economy Commission of the Central People’s Committee, and those of the sectors concerned must meet and discuss the matter of producing the materials and equipment needed for the underground water project and organize all the assignments carefully.

Large numbers of ponds must also be dug. The provinces must work hard to dig ponds on their own initiative to suit the local situation.

As I have just said, the most important tasks in preparing next year’s farming are: first, to provide all the plastic sheeting needed; second, to prepare humus properly; third, to adopt measures to dispense with industrial manpower support for the rural areas; fourth, to keep fertilizer factories in a good state of repair so that they supply sufficient fertilizers during the next fertilization year; fifth, to resume the revolution to obtain underground water and solve the water problem.

Next, I shall refer to the need to step up the campaign to develop terraced fields.

In our country there are still 62,000 hectares of sloping farmland that can be developed into terraced fields, so it has been reported. We must make good preparations to concentrate on establishing terraced fields from the second half of next year.

If the 62,000 hectares of sloping dry fields are converted into terraced fields, the grain yield can be increased to a considerable extent.

In the past, the per-hectare maize yield from these fields was 800 kg, and in recent years it has been increased to 1.2 tons through the application of more fertilizer. It is difficult to produce two tons of maize from sloping fields. But if these fields are terraced and provided with irrigation systems, the per-hectare maize yield can be raised to between six and eight tons. If all these fields are terraced, 372,000 tons
can be produced from the 62,000 hectares, at a rate of six tons per hectare. A per-hectare yield of six tons from fields where it was only 1.2 tons previously means an increase of 4.8 tons per hectare or 300,000 tons in all. This is a vast amount. With 300,000 tons of maize we can produce 100,000 tons of pork.

Sloping fields must be terraced and used effectively. This is the way to reach the goal of producing ten million tons of cereals annually. In recent years factories and many roads have been constructed on farmland. As a result, the area under cultivation has been consistently reduced. In such circumstances it will be impossible to increase the production of cereals and provide the people with food unless sloping fields are terraced and used effectively.

Terraced fields are more attractive and work in these fields can be mechanized so that the farmers can work with ease. Laying out terraced fields on slopes is more profitable than reclaiming tidal flats. Nevertheless, people are reluctant to lay out terraced fields because it takes a lot of labour to fetch stones and provide the terraced fields with stone-faced edges. If these people are to lay out terraced fields in the same way as they do now, they will have to use a great deal of labour and transport. If all the workers and tractors available are committed to this project, it will be impossible to cultivate any crops.

Kangdong County mobilized nearly all its industrial workers to establish 100 hectares of terraced fields on the Hari Cooperative Farm, and no small number of farmers from other cooperative farms took part in this work. The project took a great deal of labour because these fields were provided with stone facing. But the fields are narrow and the edges are crumbling in places.

It will be difficult to establish terraced fields in the future in the same way as it is done now. It is necessary to adopt measures to build them easily in an industrial way. If the Ministry of Building-materials Industry produces a large amount of cement, the fields can be terraced with ease by an industrial method.

It would be a good idea to use concrete blocks for the project. If the edges of the fields are to be formed by filling moulds with mortar, a
large amount of planks will be needed. The method of laying concrete blocks can be combined with the method of building stone-facing with mortar where a large amount of stone is available. If terraced fields are laid out in this manner, their width can be greater and the edges will not crumble.

The plan for building terraced fields with cement should be drawn up carefully. The plan made by the officials of the agricultural sector envisages the use of more than 100 tons of cement for one hectare of terraced fields, and if this is adopted a tremendous amount of cement will be required to lay out 62,000 hectares. This plan was drawn up without any detailed calculation, so it cannot be adopted as it stands.

The plan for establishing terraced fields must be drawn up to suit the actual conditions. Good preparations should be made from now by including this project in the state plan, and terraced fields should be laid out in some places on an experimental basis in the autumn. Fifteen to twenty terraced fields of different sizes, say, 20 hectares, 30 hectares, 50 hectares, 60 hectares and 100 hectares, should be laid out using cement so as to determine the amount of cement that will be needed to establish one hectare and the best way of doing it. Then, in the latter half of next year when the well-digging project has been finished, we must set to the terraced field project by mobilizing forces from the irrigation construction enterprises and rural construction corps.

It will be impossible to convert all the 62,000 hectares of sloping fields into terraced fields in one year. So we have to do it in planned stages. The state plan must include this project, so that 12,000 to 20,000 hectares of terraced fields can be created every year. If we do this, we shall be able to develop all the 62,000 hectares into terraced fields during the Second Seven-Year Plan.

In order to increase the area of cultivated land, we must reclaim tidal flats on a large scale. We must start preparations for this work now so that we can begin the project itself in the second half of next year.

In conclusion, I would like to touch on some further problems. The people of South Hwanghae Province have suggested that the period of manpower support for rural work should be extended. The
period during which office workers, students and soldiers are mobilized can be prolonged, but not the period for the industrial workers. The light industry sector is presently unable to produce textiles properly because of the shortage of manpower. The industrial workers must leave the rural areas at the appointed time.

We should cultivate broad beans widely.

Broad beans are a good crop. They ripen early, their yield is high and they contain a great deal of protein. This morning I have been to the experimental broad-bean field of Farm No. 7 and found that the crop is now fully grown and the seeds have begun to ripen.

It is also cultivated on an experimental basis in Onchon County, South Phyongan Province. They say that the crop looks good. Once I conducted experiments on the cultivation of broad beans, but at that time the results were not good. So I stopped them. But this time the crop has flourished, probably because the seed treatment was good. I thought that broad beans would thrive only in Ryanggang Province, but that was not the case. It seems likely that if the seeds are selected in Ryanggang Province and cultivated in the Pyongyang area, the harvest will be rich.

Broad beans do not develop many stems. So if we are to increase the yield, we must plant them close together. On Farm No. 7, 133 broad bean plants per phyong or 400,000 plants per hectare were planted, and one plant produced 14 pods on average. Even if it bears only ten pods, the per-hectare yield will be at least five tons, so I am told. At a rate of 400,000 plants per hectare, 14 pods per plant, and 4 seeds per pod, the total number of seeds will be more than 22 million. Broad beans are more than twice as heavy as other beans. Ordinary beans weigh approximately 200 grammes per 1,000 seeds, so broad beans can yield at least eight tons per hectare. This is a very high yield.

Broad beans can be cultivated as part of double cropping. This crop is harvested in July. After the harvest, therefore, radishes or other crops can be cultivated.

Broad beans are cultivated widely in the Kunming area of China, and in Europe.
It seems that this crop was not cultivated in our country previously. It would be advisable for our botanists to study when broad beans were first cultivated in our country. During the war I named them *borakong*.

Broad beans contain a great deal of protein and little oil. We have a protein problem in our country. The shortage of protein presents a difficulty in providing nutrition for the people and in developing livestock farming. That is why I have been experimenting on the cultivation of different kinds of beans, and I have found that broad beans are excellent. This crop should be cultivated on an experimental basis, and then planted on a large scale.

On their return home, the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees must take agriculture and the centrally-run industries in hand and direct them efficiently. Of course they will have to supervise and direct all the affairs of their provinces, but the affairs of the educational and cultural sectors and local industries producing consumer goods for the people should be left to the care of the chairmen of the provincial people’s committees for them to direct them with the chairmen of the provincial, city, and county administrative committees. The chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees must take hold of agriculture with one hand and industry, particularly the centrally-run industries, with the other and lead them forward.
You have gone to a lot of trouble to come such a long way to visit our country. I should like to express my thanks to you for this and welcome you warmly.

You, the head of the delegation, have just stated that in Korea old age is said to begin at 90 and that, as you are far from that age, you can continue your public life for many years. I take this as a fine statement and I wish you good health.

On my own behalf and on behalf of all the Korean people, I express my gratitude to you for the activities you conduct in many areas of the international arena in support of our people’s cause of national reunification.

The question of Korea’s reunification is by no means a simple one. At present we are standing in direct confrontation with the US imperialists, who are unwilling to lose south Korea and are strengthening their grip on it. The question of Korean reunification is connected directly with the attempts of the US imperialists to dominate the world.

It is, therefore, just that you offer such strong support to our people’s struggle for national reunification, and it will be successful only when it is given active support by the progressive people of the world such as yourselves.
The second world conference to support the independent and peaceful reunification of Korea which is to be held in Tokyo, Japan, will be a very significant event.

The success of this conference and the many international meetings that will be arranged and convened through your positive efforts will stir up powerful public support in the world for the reunification of Korea. If this happens, it will be of great help to our people in their efforts to achieve national reunification. It will also awaken the south Korean people further, and this will hasten the establishment of democracy in their society.

In particular, the forthcoming second world conference to support the independent and peaceful reunification of Korea will have a powerful effect in rousing the Japanese people. It will also serve as an occasion to demonstrate to the Japanese reactionaries that people throughout the world support the independent and peaceful reunification of Korea.

As I always say, the Park Chung Hee “regime” can be likened to the horse-hair hat which was worn by Koreans in olden times. The hat was kept on the head by two strings. The “regime” is floating in the air, out of touch with the people, and is maintained by two strings just like the horsehair hat. The role of one string is played by the US imperialists and the other by the Japanese reactionaries. If either one of the two is cut, the “regime” will be blown away. In other words, if the US imperialists take their hands off south Korea or the Japanese reactionaries do not support the “regime”, it will collapse.

The south Korean people do not support the Park Chung Hee “regime” and they want the country to be reunified. Recently in south Korea demonstrations were held by the students of Rihwa Women’s and Yonse Universities against this “regime”, and also by the students of Seoul University. This shows that the “regime” is not supported by the people.

Park Chung Hee served as an officer in the Japanese army when our country was occupied by the Japanese imperialists. He was a stooge of Japan in the past and still is today. At the same time, he is a stooge of
the United States. The south Korean people are fully aware that he has been a traitor to the country all his life.

The south Korean people also know well that we in the north are genuine patriots.

Today the struggle in our country is a struggle between patriotism and treachery, not between communism and capitalism.

In south Korea it is not only the communists who oppose Park Chung Hee. The communists in south Korea have been forced underground due to the ruthless suppression by the Park Chung Hee puppet clique. People who act openly against Park Chung Hee in south Korea were all famous in former days. Among them are an ex-president, religious men and intellectuals. It is not because they are communists that they oppose the Park “regime”. They insist upon reunification because they are aware that the country will never be reunified if the current state of affairs is allowed to continue. The south Korean people want to see the country reunified now and are opposed to the Park “regime”.

The United States is trying to keep Korea divided forever. This is her strategic policy.

The United States is attempting to make Korea similar to Germany, but the Korean question is not the same as the German question.

In my speech made at the mass meeting to welcome the General Secretary of the German Socialist Unity Party when he visited our country last year, I clearly stated that the Korean question was different from the German question.

Germany was defeated after invading other countries as a fascist state. If Germany is reunified, the countries of Europe may be threatened by her. That is why many European countries do not want her reunification.

However, our country was a colony in the past and the Korean people were oppressed. Our country has never invaded any other country. The Korean people have lived together as a homogeneous nation for 5,000 years. There is no condition for our country to be divided.
Even after reunification our country will not pose a threat to any other countries.

The countries that neighbour us are all major powers. Do you think that our country, when reunified, will threaten China or the Soviet Union, Japan or the United States?

On the contrary, our country is being intimidated by other countries. It is in danger of being split by the major powers. Is not south Korea the victim of major power? That is why our country must be reunified at all costs.

Some people persist in the “theory of cross recognition”, which means that if China and the Soviet Union recognize south Korea, the United States and Japan will also recognize our country. We reject this.

To prevent this “cross recognition” of the enemy, we tell the Japanese who support us of our intention to establish diplomatic relations with Japan only after our reunification. If our country establishes diplomatic relations with Japan now, it will mean, in fact, that we have been deceived by the aggressive strategy of the US—its plot to create “two Koreas”.

Apparently the French government will recognize our country if socialist countries recognize south Korea. We do not want such a conditional recognition. We do not want to establish diplomatic relations with France immediately. At present it is better simply to trade with French people and for people to travel between our two countries.

Accepting the “theory of cross recognition” would mean committing an indelible crime against the nation and posterity, as it will lead to the permanent division of the country.

There is no “threat of southward invasion” from the northern half, but there is a threat of northward invasion from the south. As I said to the President of the Republic of Rwanda this morning, south Korea has a one million strong puppet army and more than 40,000 US soldiers are stationed there. They have atomic bombs as well as a great number of aircraft. In addition, there are many American military bases in Japan.

But we do not have a large army. The enemy itself has published
information that we have 400,000 soldiers. This was also mentioned in American, Japanese and British magazines. Our army can be no bigger than that in proportion to the population. Despite this, the enemy is still claiming that there is a “threat of southward invasion”.

Generally speaking, an army attacking a defending army ought to be twice as large numerically. Nevertheless, they say that our 400,000 soldiers are going to attack south Korea where there are more than 1,040,000 servicemen. Anyone with the slightest bit of military knowledge will soon realize that this is a lie.

The south Korean puppets are now clamouring that US troops must stay in south Korea because the communist army will attack from the north. This is no more than an excuse.

On several occasions we have stated that we will not “invade the south” and also emphasized frequently that we will not make south Korea communist.

We maintain that we should enter the UN under the single state nomenclature after establishing a federal government, leaving the systems in the north and the south as they are.

Those who want our country to enter the UN as “two Koreas” are only a small number of reactionaries in south Korea. If it enters the UN as “two Koreas”, our country will remain divided for ever. We can never agree to the permanent division of Korea.

The establishment of democratic power in south Korea will make it possible for Koreans themselves to reunify Korea peacefully. If democratic power is to be established in south Korea, it is imperative for the US troops to withdraw from there. Unless they are withdrawn, it will be impossible to make south Korean society democratic. If they stay there, Park Chung Hee will continue to have their backing to oppress the people. In assuming an air of importance he depends only on Americans and Japanese.

He is deceiving the people in order to maintain his “regime”. He is conducting false propaganda about the intention of the north to invade the south and to make south Korea communist. We have proposed to the Americans on several occasions that a peace treaty should be
concluded between our country and the United States. The ceasefire, which is neither peace nor war, cannot be continued in Korea, can it? If a peace treaty is concluded between our country and the United States and the US troops leave south Korea, the Korean question can be solved by the Koreans themselves through talks. But the Americans have not accepted our proposal. This shows that they are attempting to perpetuate their occupation of south Korea.

Carter has not kept his election pledges. Now the Americans say that they will withdraw their troops after modernizing the south Korean puppet army. I am not sure to what extent they will modernize it and by what numbers they will increase it. It is a million strong now, and I cannot tell whether they will increase it to two or even three million.

I think that Carter’s statement about withdrawing US troops from south Korea was aimed at deceiving the world. Why does he allow the US troops to stage frequent military exercises, while talking about their withdrawal?

This year, too, they held a large-scale military exercise in south Korea. It was the largest one since the ceasefire in Korea. Even in the past year since Carter proclaimed that the US troops stationed in south Korea would be withdrawn, US bombers deployed in Okinawa, Japan, flew to south Korea 29 times to conduct bombing exercises. They say that the aim is to get the bombers used to the route to south Korea. But this is a lie. Nowadays planes can fly easily to any destination without the need for training flights, because they are modernized. So why are flying exercises necessary? In addition, there are many places for bombing practices near Okinawa, so why do they have to come to south Korea for training? Their continuous military exercises in south Korea are aimed at threatening us and the south Korean people. They have consistently maintained the tension in our country, menacing us.

In order to ease the tension in Korea, therefore, it is necessary to arouse international public opinion.

I should like to extend my thanks to you, once again, for the strenuous efforts you are making, in spite of your age, in support of the
cause of Korea’s reunification.

I consider that the efforts you have made for our country’s reunification will not be in vain. The day will surely come when the south Korean people will become aware and the Koreans themselves will find a way to reunify Korea.

I am sorry to have spoken at such length.

If there are any more matters, including the situation in our country, about which you want information, please ask our comrades.

I am very glad we have become intimate friends today.

Due to the pressure of time I have been unable to converse with you at length on this occasion. I hope you will manage to find time to visit us again. Then we shall be able to talk for a long time.

Thank you.
ON SOME IMMEDIATE ECONOMIC TASKS FACING NORTH PHYONGAN PROVINCE

Speech at an Enlarged Plenary Meeting of the North Phyongan Provincial Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea

July 25-26, 1978

This enlarged plenary meeting of the North Phyongan Provincial Party Committee is being attended by its members, the senior officials of the province, the officials of the Party Central Committee for economic affairs and for local Party organizations, and the senior officials of the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council and of the Economy Commission of the Central People’s Committee.

While in North Phyongan Province on this occasion I have learnt about the economic affairs of the province by organizing guidance groups with the officials of the Party Central Committee and of the Economy Commission of the Central People’s Committee. I have also acquainted myself with the agricultural situation, as well as with the matters of building the Ponghwa Chemical Works and the iron works, of expanding the Tokhyon Mine, with the questions relating to the August 8 Factory, the Ragwon Machine Factory, the April 3 Factory, the Changsong Mine and with other problems in producing daily necessities and in building local factories.

Based on my inquiry into the economic affairs of North Phyongan Province, I should like to dwell on the important tasks that face this province.
First, on the matter of agriculture.

The crops in North Phyongan Province are now very good. On this trip to the province, I have found the crop situation here better than in previous years. The officials who have travelled here by car are also unanimous in saying that the crops are excellent. Those comrades who have come by way of Thaecheon and those who have come using the route through Unsan concur. On the day of my arrival here I telephoned the Vice-Chairman of the Economy Commission of the Central People’s Committee and gave him the task of inquiring into the progress of farming throughout the province. His report confirms our view. This is splendid.

North Phyongan Province suffers damage caused by high winds towards July 30 every year, and I think that if it is free of such damage over the next few days it will reap a rich harvest this year. I have given this province the target of producing 1.5 million tons of grain this year, and it seems to me that the province will be able to achieve this if it works efficiently.

There are 8,600 hectares of paddy fields in Unjon County; it says that it will increase the per-hectare yield by 1.5 tons as compared to last year and produce 8.5 tons per hectare. Ryongchon County, with 12,000 hectares of rice paddies, says that it will produce eight tons per hectare by increasing the per-hectare yield by two tons. Jongju County with 7,900 hectares of paddy fields says that it will increase the per-hectare yield to eight tons or 1.7 tons more than last year. Yomju County with 9,800 hectares of rice fields says that it will increase the per-hectare yield to 7.6 tons or 1.6 tons more than last year. Rice cultivation in these counties is very successful.

The Yangso Cooperative Farm in Ryongchon County, which is particularly good at rice farming, says that it will produce 8.5 tons from each of its 1,300 hectares of rice fields. The Sinam Cooperative Farm, nine tons; and the Jangsan Cooperative Farm, 8.7 tons. The Tobong Cooperative Farm, Yomju County, says that it will produce 8.5 tons of rice from each of its 628 hectares. It is also estimated that 8.4 tons will be produced per hectare at the Samgae Cooperative Farm, Yomju
County; 9.1 tons at the Tongchon Cooperative Farm, Cholsan County; 9.5 tons at the Moksadae Cooperative Farm and 9.4 tons at the Ansan Cooperative Farm, Tongnim County; 8.5 tons at the Wonpho Cooperative Farm, Kwaksan County; 9.5 tons at the Chimhyang Cooperative Farm and 8.5 tons at the Osan Cooperative Farm, Jongju County; 9.1 tons at the Unha Cooperative Farm, 9.2 tons at the Posok Cooperative Farm and 9.2 tons at the Songhak Cooperative Farm, Unjon County; and 8.5 tons at the Ryulgok Cooperative Farm and 9 tons at the Tansan Cooperative Farm, Pakchon County.

This year the Yaksu Cooperative Farm, Changsong County, says it will produce seven tons, and the average per-hectare yield in this county will reach six tons, according to the estimate. If the average per-hectare yield is as high as six tons, the county will have reached the same level as the areas on the plains in terms of its rice yield.

In the past the farmers of Changsong County produced no more than 2.5 tons per hectare because they did not know how to cultivate rice. But then they spread new soil over the paddy fields, as I taught them, raised rice seedlings in dry-field cold-beds and dug long ditches where the water could warm before irrigating the rice paddies. In this way they have gradually increased the per-hectare rice yield. In particular, over recent years they have fully applied the Juche farming method, with the result that they have increased the yield to the level of that of the areas on the plains.

North Phyongan Province has also raised a fine crop of maize. The estimated per-hectare maize yields this year are 7.5 tons by the Ryonghwa Cooperative Farm, Nyongbyon County; 7.2 tons by the Taehwa Cooperative Farm and eight tons by the Ryongun Cooperative Farm, Uiju County; 7.5 tons by the Hakdang Cooperative Farm, Thaechon County; seven tons by the Namsan Cooperative Farm, Kusong; seven tons by the Samsang Cooperative Farm, Phiyon County; eight tons by the Kumbu Cooperative Farm, Sakju County; and 6.5 tons by the Kumya Cooperative Farm, Changsong County. These cooperative farms are situated roughly in the zone between the highlands and the lowlands. They have not been good at farming in the
past, but they are very successful this year.

This year North Phyongan Province has raised excellent crops because the provincial Party committee and Party organizations have carried out the Party’s agricultural policy and applied the Juche farming method substantially. I am highly appreciative of this.

I would like to express my thanks to the officials of the Party committees and of the agricultural sector, particularly those of the cooperative farm management committees, the workers on the cooperative farm management boards and all the farmers of those counties I have specifically mentioned for their good farming this year, as well as to all the working people who have worked hard in support of agriculture.

It is very important for North Phyongan Province to raise good crops. The province is a major grain-producing area of our country, so it ought to farm well to produce grain in large quantities. It must also serve as a major supply base for our country in an emergency. It is only when it grows good crops that it can fulfil its mission as a supply base in an emergency.

The date we have set for seeding is earlier this year. This would seem to mark a great turning-point in increasing agricultural production. This spring I inquired about the farming situation in North Hamgyong Province and, having fixed the date for planting rice and maize seeds in nurseries there, I then adopted measures for planting seeds early in the western region, too. This has made a great contribution to ensuring good crops this year.

The current investigation has revealed that most of the cooperative farms in North Phyongan Province sowed rice seeds in cold-beds early, as I instructed. As a result the seedlings were healthy, they could be transplanted early and they developed stems much earlier than in previous years. Though the initial growth of the maize was arrested slightly by the drought, the crop is fine on the whole, because it rained when the tassels were developing.

This year the North Phyongan Provincial Party Committee has carried out the Party’s decisions and instructions as it should.
Previously North Phyongan Province used to start sowing rice seeds in cold-beds late, and as a result the seedlings could not grow properly. It is said that in those days the province sowed seeds from the beginning of April to April 20, yet the farmers were ordered to finish transplanting the seedlings by May 25. So the seedlings had no more than 35 to 40 days to grow in the nurseries. Since these seedlings were scarcely 40 days old when bedded out, they could neither strike roots quickly nor develop many stems. This year the seeds were sown in the beds around March 15 and transplanting was begun between May 5 and 10. So, the seedlings were able to grow in nurseries for 50 to 55 days.

If we raise good crops and produce large quantities of grain, we shall be able to live without any great worries, although we may find ourselves a little short of such things as fabrics. For this reason, I advanced agriculture as the most important factor in economic construction as early as the days immediately after liberation, worked on this line and many years ago put out the slogan “Fertilizer means rice and rice means socialism.” In olden times our forefathers also regarded agriculture as very important, saying that it was the basis of everything.

It is very important for farming to be done well, particularly today when the world is suffering a serious food crisis due to the cold front. Because agriculture in many countries has failed, large numbers of people are now starving. According to statistics, in one country 500,000 people and in another country 1,500,000 people are on the brink of starvation, and 500 million people are undernourished throughout the world. But in our country everyone eats his fill.

Recently the provincial authorities have been complaining ceaselessly about the fact that, because the state does not carry away the cereals produced the previous year from the granaries at the cooperative farms quickly enough, the granaries may not be available to the farms for storing the new crop of cereals which will be harvested before long. The transportation of the old grain stored in the granaries is being delayed because state granaries have not been built in time and because petrol is in short supply. Anyhow, we still have large amounts
of old grain in reserve, and what a good thing this is! If we wind up this year’s farming creditably and produce large amounts of grain, the state will be able to store up even larger amounts of cereals.

North Phyongan Province must continue to increase agricultural production in the future by drawing on the experience it has gained in farming this year.

If you are to increase the yields of cereals, you must make good preparations for farming and sow seeds in nurseries at the right time.

The province has grown good crops this year, but shortcomings were revealed in the preparations it made for farming. As the date of sowing rice seeds in cold-beds was suddenly advanced, seeds were sown in nurseries which had not been prepared properly, and in some places seedlings were grown in open nurseries because of a lack of thatch. If the province had prepared enough thatch, windbreaks, seeds, seed disinfectants and good nurseries in advance, it would have raised even better crops this year.

You must learn your lesson from this year’s farming and make good preparations for next year’s farming. If you start now to prepare humus, plastic sheets, thatch, windbreaks and the like carefully, you will be able to grow healthy cold-bed rice seedlings next year and produce ten tons of rice per hectare.

During my current visit here, I have found that some cooperative farms in North Phyongan Province are not preparing for next year’s farming properly. Such things as stakes could easily be prepared now, but I am told that they plan to prepare them next spring. You must prepare things like stakes and supporting poles now, instead of busying yourselves with obtaining them next spring.

We must start sowing rice seeds in cold-beds as early as possible and finish it quickly.

This year’s experience has demonstrated the decisive advantage of doing this. According to the report submitted to me, the farmers say that they can start sowing earlier and finish it in approximately ten days.

Over recent years cold-bed rice seed sowing has been delayed,
largely because the Agricultural Commission has failed to give proper guidance.

The regulations issued by the Agricultural Commission with regard to cold-bed rice seed sowing were not appropriate, nor was its guidance efficient. The regulations say that rice seeds should be sown in cold-beds during the 20 days between March 20 and April 10. To make matters worse, guidance was inefficient so that the sowing of rice seeds would drag on for a month until April 20. As rice seeds were sown late and seedlings were transplanted early in haste, young plants with only three or four leaves were bedded out. It is best to transplant a rice seedling when it has developed five or six leaves.

This year we have corrected these shortcomings and sowed the rice seeds in cold-beds early. This is excellent. I have been told that the farmers who have appreciated the advantages of early seeding this year are resolved to start sowing rice seeds in cold-beds from March 15 in the future. Farmers accept the advantages of and adopt advanced farming methods only when they have been convinced of them through an object lesson. If we simply emphasize the advantages verbally instead of giving them an object lesson, they will not willingly accept them. Through their own experience this year they have gained a clear understanding that it is best to start sowing early and finish it quickly.

I think it best for North Phyongan Province to start sowing rice seeds in cold-beds on March 15 and finish it within ten days, that is, by March 25. It must be finished by the end of March at the latest. Then, the rice seedlings will have 50 days to grow in nurseries and transplanting can be finished by May 20. People in some areas say that they will start seeding from March 10. That will be fine if they spread 35 to 40 kg of humus per phyong of the nursery. But in North Phyongan Province it will be safe to start on March 15.

From next year onwards North Phyongan Province must start sowing rice seeds on March 15 and finish it within 10 to 15 days.

In cultivating maize, too, it is very important to adhere strictly to the principle of the right crop at the right time.

We must make it a principle for maize seedlings grown in
humus-cakes to be transplanted after the late frost. In North Phyongan Province maize will still ripen even if the seedlings are transplanted after the late frost. So there is no need to hurry the transplantation of humus-cake maize seedlings too much. It will not do, however, to bed them out too late. Particularly in those areas which may possibly suffer damage from a typhoon, they should be transplanted as early as possible. This is the way to prevent the maize being damaged by a storm and for it to grow in safety. The typhoon used to hit some areas, notably the Cholsan peninsula, towards the end of August or early in September. In order to avoid typhoon damage to the crops in these areas, it is necessary to transplant the humus-cake maize seedlings as early as possible.

North Phyongan Province must not relax, simply because there have been no storms over the past few years. You must always envisage the possibility of typhoons and take steps to prevent them causing damage. You have become easy going because there has been no flooding over recent years; you have neglected measures to prevent flood damage, and have not even cleared the drainage ditches. This is a mistake. Though the drought is still persisting, no one knows when there may be heavy rain and floods. If floods visit you when you are doing nothing to provide against them, not even digging ditches to drain your fields, the fields will be submerged and a great loss sustained. Digging ditches around fields is something that has been done since ancient times. You must do this in spring, in summer and in autumn—three times a year. But the officials in charge of agriculture pay no attention to this matter, nor do they give proper guidance.

North Phyongan Province has done a good thing this year by widely applying the method of raising maize seedlings in humus-cakes. That is why the maize crop is excellent. Under the strong effects of the cold front it is essential to adopt the humus-cake method, and only by doing this is it possible to cultivate maize in safety. North Phyongan Province must use it more widely next year. Farm work has not yet been completely mechanized, so it will be difficult and will require a lot of labour to apply the humus-cake method extensively. Nevertheless, you
must continue to expand the area where this method is applied. It is not a bad idea to mobilize students to transplant humus-cake maize seedlings. The important thing in growing rice is to mechanize rice-transplanting.

In order to increase the per-hectare rice yield, it is necessary to grow healthy seedlings and bed them out between May 5 and 20. If the seedlings are transplanted after May 20, the yield falls in proportion to the delay. Experiments conducted over recent years show that every single day’s delay in transplanting after May 20 decreases the per-hectare yield by 100 kg, and after May 25 by 200 kg. If the seedlings are transplanted around May 30, the per-hectare yield is reduced by one ton compared to those bedded out around May 25.

There are two ways of finishing transplanting on time. One is to mobilize a large number of people and the other is to mechanize rice-transplanting. However, if many workers are mobilized for transplanting, this will interfere with industrial production, making it impossible to carry out the Second Seven-Year Plan successfully. From next year onwards, therefore, we must not mobilize as many workers as we did this year, but bed out rice seedlings by machine. If we use machines we shall be able to finish transplanting quickly with less manpower, and also transplant the seedlings better.

When we compare the mechanized and manual transplanting of rice seedlings, the former really is better. Machines plant the seedlings to a moderate depth, which facilitates the development of roots, and ensure an accurate number of rice plants per phyong. Clear proof of this has been shown through this year’s rice farming in North Phyongan Province. Next year we must, at all costs, radically increase the proportion of transplanting done by machine.

If we increase it to 75 to 80 per cent on a national average, this will represent a great achievement. We must work hard to make sure that we do this. Then, rice cultivation will be steady.

Rice-transplanting on the vast plains of Unjon, Jongju, Kwaksan and Ryongchon Counties of North Phyongan Province must all be done by machine.
For transplanting to be mechanized, it is necessary to establish a reasonable ratio of the number of tractors to that of rice-transplanter and supply them in line with this. According to the experiment conducted on the Chongsan Cooperative Farm, Taean, this year, a one-to-one ratio is most effective. So, at the consultative meeting of agricultural workers held in June this year, we established the principle of supplying tractors and rice-transplanter to the cooperative farms at a ratio of one to one. In future we must adhere to this principle in supplying tractors and rice-transplanter.

You say that rice transplanting in 90 per cent of the total area of paddy fields in North Phyongan Province can be mechanized and that therefore the province needs 2,800 additional tractors. However, it appears it will be difficult to supply so many tractors.

Even if all the tractors planned are produced this year, the province will receive no more than 2,400. But it is doubtful whether the planned number of tractors can be produced. The Kum Song Tractor Factory is to produce 1,200 tractors every month until September 9, but it is not keeping up with this target because steel is in short supply. We must see that 1,200 tractors are produced every month, even if it means importing steel.

Because it seems it will be difficult to produce the number planned, a large number of tractors cannot be supplied to one province alone. They must be supplied equally to North Hamgyong Province, to South Hamgyong Province, as well as to other provinces. Therefore, it would seem advisable to supply 2,000 tractors to North Phyongan Province.

In order to mechanize rice-transplanting, it is necessary to produce large numbers of rice-transplanter as well as tractors. All the factories capable of making transplanters should be encouraged to produce them. There is a rice-transplanter factory in North Phyongan Province. It must mass-produce them using engines supplied by another factory, and must also repair them.

Provinces must also mass-produce their own rice-seedling diggers. You must train large numbers of tractor drivers and rice-transplanter operators and improve their technical skills.
A well-trained operator can transplant three hectares a day. Therefore, you must keep the transplanter operators at their post, educate them and provide suitable conditions for them to work hard.

North Phyongan Province is asking for a lot of machine tools in order to increase the capacity of its small tractor assembly plant. You must not increase its capacity yet.

At present even those large tractor factories where the technical level is higher cannot operate at full capacity because steel is in short supply. In view of the situation, there is no need to use a lot of machines and labour on expanding a small tractor assembly plant where the technical level is low, supply it with steel and let it produce low-quality machines. North Phyongan Province can manage with the supplies of small tractors produced by South Phyongan Province. Moreover, we cannot afford to comply immediately with North Phyongan Province’s request for machine tools. This is why you must abandon the idea of increasing the capacity of this factory.

On this occasion I shall not give North Phyongan Province the separate task of assembling small tractors. I doubt whether such an assignment would produce any tangible results.

It is very important to equip the tractor spare parts works well and mass-produce these parts. We must provide the provinces with the equipment and materials they need to improve these works so that the provinces can meet their own needs for tractor spare parts. This will alleviate the burden on tractor plants and help them in producing tractors in larger quantities.

If we are to increase the rate of use of tractors we must mass-produce trailer farm implements. No matter how many tractors there are in the rural communities, it is impossible to use them effectively unless there are also trailer farm implements. We must produce a great variety of them in large numbers, such as machines for spreading fertilizer and spraying agricultural chemicals.

North Phyongan Province is asking for electric motors, transformers, engines, electric wires and other irrigation equipment and materials. We should supply them if they are included in the state plan.
Next, we must obtain plenty of humus and fertilizer and use them according to scientific principles.

The spring weather is cold and we have to sow rice seeds early. If we are to maintain the temperature required in the nurseries in such conditions, we must use sufficient humus. In the area north of Jongju, 35 kg of humus must be used per 

phyong of the seed-beds when the rice seeds are sown in cold-beds on March 15, and 40 kg per 

phyong when they are sown on March 10. The earlier we start seeding in cold-beds, the more humus soil we must use.

Having sown the seeds early, and having bedded out healthy rice seedlings in the right season, we must establish a thorough scientific manuring system and apply fertilizers properly.

One important aspect of establishing a scientific manuring system is to apply fertilizers stage by stage in conformity with the stage of growth of the rice plants.

The advantages of using fertilizers in this way have been proved clearly in practice. We must apply fertilizers in stages, and determine a proper ratio between the amounts of fertilizers to be used in the stage of vegetative growth and in the reproductive stage. Only then will the rice plants develop many stems and grow well, will all the stems form good ears bearing many seeds, will the seeds ripen well, and so will the weight per thousands grains be great.

The chief secretaries of the provincial, city and county Party committees and the chairmen of the provincial rural economy committees and of the county cooperative farm management committees must give efficient guidance to the cooperative farms and ensure that fertilizers are applied properly during the period of vegetative growth and at the reproductive stage of rice.

It is also important to fertilize the fields at the opportune time.

Fertilizer must be applied at the right time. Fertilizer applied late is useless. This can be likened to a man who must eat at set times. Just as a man suffers from indigestion or from stomach trouble if he does not eat at the right time, but after his meal time, so it is ineffective to apply fertilizer to rice plants late.

278
This year the rice plants have developed many stems because the seedlings were healthy and were bedded out early. Last year the average number per phyong throughout the country was 1,200 to 1,300, and this year it is over 1,500 in almost all provinces. But we have been unable to increase the amount of fertilizer applied in the earing season accordingly because it has been in short supply. For this reason, it does not seem that the increase in the number of stems will produce any great results.

Ten men need ten rations and a hundred people a hundred rations. Likewise, a rice plant which has developed many stems needs so much more fertilizer. If a hundred people eat ten men’s rations, they will be hungry, and if a rice plant with many stems is given an insufficient amount of fertilizer, it will suffer from a deficiency of nutrients and many of the stems will become sterile. Even those ears that do develop will not bear many seeds, nor will they ripen properly.

Because an inadequate amount of fertilizer was used in the earing season this year, we are losing a great deal of rice. The loss of rice from using insufficient fertilizer in the earing season will probably amount to at least 500,000 tons. The farmers have worked with enthusiasm and the whole country gave them powerful support from early spring, so a good rice crop was raised. But they are losing a great deal because of the shortage of fertilizer for the earing rice plants. This is a great pity and a source of much regret.

It is rather late to be doing it now, but we must work hard to make up for the shortage of fertilizer for the earing season. We have to use all the fertilizer that is now in stock for the earing crop and obtain fertilizer for the ripening crop by conventional methods. The urine and dung of cattle contain a great deal of nitrogen. They must be collected and spread over the paddy fields and the soil on the floors of animal sheds should also be collected for the rice crop.

The earing rice crop does not necessarily require only nitrogen fertilizer. It would be fine to mix some phosphorus fertilizer with nitrogen fertilizer. If phosphorus fertilizer is now in stock, it should be mixed with nitrogen fertilizer and used on the earing crop.
The failure to fertilize the earing rice crop properly this year can be attributed in particular to the fact that the Ministry of Chemical Industry and the Administration Council have worked carelessly and have not ensured that the fertilizer production plan was fulfilled.

If this year’s plan for fertilizer production was to be carried out, the Administration Council and the Ministry of Chemical Industry should have examined the state of the equipment at the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex closely last year and should have taken measures to renovate the compressors and other worn-out machines. If new compressors had been imported for the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex, even though it meant exchanging tens of thousands of tons of rice, this year’s plan for fertilizer production could have been carried out, and there would have been no shortage of fertilizer for the earing season.

As early as the days immediately after liberation I paid a visit to the fertilizer factory and emphasized the importance of fertilizer production. In spite of this, the Administration Council has paid no attention to this matter; it has done nothing to replace the worn-out compressors at the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex. As a result, this fine factory has been unable to operate properly and to meet its production quotas.

The compressors at the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex should be replaced because they are worn out, having been made in the 1920s. Unless these and some other worn-out machines are replaced, it will be impossible for the factory to produce fertilizer on a steady basis.

The urea fertilizer factory at the newly-built Youth Chemical Complex has exceeded its production quota for this year. All its equipment is new so that, with careful management and operation, it can produce fertilizer over and above its capacity. The management at this factory always keeps its equipment in a good state of repair and maintenance in anticipation of possible accidents.

The irresponsible work attitude of the Ministry of Foreign Trade is also one reason for the failure to fertilize the earing rice crop properly this year.

This ministry exported 25,000 tons of urea fertilizer on the
understanding that it would import the kinds of fertilizer we need this year, but it has not imported them on time. Twenty-five thousand tons of urea fertilizer are considerably more than 50,000 tons at the rate of standard fertilizer. This is a huge amount. If 50,000 tons were available now, they would make a great contribution to the cultivation of our rice crop.

It is a serious mistake for the Ministry of Foreign Trade to have exported fertilizer without importing other fertilizer on time. The officials of this ministry must be held responsible for this failure. If they had not taken definite measures to import fertilizer on time, they should not have exported any. In view of the fact that sometimes we are unable to use the goods we have stockpiled when we need them because of a shortage of transport, it is no simple task to import fertilizer from abroad soon enough to meet our needs in the farming season. The work of the Ministry of Foreign Trade is still seriously affected by subjectivism.

The failure to apply fertilizer to the earing rice crop at the right time this year was due entirely to the inefficient work of the Administration Council and the Ministry of Chemical Industry, which did not ensure the fulfilment of the plan for fertilizer production, and of the Ministry of Foreign Trade which did not import fertilizer immediately after exporting it. As you see, the consequences of the officials’ careless work are very grave. Playing with the question of fertilizer is very dangerous.

The provinces are also to blame for the failure to apply fertilizer to the earing rice crop at the right time this year.

They have wasted a great deal of fertilizer by using it many times on the rice plants when they were developing stems. In North Phyongan Province, for instance, the rice plants which were developing stems were given fertilizer many times, although they did not need a great deal of it because healthy seedlings had been raised and transplanted at the right time. Why should fertilizer be used for rice plants which would develop many stems even if fertilizer was not applied to them? The mistake of being careless and wasting fertilizer
was all the more serious in view of the fact that a conference had been held over the telephone, warning them about the shortage of fertilizer and urging them to use it economically. Even though the state was to ensure the supply of fertilizer as planned, they should have used it after assessing how fertilizer was being produced in our country.

North Phyongan and North Hamgyong Provinces have received less fertilizer than other provinces because they have not collected it on time.

This year South Phyongan and South Hamgyong Provinces have received a little more fertilizer than other provinces, but this was not a special favour. Some officials seem to think that we have supplied them with extra in order to improve agriculture in these provinces. They seem to be prejudiced. For a short time this year large amounts of fertilizer were being produced by the fertilizer factories. The urea fertilizer factory of the Youth Chemical Complex, for instance, was producing 2,500 tons of nitrogen fertilizer every day. The situation was such that fertilizer production was held up from time to time because the product was not being collected quickly enough. On more than one occasion, therefore, I had to telephone the chief secretaries of the Party committees of South Phyongan and South Hamgyong Provinces, where there are fertilizer factories, urging them to collect fertilizer quickly by mobilizing every means of transport. That was why lorries and tractors from these provinces transported fertilizer during winter, during spring and throughout the rest of the year. Such being the case, these provinces took more fertilizer than other provinces, and Anju County, for instance, fetched more than the amount that had been allocated to it.

North Phyongan and North Hamgyong Provinces did not fetch fertilizer when other provinces were doing so. When they were told to fetch it, they did not do so, saying that they had no straw sacks and rolling stock available. They only started hurrying and scurrying for fertilizer when the season to apply it arrived. How could they expect to obtain it by asking for it when it was out of stock, while doing nothing when there was a large stockpile?
From now onwards, the provincial authorities must improve their organizational work and ensure that a large number of straw sacks is produced and that fertilizer is transported before it is too late. In this way they can receive their monthly allocations of fertilizer and put them into store. Then, the provinces will receive an equal amount of fertilizer.

From now onwards we must pay particular attention to the production of fertilizer to be used next year and concentrate our efforts on it.

The first thing to do is to take prompt measures to make the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex fully operational.

We must draw up a contract to import the equipment needed to repair this factory and obtain it as soon as possible. I have been told that this equipment will cost us approximately five million pounds sterling. If we export 40,000 tons of rice, we shall obtain this amount of money. Forty thousand tons of rice are not a large amount. If we increase the production of fertilizer and apply it liberally, we shall be able to increase the rice output by hundreds of thousands of tons, not just by 40,000 tons. If we had used sufficient fertilizer for the earing rice crop this year, we could have increased the yield of rice by 1.5 tons per hectare or nearly one million tons across the country.

In addition to adopting measures to import this new equipment, we must repair the equipment we already have. If it takes a year and a half to import the new equipment, as you have said, we shall be unable to use it to produce fertilizer for next year’s farming, even if we order it right away. For the present, therefore, we must repair the equipment we have and use that.

It is true that we shall be unable to put production at the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex onto a fully regular basis, no matter how well we may repair the equipment there. The equipment is too old for us to prevent all such accidents as breakdowns and leakages in the rusty pipe system and to produce fertilizer as planned next year. But next year there will be no instance of fertilizer production being held up due to a shortage of power as happened this year, since the reservoirs
on the east coast are full.

The officials concerned say that they will put production onto a steady basis by repairing and maintaining the equipment at the fertilizer factory. It is important that they put their words into practice, instead of simply talking about it. On the matter of agriculture, words and deeds must conform. When you have an impossible problem to solve, you must take it as impossible at the outset and try to find alternatives. If not, you will ruin the crop.

The commissions and ministries of the Administration Council must provide sufficient of the materials needed to repair the equipment at the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex.

The project to extend the Aoji Chemical Factory must be accelerated.

In view of the problem in ensuring steady production at the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex, the urea fertilizer factory at the Youth Chemical Complex alone will be unable to produce all the fertilizer needed for next year’s farming. Moreover, if anything goes wrong with the equipment at this urea fertilizer factory or if an accident happens, the situation will be critical. Therefore, we have to build a new fertilizer factory.

The expansion of the Aoji Chemical Factory must be speeded up and completed quickly since the equipment is now available.

It has been planned to start construction next year; but the plan must be re-examined and the project accelerated. North Hamgyong Province must, at all costs, concentrate its efforts on this project and finish it quickly, although it does have other urgent projects to undertake.

The fertilizer production capacity of the Aoji Chemical Factory is not small. So, if the project to expand this works is completed, the instability in the production of fertilizer can be removed. Then we shall be able to produce more than enough fertilizer. If they have 400,000 to 500,000 tons of fertilizer in reserve, the farmers will be able to raise the crops using liberal amounts of fertilizer.

In order to increase grain production next year, we must start making good preparations immediately.
We must first concentrate on producing humus.

Fibroid humus is best for cold rice seed-beds and for the humus-cakes in which maize seedlings are grown. If we are to produce plenty of good-quality fibroid humus, we must cut a lot of grass, shrubs and the like and let them rot completely. Some cooperative farms are not cutting grass properly, complaining that there is no grassland available and no work hands to do it. They must not take this attitude. They must cut grass on a wide scale, even if it means that the supporting people have to help. If they cut grass from time to time during spring and summer they will be able to produce as much humus as is needed. If they mow the ridges between dry fields and the embankments from time to time, they will be able to obtain a reasonable amount of humus. Then the ridges and embankments will look neat and tidy. The cooperative farms must organize an energetic mass campaign to cut grass and produce large amounts of humus.

Plastic sheets must be looked after properly.

These plastic sheets were imported at the cost of a lot of foreign currency and must not be damaged through careless handling. The cooperative farms must make an inventory of the sheets now in stock, service those which need servicing, and look after them carefully.

All the thatch needed to cover the cold seed-beds and all the windbreaks to fence them, as well as everything else that is needed to prepare the cold seed-beds for next year, should be obtained.

Thorough measures should be taken to protect the crop from damage by wind and rain, and everything should be prepared so that the harvest can be gathered on time.

Next, I shall touch on the problem of building granaries.

North Phyongan Province is situated in the strategic rear of the country, so it is important to build many granaries here.

Every year I emphasize the need to build granaries. In autumn the people of North Phyongan Province and of other provinces talk a great deal about building them, but in spring the next year they abandon the idea. The Administration Council and the General Bureau of Procurement and Food Administration of the Commission of Public
Welfare are also unconcerned about building granaries. This task must never be neglected. If you do not build more granaries before autumn, storing the cereals may pose a problem.

The officials concerned are neglecting not only the construction of granaries but also the transportation of food grain. Since local authorities have lorries at their disposal, they can transport it quickly if they are supplied with enough petrol. But no measures are being taken to ensure that this is done. So the cooperative farms complain that the maize is rotting, and cornstarch factories are unable to produce cooking oil properly for the working people because of a lack of the raw material.

I am told that we have no stocks of lacquer and thinner and that we are having to import soybean oil to produce them. If you organize the work well and operate the rice-bran oil mills properly you will not need to import any soybean oil. You will be perfectly able to make lacquer, thinner, soap and such things from rice-bran oil. You must organize things so that the rice-bran oil mills can operate at full capacity.

Storehouses on the cooperative farms must be emptied quickly before this year’s crop is harvested. The Administration Council must hold a meeting of standing members and discuss the matter of building granaries and transporting cereals, and adopt detailed measures.

Now, on the question of developing livestock farming by making use of the mountains.

A long time ago I told the people of Changsong County, a mountainous county, to plant arrowroot all over the mountains and raise farm animals widely. In the days after the war I visited Changsong County and found that the life of the people was very poor. They worked hard but they were unable to produce enough food for the whole year. So we moved them to Jongju and other lowland areas, but they returned, saying that the water and the air there were not as good as in Changsong. Since they had returned, I took various measures to increase agricultural production and to develop livestock farming in order to improve their standard of living. The state sent them geese as well as cattle and sheep in large numbers. But they slaughtered and ate
them because they were short of animal feed. Without solving the feed problem for them, it was pointless sending them any animals. So, giving on-the-spot guidance in this county in July 1961, I gave the local officials the task of planting arrowroot on the mountains to obtain animal feed.

I gave Sakju, Taegwan and Pyokdong Counties the same task, and in August 1962, with a view to popularizing this method throughout the country, I even gave a demonstration lecture in Kumya-ri, Changsong County, to the officials who attended the joint conference of local Party and economic officials.

Arrowroot is a leguminous plant. The root contains a great deal of starch. When they ran out of provisions, the anti-Japanese guerrillas used to obtain starch from this plant and with it they made pancakes and fist-shaped cakes. Arrowroot must be good animal feed since even men can eat it.

According to information from a foreign source, arrowroot has been planted on mountains in many countries over recent years and is being used widely as animal feed. A long time ago I set the task of doing this. If our officials had carried out the task properly, our country would have prospered. But no one has shown any interest in it.

A few days ago I enquired about the planting of arrowroot on the mountains of Changsong County, and discovered that the plants that had already been planted had been ravaged. So I criticized the chief secretary of the Changsong County Party Committee. The same was the case with Sakju, Taegwan and Pyokdong Counties. I am told that although in Taegwan County arrowroot was planted on many mountains immediately after the task was assigned, only 50 hectares now remain because the areas were not managed carefully.

The Party organizations in Changsong and Taegwan Counties must conduct an ideological campaign against the neglect of this task.

Since the area of arable land in the mountainous counties such as Changsong, Sakju, Taegwan and Pyokdong Counties is limited, it is difficult to solve the problem of animal feed by growing aegukphul or kukhwaphul. The only way of solving the problem of animal feed
without using farmland is to cultivate arrowroot widely. Arrowroot thrives anywhere—on hillocks, slopes, ridges between crop fields and embankments.

Arrowroot contains a high percentage of protein. A goat that is fed on it produces plenty of milk and arrowroot is also good feed for chickens. Even if it is densely planted, it grows quickly and its branches and leaves can be cut several times a year, so the per-hectare yield is very high. Foreign data says that 1,500 to 2,000 plants can be grown per hectare, and 70 tons of green feed can be obtained. If this amount is dried, 17 tons of fodder can be produced.

In North Phyongan Province arrowroot should be planted on the mountains on a large scale in line with the Party’s policy of making good use of the mountains in mountainous regions.

According to a preliminary survey, 2,400 hectares of Changsong County are unsuitable for grain production. If all this land is used to grow arrowroot, a considerable amount of animal feed will be produced. Suppose 60 tons of arrowroot is harvested per hectare, then 144,000 tons of green feed or 38,000 tons of dried feed will be produced from 2,400 hectares. One kilogramme of dried arrowroot is the equivalent of a 280-gramme unit. A two-kilogramme unit of feed is needed to produce one kilogramme of chicken, so 38,000 tons of dried arrowroot will be enough to produce at least 5,000 tons of chicken. This is a large amount. The people of Changsong County must work hard to develop 2,400 hectares of arrowroot fields.

I am told that there are 2,800 hectares of land in Taegwan County that are suitable for arrowroot cultivation. If all this land is used to cultivate arrowroot, both the chicken plants and rabbit farms in the county can be provided with sufficient feed. The county should plant arrowroot in this 2,800 hectares by next spring, as the chief secretary of its Party committee has resolved.

You say that in Sakju County 3,400 hectares of arrowroot fields can be developed, and if the edges of the fields are used for the purpose, the area will be much larger. However, 3,400 hectares will be quite enough for this county.
Pyokdong County must also reclaim 2,200 hectares of arrowroot fields, as the chief secretary of the county Party committee has resolved.

The officials from Sakju and Pyokdong Counties say that they will finish this project within three years. It should not be dragged out for so long. It can be finished sooner if the work is organized properly. The mountains in these counties abound in arrowroot, so the plants needed for the project can be obtained easily. The success of this depends on how the people in these counties are mobilized. If the county institutions, enterprises, cooperative farms and schools are allocated a few hectares each, the task can be completed within a short time.

Other counties must also work hard to lay out arrowroot fields. Of course, it will be difficult for those counties on the plains, such as Ryongchon County, to create large areas of arrowroot fields. But the counties in the intermediate zone, such as Phiyon and Uiju Counties, will be perfectly able to do it.

The relevant department of the Party Central Committee and the Agricultural Commission must organize the work efficiently so that a widespread campaign to plant arrowroot is launched in South Hwanghae Province and in all the other provinces of the country.

After this enlarged plenary meeting, the Party organizations and officials in charge of agriculture in North Phyongan Province must adopt strict measures to prevent the crop being damaged by the wind and rain and must make good preparations for harvesting on the one hand and for next year’s farming on the other.

The agricultural problems that must be solved by the central authority will be discussed at the interim review of this year’s farming in mid-August, and the relevant measures will be adopted. At that time the experiment on keeping rice-field water at the lowest possible level will also be reviewed.

The method of keeping rice-fields water at the minimum level is excellent in that it suits the biological characteristics of rice. If the rice field is kept supplied with the minimum amount of water it needs, instead of being kept heavily flooded, the rice plants will strike deep
roots, will not rot and will develop many stems because a great deal of oxygen can penetrate the soil. Another advantage of this method is that water can be used economically.

In applying this method it is important to keep the water at the lowest possible level whilst ensuring that the field does not dry up.

This year we have solved the problem of sowing rice seeds in cold beds and next year we are going to see that the minimum water-level method is adopted for all the rice fields in our country.

This year we have tested this method in a few places, and the results are not bad. In North Phyongan Province the results of the experiment on this method in Unjon County should be shown to the chief agriculturists of the county cooperative farm management committees in the province.

Secondly, I shall refer to the question of industry.

There are many large factories in North Phyongan Province. We have built many important factories, including machine factories, here. But these factories are not meeting their production quotas. Although the strain on electricity in the country has been eased and steel is being produced in large quantities, the factories in this province are not increasing their output to any noticeable extent. This shows that the provincial, city and county Party committees are not giving effective guidance to these factories and that the factory Party committees are inefficient in directing production.

In North Phyongan Province many new construction projects are now under way, including the construction of the Ponghwa Chemical Works and the extension project at the August 8 Factory. The province must concentrate on these projects and finish them quickly.

In the first place, the first stage of the project at the Ponghwa Chemical Works must be finished by the end of August.

It is only when the Ponghwa Chemical Works has started production that the strain on fuel oil can be eased and other problems resolved. You must finish the construction of this works as soon as possible so that imported crude oil can be processed.

The delay in laying the high-tension transmission lines and the
industrial railway leading to the factory is now holding up this project. These projects should have been started before anything else was done. But the work has been done backwards, so the laying of these lines is now holding things up.

The factory will be useless, even though the construction work has been completed, unless electricity is supplied and the industrial line is connected to it. Without high-tension transmission lines production is impossible; and without building the industrial line the transportation of its products is impossible.

Another defect in building the Ponghwa Chemical Works is that the design has been changed in the course of construction, instead of being adhered to throughout.

According to the contract drawn up with foreigners, double circuit transmission lines were to be laid for the chemical works so as to ensure steady production and the stability of the works. But now I have learned that the matter was discussed again with the foreigners and it was decided to lay only a single circuit for the present because of the shortage of some materials and equipment, such as aluminium wires and a 100,000-kva transformer.

You must not bargain with these people over the laying of high-tension transmission lines, but execute the original design. Our officials should be encouraging the foreigners to work better, but in fact it is they who do not work as hard as the foreigners. If they work in this manner, they will bring disgrace upon Chollima Korea in the eyes of foreigners.

The tardy progress of the construction of the Ponghwa Chemical Works is due to the fact that the officials of the Administration Council and other sectors concerned pay no attention to the project and give no satisfactory guidance to it.

In view of the strain on fuel oil in our country, I have emphasized the need to accelerate the construction of this works on more than one occasion both last year and this year. But the officials have been very irresponsible in their work. The senior officials of the Administration Council and many other officials have visited the construction site, but
none of them has corrected the mistakes made in dealing with the problem of laying the transmission lines, nor has anyone brought the matter to my attention. Officials make a tour of inspection as if they were on a pleasure trip. Such an inspection is pointless, no matter how often it is conducted.

The North Phyongan Provincial Party Committee, too, has not directed the construction of the Ponghwa Chemical Works efficiently, nor has it given us any clear information concerning the problems in laying the transmission lines. It should have brought the situation to my notice immediately, but has raised the matter only now, during the final stage of the project.

You must make every effort to finish the construction of the Ponghwa Chemical Works as soon as possible.

The Ministry of Electric Power Industry must concentrate all its efforts on the transmission line project for the Ponghwa Chemical Works and finish it first, even if it means a slight delay in the laying of other lines.

You must, without fail, lay double circuits from the Suphung Power Station, according to the original design, and without making various other suggestions.

The aluminium wires needed in laying high-tension transmission lines must be obtained quickly. If 270 tons of aluminium wires are needed for the Ponghwa Chemical Works, they must be imported even though it will mean spending some foreign currency. If the 270 tons cost about 250,000 pounds sterling, the price is reasonable. We should import plenty of aluminium wires and use some for the Ponghwa Chemical Works and the remainder for other power line projects. We must give a creditable trading company the assignment of importing them as soon as possible.

It is also necessary to supply the steel and other materials needed for the transmission line project on time.

It has been suggested that each county should offer a few hundred people to move the structures and materials needed for the transmission line project. Helicopters should also be used to transport
pylons and other items. The people who are mobilized from the counties should take these things to the places where the helicopters pick up the loads to carry them up to the mountain ridges. This will make the work easier and quicker.

The transformer needed must be provided as well. You say that another 100,000-kva transformer is now required for high-tension transmission to the Ponghwa Chemical Works. The 100,000-kva transformer which was intended for the Taean Heavy Machine Works must be made available to the Ponghwa Chemical Works. The Taean Heavy Machine Works can wait until another one is produced.

The Ministry of Machine-building Industry must produce the circuit breakers and strings of insulators needed for the transmission line project. The Ministry of Building-materials Industry must supply the 120 tons of cement with a strength of 200 marka which are needed for making the insulators. Cement needed for the production of insulators should be obtained from the Komusan Cement Factory first rather than from the Chonnaeri Cement Factory. The transportation of cement must be managed properly so that it is supplied immediately.

We must finish the high-tension power line project by the end of August without fail by providing the equipment and materials needed; importing whatever should be imported, producing whatever should be produced domestically and moving whatever should be moved.

In addition to laying double-circuit high-tension transmission lines from the Suphung Power Station to guarantee the security of the Ponghwa Chemical Works, steps must be taken to lay more reserve lines.

Unlike other factories, the Ponghwa Chemical Works must be completely secure against a power failure, so it needs several circuit high-tension transmission lines. Even though double-circuit high-tension power lines run from the Suphung Power Station, they are hung on the same pylons, so that the double-circuit lines may all be cut if one of the pylons is struck by lightning. Therefore, even the double-circuit high-tension lines cannot fully guarantee the security of the works. If there was a thermal power station near the Ponghwa
Chemical Works, it would be a good idea to lay another circuit of transmission lines from there to the works. But as there is no thermal power station nearby, you must examine the matter of drawing another circuit from the thermal power station at the Sinuiju Chemical Fibre Mill. It will be no big problem to lay transmission lines from there because it is not very far from the thermal power station to the Ponghwa Chemical Works.

The two 6,000-kW generators at the thermal power station at the Sinuiju Chemical Fibre Mill can produce a total of 12,000 kW. You must, therefore, calculate the exact amount of electricity needed to ensure a regular power supply to the Ponghwa Chemical Works to prevent any possible explosion there in the case of a power failure, and then lay the power transmission lines from the thermal power station at the Sinuiju Chemical Fibre Mill. The Ponghwa Chemical Works will be completely secure if it is provided with another circuit of high-tension power lines.

The Ponghwa Chemical Works must also adopt measures to produce its own electricity. It will be able to generate a reasonable amount of electricity if its three 65-ton boilers are equipped with generators. The works must be provided with generators even if they have to be imported, should they be unavailable at home.

The Ponghwa Chemical Works must be equipped with generators by every means possible, whether they are imported or requisitioned from another factory or enterprise.

Once again I stress that you must consider it important to provide independent transmission lines by laying more separate lines for the sake of the security of the Ponghwa Chemical Works and solve this problem correctly.

The sectors concerned must hold serious discussions on the problem of ensuring the safety of the Ponghwa Chemical Works and take reasonable steps immediately. The Premier must visit the Ponghwa Chemical Works and investigate this matter again.

The project for the railway leading to the works must be completed quickly. The project does not require a great deal of work, and I do not
know why it is being delayed. You must concentrate efforts on the project and finish it quickly.

The Ministry of Posts and Telecommunications must see that communication lines are laid from Sinuiju to the Ponghwa Chemical Works before the end of August.

The labour needed for the construction of the Ponghwa Chemical Works must be provided without fail.

If there is insufficient manpower for the construction of this works, priority must be given to supplying more. The people who will operate the works will also have to be trained.

There is no great problem in recruiting labour for the chemical works. Some technicians will have to be selected from other factories and enterprises, and other workers can be recruited from among the girls who have recently left senior middle schools. Girls can deal with the delicate work at the chemical works.

The soybean oil needed to produce paint for the installations at the chemical works must be supplied by the Ministry of Materials Supply without delay.

The whole country must be mobilized for the construction of the Ponghwa Chemical Works, and the equipment and materials needed must be concentrated on this project. The North Phyongan Provincial Party Committee in particular must give more effective guidance to the project. All this must be done and the first stage of its construction must be completed by the end of August without fail.

To proceed, the project to extend the Tokhyon Mine must be completed quickly.

The magnetite concentrate produced by the Tokhyon Mine is of a very high quality. Feeding this high-grade concentrate to a blast furnace is as good as feeding rice to a man. Therefore, we must increase the production capacity of the Tokhyon Mine as soon as possible so that it produces larger quantities of magnetite concentrate.

A rapid increase in the capacity of this mine is also important from the point of view of a war. But senior economic officials are showing little interest in this mine.
The Tokhyon Mine has worked very hard to produce on a steady basis and increase its capacity. It has accelerated the construction of the vertical pit and has undertaken a project to expand the capacity of the ore-dressing plant. It has also achieved a great success in introducing large mining and underground hauling equipment. This is due to the fact that the Party members and other workers at this mine have worked hard and the provincial Party committee has given them substantial assistance. But it failed to achieve an even greater success, which would otherwise have been possible, because the senior officials of the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council showed little interest in the Tokhyon Mine.

We must help the Tokhyon Mine to find a satisfactory solution to all the problems that arise in putting production onto a regular basis and increasing its capacity.

The Tokhyon Mine can increase its production capacity rapidly if it is provided with some equipment and manpower. The senior officials of the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council must ensure that labour and such equipment as winches, conical crushers and large crushers, which have been planned for this mine, are supplied in a responsible way, and that the compressors and pumps which the mine needs are all provided. The provincial Party committee must also give efficient help to the Tokhyon Mine. In this way the mine will be developed into a reliable iron ore mining centre which produces large quantities of high-grade magnetite concentrate.

Next, the construction of the iron works now under way must be accelerated.

For some time in the past, sensational things were happening in North Phyongan Province, the construction of an iron works being reported and the site being visited by cadres from central authorities, but all has been quiet over recent years. At present no one is in definite charge of the iron works. Therefore, the electric furnace and the reduced-pellet furnace that have been built are not operating properly.

Nowadays the US imperialists are still scheming to ignite another war in our country and are plotting to avoid pulling their army out of
south Korea. In this situation we can never neglect our preparations for a possible war. If war breaks out, bombs, shells and various other weapons will have to be produced. Then, large quantities of pig iron and steel will be required. Pig iron is needed to produce hand-grenades, mortar shells and bombs.

The iron works now under construction should be turned over to the Ministry of Metallurgical Industry so that the ministry itself builds it. As there are many repair and maintenance shops at the factories and other enterprises under this ministry, it can easily build the iron works on its own if it mobilizes its forces. If the Kangson Steel Complex and the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex are mobilized and the machine factories in North Phyongan Province help it a little, the Ministry of Metallurgical Industry will be able to build the iron works quickly. The ministry must plan when it will take over the project and when it will finish it.

Many other construction projects are now being undertaken, so that it would seem a little difficult to complete the construction of the iron works within this year. But this project must not be delayed. It must be completed within the first quarter or by May Day of next year at the latest. This will help the Kangson Steel Complex to operate properly next year and will prevent fluctuations in steel production. If the iron works is completed within the first quarter or by May Day of next year and supplied with plenty of raw materials, this will mean that the Kangson Steel Complex will be able to produce larger quantities of steel in the future. That is why the Ministry of Metallurgical Industry must concentrate on the construction of this iron works.

The workers who are modifying the revolving kilns for the manufacture of granulated iron at the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex and Kangson Steel Complex, must be transferred to the construction of the iron works. Of course, those people now working on the project at the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex may complete it by September 9 this year, and then they can be transferred to the new iron works. But as the Hwanghae Iron and Steel Complex and the
Kangson Steel Complex have only laid the foundations as yet, it would be better to transfer the people immediately so as to finish the construction of the new iron works quickly.

The machine factories in North Phyongan Province must also give a helping hand to the construction of the iron works. Each of them must produce a few types of the equipment needed for the construction of the iron works.

The construction of the iron works should be accelerated so that briquetting and hardening facilities and other processes for the production of unbaked briquettes will be finished by the end of this year and so that new blast furnaces can be built next year. The concentrate produced by the Tokhyon Mine should be fed to these blast furnaces and the remainder made into unbaked briquettes.

The skilled workers who will work at the new iron works must be well trained.

It is very important to train in advance those skilled workers who will be assigned to new factories and enterprises. It is a serious mistake to overlook the training of these skilled workers beforehand and the result is that the workers at newly-built factories are not skilled and are unable to operate their factories properly and even damage valuable machines and equipment. Although many riced corn flour mills and rice-bran oil mills have been built throughout the country, they are not being operated properly. This is due mainly to the low level of the men’s technical skill. If a new factory is to be operated successfully, the men must be trained for at least six months or even a year.

I intend to discuss the matter of training skilled workers with the officials of the Ministry of Labour Administration and of the Education Commission.

The authorities concerned must adopt full measures to begin immediately the training of skilled labour to work at the new iron works. This will make it possible to run the iron works efficiently.

An industrial railway to the iron works must be laid. When the project for the industrial line to the Ponghwa Chemical Works is finished, the men must be transferred to the project for the line to the
iron works. The railway to the iron works can be laid on time even by these men alone.

Furthermore, the August 8 Factory must be converted into one to produce custom-built machinery.

In order to fulfil the Second Seven-Year Plan we need more factories that produce custom-built equipment. The Ryongsong Machine Factory alone cannot meet all our needs for custom-built machinery.

Giving on-the-spot guidance in North and South Hamgyong Provinces and Chongjin in June this year, I inquired into how factory construction was progressing. I discovered that many factories had not been completed because custom-built equipment had not been provided. A factory building without equipment is useless. It is only when custom-built machines are supplied that factories can be completed and operated and that the Second Seven-Year Plan can be carried out with success.

The Ryongsong Machine Factory is the only factory in our country which exclusively produces custom-built machinery. So, many other machine factories have to produce custom-built machinery. The result of this is an interruption to serial production at these factories. Therefore, it is very important to convert the August 8 Factory into a factory to produce custom-built machinery.

The August 8 Factory is now producing nothing very important. It is one of our more unproductive machine factories. It must be improved so that it can produce machines to order.

The work of developing the August 8 Factory must not be left to the care of the province alone. Everyone must be involved.

The capacity of the August 8 Factory to produce custom-built equipment is small. It must be increased by extending the factory stage by stage, starting now.

In order to improve this factory, the existing tall building must be used as a workshop for producing machines to order and new low buildings erected, to which some shops now in the tall building should be moved. Low buildings must be constructed through a public
campaign. They are not difficult to build, because there is no need to install overhead cranes. The low buildings can be constructed by roofing brick walls.

We must supply sufficient of the machinery and other equipment that is needed for the production of custom-built machinery.

There are presently many machines and a lot of equipment lying idle in the machine factories under the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council. The rate of operation of a six-metre hobber at one machine factory, for instance, is very low. Since other machine factories lack hobbing capacity, this six-metre hobber must not be left idle at this machine factory. It would be a good idea to transfer it to the August 8 Factory.

The commissions and ministries of the Administration Council must track down all the equipment which is lying idle and send it to the August 8 Factory. In addition, the machine factories must launch a let-one-machine-tool-make-another campaign and produce machinery for the August 8 Factory, the machinery that it needs to produce custom-built equipment. Some of the large machine tools manufactured by the Ryongsong Machine Factory must also be supplied. In this way the August 8 Factory will be developed quickly into a major custom-built equipment producing factory, like the Ryongsong Machine Factory.

The manpower problem must also be solved.

I am told that there is a great deal of labour fluctuation at the August 8 Factory. This is due to the fact that neither the Ministry of Machine-building Industry nor the provincial Party committee is in control of the work force at the factory. Strict measures are needed to eliminate this labour fluctuation. And as the August 8 Factory expands, its work force should be gradually increased.

The work of developing the August 8 Factory into a custom-built equipment producing factory must be well planned. It must be planned in detail by specifying, for instance, the date for constructing the low buildings, for moving workshops from the tall building, and for installing the machines there. The plan must also include such things as
which factory should produce which machine and by what date, and
who will send which machine from which factory to the August 8
Factory and by what date.

To proceed, we must find the right site for a new synthetic rubber
factory.

We are going to start building this factory next year. It will be a
large factory, and it is very important to site it properly.

At the moment there is a difference of opinion concerning the site
of this factory; some suggest building it in Chongsu, others in Sunchon
or in the Namhung area.

If the synthetic rubber factory is built in Chongsu, limestone,
anthracite and other raw materials will have to be fetched from other
places, and this will entail a tremendous volume of transport. Laying
the foundations will also require a vast amount of labour. If the factory
is built in the Namhung area, there will be a number of problems,
including that of cooling water. The idea of building the synthetic
rubber factory in the Sunchon area, too, needs further discussion. Since
Sunchon is situated in the upper reaches of the Taedong River, it would
seem undesirable to site a chemical industry centre there.

Further discussion is needed before deciding the site of the
synthetic rubber factory.

Research into the prevention of leakages of chlorine gas when
operating the synthetic rubber factory should be conducted beforehand.
Chlorine gas must not leak, no matter where the factory is located.

Next, factories and other enterprises must use their capacity
rationally and put production onto a steady basis.

Equipment and labour cannot be supplied in large quantities to the
existing machine factories at the moment. It must all be reserved for
those we are planning to build or expand. Therefore, the machine
factories must not try to expand themselves either this year or next
year; they must increase production steadily and to the maximum by
making rational use of the equipment they have, improving the
organization of production and manpower and the supply of
materials.
First of all, the October 30 Factory must put production onto a regular basis.

The October 30 Factory is the only factory in our country which is capable of producing millions of bearings every year. There is a bearing factory in Pyongyang, but its production capacity is small.

The October 30 Factory can make all types of bearings. If the work of this factory is efficient, we shall have no need to import bearings.

However, no one, neither the officials of the provincial Party committee nor economic officials, is paying any attention to this factory. I am told that, because a single ton of Freon is unavailable, this factory cannot remove moisture and prevent valuable machinery and equipment from rusting. And because of the manpower shortage, it is not operating all its machines at full capacity. If the provincial Party committee or the county Party committee finds it impossible to solve the problem of manpower on its own responsibility, it must find a solution even if it means bringing the matter to the attention of the Ministry of Labour Administration. But these Party committees have done nothing.

Many people want bearings but few of them are concerned about production at the October 30 Factory being smooth. That is why this factory, with a capacity of millions of bearings, did not produce as much as it should last year. Under these circumstances, it is impossible to satisfy the demand for bearings.

In order to help the factory to put production onto a regular basis, we must supply all the labour it needs. We must make up for the shortage of labour even if it means recruiting a few men from each county in the province. If there is really no source of labour other than the rural communities, it will have to be recruited from farm villages to ensure that this factory works a regular three-shift system.

The reinforcement of labour must be concentrated on factories according to an order of priority. If the limited amount of labour is spread equally over different factories, none of them will be able to work properly. Therefore, we must take drastic measures to
concentrate the supply of labour on the major factories; based on accurate calculations we must obtain labour from every possible source even if it means suspending the operation of some locally-run factories for the time being, those factories which cannot operate properly anyway because of a shortage of raw materials and other necessities. This is the way to operate the major factories properly.

The October 30 Factory must be supplied with sufficient materials, in addition to manpower. The Ministry of Metallurgical Industry must, on a preferential and unconditional basis, supply the steel and other materials that are needed for bearing production.

The October 30 Factory must adopt thorough measures to remove moisture to prevent its machinery from rusting and production from being hampered. In order to keep machines free of rust, not only moisture should be removed, but also the machines should be kept working. When a machine is kept constantly in operation, it does not rust, although it does get a little damp.

The April 3 Factory must also put production onto a regular basis by using the equipment it has.

The factory will receive some labour, but not equipment. It must produce more machine tools by working the existing equipment to the full. In particular, it must work hard to raise the quality of its output.

The provincial Party committee must take steps to improve the April 3 Factory quickly.

If the tasks discussed at this enlarged plenary meeting of the provincial Party committee are to be implemented successfully, an explicit decision must be adopted as to who will take charge of providing which factories with which equipment and materials and by which date. Otherwise, these tasks will not be carried out properly, and this meeting will have been a waste of time.

This enlarged plenary meeting of the North Phyongan Provincial Party Committee is, in fact, virtually a plenary meeting of the Administration Council. The senior officials of the Administration Council, the commissions and ministries have all participated in the discussion of the matters that have been raised at this meeting. So the
work of solving these problems must not be assigned to the province alone.

It is reported that the chairmen of the commissions, and ministers of the Administration Council and the officials of the sectors concerned have resolved to take charge of providing specified items of equipment and materials to certain factories by a certain date. I am delighted with this. They must carry out their resolves without fail.

In order to finish the new projects quickly, the work must be directed efficiently. The projects will not make progress automatically, simply because these chairmen and ministers and the relevant officials have expressed their resolves to ensure the supply of the materials and equipment needed for these projects in a responsible way. Therefore, directors for each project must be appointed so that construction is directed in a responsible manner.

The construction of the Ponghwa Chemical Works must be directed by the Vice-Premier of the Administration Council who is now at the construction site. He should stay there until the construction has been finished and must ensure that the project is completed as soon as possible.

The new iron works now being built needs a directing team. The team should consist of a Vice-Minister of Metallurgical Industry as the man in charge and one official from the Ministry of Machine-building Industry and one from the Ministry of Materials Supply. The official from the Ministry of Machine-building Industry will ensure the supply of machines and equipment and the official from the Ministry of Materials Supply will be responsible for materials. The latter must also ensure the supply of the materials needed by the Tokhyon Mine.

The project to extend the August 8 Factory has not yet been organized. The Secretary in charge of the First Economic Affairs Department of the Party Central Committee, the Vice-Chairman for heavy industry of the Economy Commission of the Central People’s Committee, the chief of the First Secretariat of the Administration Council, the Minister of Machine-building Industry and the Minister of Materials Supply must work out a detailed plan to extend the August 8
Factory once this meeting is over.

We must adopt measures to provide the labour which is required by other factories and enterprises in this province.

You say that the October 30 Factory and various other factories in the province need 1,950 men, and this demand must be met without fail. According to what has been requested, a reinforcement of 800 people should be sent to the October 30 Factory, 200 to the April 3 Factory, 250 to the Tokhyon Mine and 700 to the August 8 Factory. The Minister of Labour Administration must ensure that all this labour is recruited before he returns to Pyongyang.

The tractor assembly plant and the tractor spare parts works in Jongju must be merged into one factory to mass-produce tractor spare parts.

The Jongju Tractor Assembly Plant is assembling *Jonjin* tractors by receiving machine parts from other factories, and this plant is not operating properly at the moment because tractor parts are not being supplied regularly. *Jonjin* tractors can be produced in large numbers if the September 25 Tractor Plant is operated at capacity. Therefore, the Jongju Tractor Assembly Plant does not need to go to the trouble of assembling tractors by receiving machine parts from other factories. Originally, I had the plant separated from the tractor spare parts works with a view to making the province self-reliant. This plant still seems too weak to assemble tractors. In the present situation there is no need for the province to assemble tractors on its own.

The sector concerned must take immediate steps to merge the tractor assembly plant and the tractor spare parts works in Jongju into one factory and run it on a rational basis.

In the future the Jongju Tractor Parts Works must specialize in the manufacture of these spare parts. And, if possible, it must also produce spare parts for motor vehicles.

Casting must be specialized.

This is a matter I raised a long time ago. I emphasized it again last year at the national conference of the activists from the machine industry. But our officials have not yet carried out this task.
Casting must, at all costs, be specialized. If you draw up a good plan for cooperative production and organize supply work satisfactorily, you will be perfectly able to specialize casting.

North Phyongan Province should set up a casting shop at one machine factory, in either the Jongju, Kusong or Tongnim area, and then let it specialize in casting and supply its products to the neighbouring machine factories. There will be no problem in doing this.

Machine factories must adopt the pressing method extensively, along with specialized casting.

The production of mining machinery must be specialized so that the production of efficient mining machinery can be increased.

There are many factories in our country that produce mining machinery and equipment exclusively. However, because there is no definite division of assignments for these factories at the moment, they are not mass-producing efficient mining machinery. If this work is specialized, a large number of efficient mining machines, suited to the conditions in our country, can be produced.

The gaps in the manufacturing process at the May 10 Factory have been filled and the production of coal cutters specialized, with the result that the factory is now producing efficient coal cutters. These machines are being used by the Anju Combined Coal Mine, and they are winning a good reputation. Now that this success has been achieved in the production of highly efficient coal cutters, the large-scale development of the Anju Combined Coal Mine is possible. This mine is endeavouring to increase its daily output of coal to 10,000 tons. With greater efforts, it will be able to reach the level of 30,000 tons in the future. If we can achieve one success after another in this way by specializing the production of mining machinery, it will be marvellous.

The Mining Industry Commission must give detailed assignments to each of the mining machinery factories by specifying what, for instance, the August 28 Factory, the May 10 Factory or the Tanchon Mining Machinery Factory should produce so that the production of
mining machinery is further specialized. In addition, the gaps in the production processes at these factories must all be filled. Party organizations must pay attention to the production of mining machinery.

North Phyongan Province must show interest in the August 28 Factory and ensure that it mass-produces a variety of mining machinery. The production of mining machinery was quite smooth in the past when it was manufactured by a different machine factory. But ever since this factory was turned over to another commission, the production of mining machinery has not been as efficient as it was before. North Phyongan Province must develop the August 28 Factory and make rapid improvements to the production of mining machinery.

Next, many small factories should be constructed in the counties, and the management at locally-run factories improved.

North Phyongan Province must construct not only many large factories but also many small factories in the counties. If many small factories are built inland in North Phyongan Province, they will be able to continue production even should war break out and the large factories in Pyongyang or on the coast be destroyed. If many small factories producing pencils, toothbrushes, toothpaste and the like are built throughout North Phyongan Province, they will play a significant role in any possible war.

True, the quality of the goods produced by small, local factories may be low at the beginning, but it will improve gradually the longer they are operated.

A long time ago I raised the matter of duplicating the construction of factories by building many small factories in the northern inland area, so that they could continue operating should the large factories in urban and coastal areas be destroyed during a war. I emphasized that North Phyongan Province should do this well.

In this province there was a great fuss about building factories to produce pencils, toothbrushes and toothpaste for some time, but now these projects have been abandoned and things are quiet. When they are given an assignment our officials are stirred up a little at the
beginning, but they soon calm down. This is their failing. If they work
in this manner, they will never achieve anything.

North Phyongan Province must have a correct understanding of the
Party’s intention to build many local factories inland, and must
develop small factories on a large scale in the counties.

In addition to building many new, small factories, the province
must pay attention to the existing local factories and improve the way
they are managed.

Next, the problem of the Changsong Mine must be dealt with.

The Changsong Mine did not even cover its production costs last
year. Needless to say, tin, tungsten and the like are valuable metals, so
we must encourage the development of the mines that produce such
minerals. But there is no need to maintain a mine which does not even
cover its production costs.

It will be best to close down the Changsong Mine and transfer its
work force elsewhere.

There are many factories which, because of a shortage of
manpower, are unable to increase production, which otherwise they
could do. Many things are being imported at the cost of foreign
currency, although they could be produced domestically if only labour
was available. New mines, for instance, are not being developed
extensively because of a shortage of manpower.

According to information, a reinforcement of approximately 3,000
will enable the July 26 Mine to increase ore production considerably.
Suppose that the Changsong miners are transferred to this mine and
produce only one third of the amount the 3,000 men could mine; this
will still be much more profitable.

Our officials must calculate economic factors accurately. But their
management of the mines is careless.

Unlike in the past, when embargoes were placed on our country by
the imperialists, we can now, if we have foreign currency, import all
the goods we need from Southeast Asia and any other part of the world.
Why, then, should we continue to incur business losses? So, I am of the
opinion that the Changsong Mine should be closed down and that the
men should be sent to the July 26 Mine so that it can be developed on a large scale. It would be best for the officials concerned to discuss the matter further. The Changsong Mine should suspend production, but it may resume production in the future should an effective survey of its depth and the surrounding area be promising. The Mining Industry Commission should move the equipment of the Changsong Mine to where it is needed and the Changsong County People’s Committee should take charge of maintaining the buildings at the mine.

Furthermore, local building-materials bases should be developed.

At present North Phyongan Province has no building materials base of its own. That is why not one of its county towns has been built properly. None of the towns in Pakchon County, Unjon County, Jongju County, Ryongchon or any other county is worth seeing. In this province the Sakju County town has been improved a little, but this is not the case with virtually all the other county towns. There was once a sensational report about Kusong being improved, but now everything has gone quiet.

The matter of developing fine county towns and improving their role so that they become bases for introducing advanced culture to the rural communities was decided at the Changsong joint conference in 1962. Fifteen years have passed since then, but there has been no great change in the counties of North Phyongan Province.

Recently I criticized North Hamgyong Province for its inefficiency in construction; there is no difference in this respect between North Hamgyong Province and North Phyongan Province.

It is years since I assigned North Phyongan Province the task of developing its own building-materials bases. But this province has not carried out this task creditably. Of course, over recent years it has made some effort to develop them, but it has not completed anything. Though it has built a cement factory with a capacity of 200,000 tons, even this factory is not operating smoothly. The provincial and county Party committees should have paid attention to this work and should have finished it project by project, with a little assistance from the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council. But too
many projects have been undertaken all at once and none of them has been a success.

At the moment the Ministry of Construction is putting efforts only into the large projects for which it is directly responsible, and showing no concern for local construction. This being the situation, each province must have its own building-materials base, otherwise it will be impossible to build its own economic life. Unless they have their own building-materials bases, the provinces will be unable to solve the problem of housing for the working people. Provinces have to build not only houses, but also a variety of other structures. This is why every province must, on all accounts, develop its own building-materials base.

For the present North Phyongan Province must finish the projects that are now under way and bridge the gaps in the production processes at the building-materials works.

The construction of local building-materials bases cannot be carried out all at one time. The simple projects should be finished this year, and the long-term ones will have to be undertaken in stages in the future, some of them under the state plan.

The matter of developing building-materials bases is being raised not only in North Phyongan Province but also in all the other provinces.

South Phyongan Province has, up until now, taken large amounts of building materials from Pyongyang because it has not built its own reliable bases. This province has built some cities and counties including Nampho, Phyongsong, Taean, Anju County, Sunchon County and Tokchon County, by using, in the main, building materials from Pyongyang. Since the province does not have its own building-materials bases, construction work there is making no progress. And nor do North Hamgyong and Jagang Provinces have building-materials bases.

Pyongyang and South Hamgyong Province are now a little better in this respect. There are building-materials bases in Pyongyang which were built under my direct control during the years of postwar
reconstruction, and construction there is ensured by relying on these bases. Pyongyang must further develop its building-materials bases. Although there are some building-materials factories such as brickyards and tile works in South Hamgyong Province, there are not enough of them.

The matter of developing local building-materials bases is going to be discussed by the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee at some time in the future and the necessary measures taken in full. The problem of building these bases in North Phyongan Province, too, will be discussed at that time and measures adopted.

Since the provinces have started this undertaking, reliable building-materials bases can be developed in every province if the matter is discussed by the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee and if a little assistance is given by the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council.

In future there should be no instance of the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council taking possession of building-materials works that belong to the provinces.

The Administration Council is in the habit of turning over local building-materials works to other sectors or merging them with other factories. This is not a practice that will encourage the provinces to develop their own building-materials bases properly. The commissions and ministries of the Administration Council must help the provinces in every way to develop reliable building-materials bases, instead of taking possession of the provincial building-materials works.

Those building-materials works under the Ministry of Building-materials Industry must not be turned over to other commissions and ministries without due consideration. When setting up the new Ministry of Shipbuilding Industry a short time ago, the Administration Council took the metal building-materials works in Hamhung from the Ministry of Building-materials Industry and turned it over to the Ministry of Shipbuilding Industry, so I have been told. I gave instructions that it should be handed back. This works is one of the largest of all the metal building-materials works under the Ministry
of Building-materials Industry, so it must not be transferred casually to another sector.

In order to solve the problem of building materials for the provinces, we shall have to set up a department at the Ministry of Building-materials Industry to deal with this matter.

There is no central authority giving coordinated direction to the local production of building materials. Such being the case, the production of these building materials is receiving no effective guidance at all. If a bureau directing the production of building materials for the provinces is set up at the Ministry of Building-materials Industry and made to direct production in a coordinated manner, the problem of developing the local building-materials bases will be readily solved.

Next, we must find a full solution to the problem of transport for the people to and from work by increasing the production of bicycles.

Recently, with the increase in the number of factories in the provinces, the problem of transport for the workers to and from work has become very important. At the moment commuters’ trains and buses are their major means of transport. It will be impossible to solve the problem of transport satisfactorily by relying on these services alone. It is impossible to continue to increase the number of commuters’ trains and buses in our country because of the strain on rail transport and on fuel.

In order to solve the problem of transport to and from work, it is imperative to boost the production of bicycles as quickly as possible so that the workers can ride bicycles to and from work. Riding a bicycle promotes a man’s health and also improves the looks of the streets.

Recently about 8,000 bicycles have been sent to Anju County, South Phyongan Province. The workers in this county travel to and from their factories by bicycle. I am told that if a new bridge is completed across the Chongchon River, it will take them only 15 minutes to ride to the Youth Chemical Complex from Anju. Then, the problem of travelling to and from work will have been completely solved without any need to increase the number of commuters’ trains.
Needless to say, commuting will not be a problem if a lot of houses are built near factories. But this is no simple matter. If we are to establish a new residential quarter, we have to construct houses and waterworks, lay power lines and construct a sewerage system. To do this, the provinces need reliable building-materials bases of their own, and it will also take quite a long time.

If a residential quarter is not furnished with all the necessary amenities, the inhabitants will suffer a great deal of discomfort. A few years ago several blocks of flats for workers were built near a factory in Taegwan County. These flats were not provided with enough running water and sewers so the inhabitants have been experiencing a great deal of discomfort, although the houses look fine from the outside, I am told. The workers’ residential quarter in Taean, South Phyongan Province, was built more than ten years ago, but it has not yet been provided with sufficient running water and sewers.

It would be better to get the workers to ride bicycles to and from work, even though they have to travel a fairly long way, by increasing the production of bicycles rather than building new residential quarters in the provinces. If bicycles are available, the workers can go to work at factories, even though they live in rural villages.

In the future, bus services in the provinces should be available for women with babies, and the other people should be encouraged to ride bicycles.

For a long time I have been emphasizing the need to mass-produce bicycles so that the workers can use them, but as yet no one has carried out the task. This task must be implemented thoroughly even now.

At the last consultative meeting of the chief secretaries of the provincial Party committees we decided that this year bases for the production of bicycles should be developed first in North and South Phyongan Provinces and North and South Hamgyong Provinces, which are industrial regions. This task must be carried out to the letter.

North Phyongan Province must improve the Kusong Bicycle Factory.

Apparently there are buildings at this factory that are equipped with
some machines and equipment. So, with a little help, the factory will be able to develop itself into a good one.

A few days ago I saw a prototype bicycle manufactured by the Kusong Bicycle Factory. It seemed a little too heavy and tough, but it is quite serviceable. North Phyongan Province must improve the bicycle factory and then mass-produce these bicycles.

There are many machine factories, such as the April 3 Factory, in North Phyongan Province. So, if the officials are resolved and tackle the task, they can easily re-equip the Kusong Bicycle Factory well. If each machine factory in the province launches a let-one-machine-make-another campaign and provides just a few of the machines needed, such as single-purpose equipment and presses, this factory will be radically improved.

North Phyongan Province must work hard on improving this factory, putting production there onto a regular basis and manufacturing good-quality bicycles in larger numbers.

Next, the economic departments of the provincial Party committee must be well staffed and their role enhanced.

The work of these departments is poor at present. We abolished these economic departments for a year and a half and then re-established them, but they are a lame duck. The First Economic Affairs Department of the North Phyongan Provincial Party Committee is inferior to the former heavy industry department. Although the latter was criticized a little previously because it wielded Party authority and was bureaucratic, it was always aware of the situation at the factories and enterprises and grasped how the Party’s economic policy was being implemented. But the first economic affairs department of the provincial Party committee does not do this nowadays. The provincial Party chief secretary did not know that the October 30 Factory, the only large bearing factory in our country, could not work properly because of a shortage of manpower. This was because the first economic affairs department of the provincial Party committee had not done its work well. If it had worked well, he would have been made aware immediately of the state of affairs at the
October 30 Factory, as would the Party Central Committee. Then, measures could have been taken.

There are many factories in North Phyongan Province. The commissions and ministries of the Administration Council, however efficient they may be, will find it difficult to supervise closely all the factories, even the small ones, in the provinces. The provincial Party economic affairs department must, in all respects, be responsible for the factories in the province and supervise, direct and control them closely. But nowadays the department offers no substantial supervision and direction to the factories in North Phyongan Province. In particular, the small factories of the third grade and lower are up in the air because neither were the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council concerned about them, nor did the provincial Party committee control and guide them properly.

When I visited one province on a previous occasion, a factory manager told me that, because the meetings held in the province or in the county would only discuss the matters raised by large factories and make no inquiries at all about small factories, the small factory managers would take their seats in the corner of the conference room, with no voice in the matter, and then leave. There is a considerable number of such small factories in North Phyongan Province. Should some problem be raised at these factories, there is no one to solve it, so the officials travel here and there and finally give up with an I-do-not-know attitude when they find a solution difficult. So it is impossible for things to go well.

As the provincial Party economic affairs department officials conduct no satisfactory political work at the factories, the factory officials’ initiative also disappears gradually as the days go by.

In short, the provincial Party economic departments are not performing their function as they should.

The provincial Party secretary in charge of economic affairs is not good at his work, either. The secretary in charge of economic affairs of the North Phyongan Provincial Party Committee worked skilfully when he was a factory manager, but is inefficient in dealing with
provincial Party economic affairs.

In order to strengthen Party guidance of economic affairs in the province, the economic affairs departments of the provincial Party committee must be well staffed and their role enhanced.

This meeting is being attended by many cadres from the Party Central Committee. The Deputy Head of the Organizational Leadership Department must take charge of staffing the provincial Party economic affairs departments, remaining for some days in the province.

I am told that in the past the Party Central Committee has taken many cadres away from the province. Even if it means sending these people back from the Party Central Committee, should this be necessary, the provincial Party economic affairs departments must be well staffed. It is only when these departments have good staffs that they can be competent and fully control and direct the economic affairs of the province.

It would be a good idea for the provincial Party committee to conduct an ideological campaign against the inefficient guidance of factories that has been evident in the past.

The factory Party committees must also criticize their own faults.

County Party chief secretaries must pay heed to the factories in their counties and guide them in a responsible manner.

At present they visit the rural communities frequently, but not the factories. This is why they know how many maize plants have been planted in every phyong, but they are ignorant of how many bearings have been produced by the factories, and give no effective guidance to them. It goes without saying that they must visit the countryside and give good direction there, but there is more for them to do than just that.

As I often say, ours is the Party of the working class. The county Party chief secretaries must mix both with the farmers and with the workers and direct both agriculture and industry. There is no great mystery about a factory. They will naturally learn about industry and the situation at factories if they visit the factories frequently and talk to the workers and attend their Party cell meetings.

Many years ago I said that it was a great shortcoming for the
provincial Party chief secretaries to be reluctant to visit universities, and for the county Party chief secretaries to visit factories so seldom. The county Party chief secretaries are not as yet rectifying this fault.

The county Party chief secretaries must pay frequent visits to the factories in their counties and give them responsible leadership. Needless to say, the provincial Party economic affairs department and the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council concerned should direct factory work. But county Party chief secretaries must, as masters of their counties, guide their factories in a responsible manner. They have the duty and authority to guide and control all the factories, big or small, in their counties.

County Party chief secretaries must have a good understanding of the situation at the factories and inform their superiors immediately of any difficulties in the work of the factories.

At present some county Party chief secretaries in North Phyongan Province are not concerned about the improper work done by their factories, nor do they inform their superiors promptly of the situation.

The chief secretary of the Phyon County Party Committee knew that many of the machines at the October 30 Factory had stopped working because of a lack of workers, but he neither took any steps nor did he report the fact. This is an example of an irresponsible work attitude of chief secretaries of county Party committees. If he had been concerned about the machines coming to a standstill and the abnormal production situation caused by the lack of manpower, he would have informed the provincial Party committee immediately; and, if the problem still remained unsolved, he would have brought it to the attention of the Party Central Committee and finally found a solution. But he took no such measures, sitting with his arms folded. The county Party chief secretaries are the representatives of our Party who are entrusted by it to work in the county itself. Therefore, they must on no account work in an irresponsible manner.

At this enlarged plenary meeting of the North Phyongan Provincial Party Committee, I once again call upon the county Party chief secretaries to give responsible guidance to factories.
Today I would like to speak to you about some of the experience gained by our Party in the struggle to find a solution to the rural question.

The rural question means, in short, the peasant and the agricultural questions. The peasant question is the question of freeing the peasants, once and for all, from every manner of exploitation and subordination and then making them working-class; the agricultural question is the question of completely freeing the productive forces of agriculture from the fetters of the old production relations and making agriculture industrialized.

Finding the correct solution to the rural question is one of the most important tasks in the revolution and construction. The rural question assumes even greater importance particularly in those countries where the peasants make up the overwhelming majority of the population and farming is fundamental to the national economy.

In the whole course of guiding the revolution and construction, our Party has directed close attention to the rural question. We have advanced a correct line and policy for settling the rural question in each phase of the development of the revolution and carried them out to the letter, thus providing excellent solutions to the peasant and agricultural
questions, and, in the course of this, gained a lot of valuable experience.

To make a profound study of the experience gained by our Party in the revolution and construction is important in improving the political and practical qualifications of our officials. They should make a profound study of the valuable experience gained by our Party in the struggle to settle the rural question, and thus arm themselves closely with the revolutionary theory of Juche and raise their political and practical levels further.

1. ON THE AGRARIAN REFORM

To solve the land problem is the basic task in solving the rural question at the stage of the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution.

It is only when the land problem is solved that the rural areas can be cleared of the feudalistic relations of landownership, the peasants freed from the landlords’ exploitation and oppression and the agricultural forces of production developed rapidly. Without finding a solution to the land problem, neither can the economic foothold of the reactionary forces be removed in the rural areas, nor can the democratic development of society be ensured.

After liberation, the most urgent revolutionary task confronting our Party and people’s government was to find a solution to the land problem.

Our country had been a backward, colonial, semi-feudal society in the past, in which the peasants accounted for nearly 80 per cent of the population. After liberation, too, the feudalistic relations of landownership and tenancy still remained in the rural areas, and the landlords who had harshly plundered the peasants in collusion with the Japanese imperialists still possessed vast areas of land and exploited
the peasants. Immediately after liberation the landlords, who accounted for only four per cent of all the farm households in the northern half of Korea, owned 58.2 per cent of the total area under plough, whereas the poor peasants, who accounted for 56.7 per cent of the total farm households, held only 5.4 per cent of the total cultivated area. In such circumstances, without providing a solution to the land problem through the agrarian reform, the peasants could not be freed from the landlords’ exploitation and subordination, nor could they be roused actively to the work of building a new country.

The agrarian reform was also essential to develop our lagging agriculture rapidly and accelerate the advance of the national economy as a whole. Furthermore, now that the country was divided and the American imperialists occupied the southern half, if the landlord class was not eliminated but left alone, the reactionary elements might use this as their footing and impede the building of a democratic, independent and sovereign state.

For this reason our Party set the agrarian reform as the primary task in the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution after liberation, and strove to carry it out.

For the successful enforcement of the agrarian reform, it was important, before anything else, to make good preparations and ensure that all the conditions were right for it.

Since the agrarian reform is a deep-rooted social and economic reform to abolish the feudal relations of exploitation and the landlord class that have prevailed in the rural areas for centuries, it is attended by a bitter class struggle. Therefore, without sufficient preparations and with only a subjective desire, one cannot enforce this reform.

Our Party directed great efforts first towards building a solid people’s government and enhancing its functions of dictatorship to suppress the resistance of the class enemies and defend the gains of the revolution. Because the landlords and reactionaries had some influence, it was impossible to deprive the landlords of their land or suppress those who resisted merely by promulgating the Agrarian Reform Law. So, we bent our efforts first towards building up such
organs of dictatorship as the revolutionary armed forces, public security agencies and judicial and public prosecutors offices, capable of suppressing the resistance of the reactionary forces, notably the landlords.

For the successful enforcement of the agrarian reform it was important to awaken politically and unite organizationally the broad sections of the peasants, particularly the hired hands and poor peasants, and enlist them in an energetic struggle against the landlords.

The masses of the peasants, including the hired hands and poor peasants, had a vital interest in the agrarian reform. The agrarian reform is a revolution designed to free the peasants from feudalistic exploitation and subordination; it is an undertaking they themselves are responsible for carrying out. Therefore, without mobilizing the peasant masses, victory could not be expected in the struggle against the landlord class, nor could the feudalistic system of landownership be abolished.

Immediately after liberation, however, the political preparedness of our peasants was not very high. Owing to the wicked colonial rule of the Japanese imperialists and their policy to keep the Korean nation in ignorance, large numbers of peasants had long been unaware of their class position and lacked the revolutionary readiness to crush the landlords and deprive them of their land. Many peasants regarded it as their fate to have lived in penury and hunger, harshly exploited by the landlords. And the peasants had not had the opportunity to receive organizational education and training.

After liberation our Party formed a peasants’ association in every farm village and united the peasants under it, so that they could be educated and trained in a revolutionary way.

While intensifying the ideological education of the peasants to raise their class consciousness, we made them aware of their class position and trained them through the practical struggle against the landlords.

The struggle for the three-to-seven system of tenancy played an important role in awakening and tempering the peasants. In October 1945, our Party, reflecting the peasants’ demand for a reduction in
farm rents, adopted a resolution which stipulated that only 30 per cent of the crop yield would be given to the landlords as rent, while the remaining 70 per cent would be taken by the tenants; it also stipulated that the taxes on land imposed up until then on the tenants would be paid by the landlords.

No sooner had our Party adopted the resolution on the introduction of the three-to-seven system of tenancy than the peasants supported and welcomed it enthusiastically and joined a mass campaign for putting this system into effect. When the peasants demanded the three-to-seven system, at first the landlords did not accept it meekly. In some areas the landlords tried to collect farm rents as in the past by subtly deceiving or threatening the politically unaware peasants. Our Party roused the peasants to action and they held mass rallies in all parts of the country, at which they exposed and denounced the landlords’ acts of exploitation and passed resolutions on enforcing the three-to-seven system. At that time the peasants of some counties in South Phyongan Province met to expose and condemn the landlords’ wicked deeds and even waged a mass struggle to take back the farm rents which some landlords had collected by reverting to the previous system. Intimidated by the mass struggle and mounting spirit of the peasants, the landlords had no option but to accept the three-to-seven system.

The struggle for the three-to-seven system was the first battle fought by the peasants against the landlord class after liberation; in the course of this, many peasants began to become more aware from the class viewpoint. The peasants came to see clearly that the landlords were wicked and crafty and they became convinced that they had to make a concerted effort to fight the landlords if they were to rid themselves of exploitation and subordination, and that they could win this fight.

We saw to it that the revolutionary spirit of the peasants which had been mounting in the campaign for the three-to-seven system continued to rise so that a fight could be waged to deprive the landlords of their land.
The peasants, whose spirit had been rising in the victorious struggle for the three-to-seven system, held mass meetings in all the provincial areas of the country and demanded agrarian reform. These meetings approved letters, resolutions and petitions asking for the confiscation of the landlords’ land and its distribution among the tillers before spring ploughing, and sent them to the Party Central Organizing Committee and the Provisional People’s Committee of North Korea. The peasants’ petitioning for agrarian reform did not end there. Towards the end of February 1946 over 300 representatives of the peasants from all parts of north Korea called at the PPCNK to inform it of the peasants’ wish to own the land; on the anniversary of the March 1 Movement over two million peasants held massive demonstrations throughout the northern half of Korea under the slogan, “Land to the tillers!” Now agrarian reform had come to the fore as a fully matured task.

Now that suitable conditions had been created and agrarian reform presented itself as a matured requirement, we promulgated the Agrarian Reform Law.

In carrying out the agrarian reform our Party set the basic principle to be that the peasants should be the owners of the land, under the slogan, “Land to the tillers!”

The land and all the other means of agricultural production are essentially the fruits of the peasants’ sweat and blood. Therefore, it is natural that the tillers should own the land. Only when the agrarian reform is enforced on the principle of the tillers owning the land is it possible to find a correct solution to the land problem and free the working peasants from feudalistic exploitation and oppression.

In order to make the tillers true masters of the land, our Party put forward the policy of enforcing the agrarian reform on the principle of confiscating land and distributing it free of charge, and of making the confiscated land the private property of the peasants instead of transferring it to state ownership.

When we were making preparations for the agrarian reform, some people suggested that the land be expropriated and distributed after
compensation had been paid and others maintained that all the confiscated land should be transferred to state ownership. But these were the subjective views of people who were poorly acquainted with the true situation in our country.

If the land had been taken away and distributed with compensation being paid, the landlords would have received money for the land and become rich farmers or capitalists and would have continued to exploit the peasants and workers, and the peasants would have been fettered by the debts they owed for the land and reduced again to objects of exploitation by the rich farmers and usurers. Then, the agrarian reform would have come to nothing and the result would have been that the feudalistic relations of exploitation were replaced with capitalist ones. That was why we ensured that the agrarian reform was carried out fully on the principle of confiscation and distribution without compensation.

It was a particularly important question in the agrarian reform whether the landlords’ confiscated land should be nationalized or made the private property of the peasants. At that time, the example of one country that preceded us in the revolution was that the landlords’ land had been taken away and transferred to state ownership.

However, we could not do this. In our country, where feudalistic landownership had been in existence for a long time, the desire to own land was very strong, and the peasants had lived a miserable life under the landlords’ cruel exploitation because they had had no land. Therefore, it was our peasants’ lifelong desire to own land and cultivate it as they wished.

If the confiscated land was nationalized, disregarding this ardent desire of the peasants, their revolutionary enthusiasm could not be increased and the success of the agrarian reform could not be ensured. So, our Party confiscated the landlords’ land and placed it under the private ownership of the peasants, instead of nationalizing it. This was a great joy to the peasants and did much to arouse their revolutionary enthusiasm and activity.

The most important aspect of carrying out the agrarian reform was to define correctly the land to be confiscated and the main targets of the
struggle. If these were not defined correctly, it might have meant that the feudalistic relations of exploitation could not be abolished completely and that the hostile forces to throw obstacles in the way of the agrarian reform were increased.

Our Party’s yardstick for defining which land was to be confiscated was whether the area concerned had been cultivated by its owner or leased out to another person for sharecropping. All the leased areas not cultivated by their owners were marked out for confiscation, irrespective of their size. Thus, it was possible to abolish the feudalistic relations of exploitation and tenancy for good in the rural areas and carry out the agrarian reform very thoroughly.

It was the Japanese imperialists, pro-Japanese elements, traitors to the nation and landlords who had owned wide tracts of land and exploited the peasants cruelly in our country. After liberation the Japanese imperialists were driven out, and their lackeys—pro-Japanese elements and traitors to the nation—fled to south Korea or were liquidated by the people. As a result, none of those who had owned vast areas of land and bled the peasants white remained, except the landlords. Hence, they were the main target to be eliminated in the agrarian reform.

Now, determining which landlords should be eliminated became a highly important strategic and tactical question.

At that time the relations of landownership in the rural areas were extremely complex. Some people leased out their own small plots while tenanting others’ farms. Some others tilled their own land while letting out a part of it. Among those who had a relatively wide area of land, exceeding five hectares, there were landlords who lived in idleness while letting out all their land and also rich farmers who leased out a part of their land but cultivated most of it themselves using hired hands. On the other hand, there were rich middle farmers who had over five hectares of land but worked all of it for themselves. Such circumstances prohibited us from identifying everyone as a landlord merely because he leased out his land or owned a wide area of land. If we had defined indiscriminately as landlords all of those who leased
out even a small plot and those who owned a wide tract of land, and made them targets of our struggle without taking into consideration the specific circumstances of the relations of landownership, we might have rendered the class struggle difficult and complicated by turning those who had to be won over or isolated in the agrarian reform into the main targets of the struggle.

In order to find the correct solution to such problems, we personally visited the rural areas prior to the agrarian reform and lived among the peasants for more than a month to make a detailed study of the true state of affairs there. The peasants themselves, who had been exploited and oppressed, were the best judges as to who should be eliminated, who isolated and who should be allies in the agrarian reform.

We studied and analysed from various angles the relations of landownership and exploitation in the rural areas and, on the basis of this, defined as landlords those who, with more than five hectares of land, leased it out and lived in idleness. As for the landlords, we confiscated all their property—land, draught cattle, farm implements, houses, irrigation installations and everything else.

In the case of those who, even though in possession of more than five hectares of land, had worked part of it themselves and leased out the remainder, only the land let out for sharecropping was confiscated; and those who owned more than five hectares but had cultivated it all by themselves were not dispossessed at all.

To take an example. If a man possessing eight hectares of land had worked four hectares by himself and let out four hectares to others, only the four hectares of land leased out were confiscated and the other four hectares were left alone for the man to continue cultivating. But if a man possessing seven hectares of land had leased out four hectares and kept three hectares for hired hands to cultivate for him while he himself had not worked at all, the whole seven hectares of his land was confiscated.

At the time of the agrarian reform there were 44,000 idle landlords in our country who owned over five hectares of land each which they leased out, whereas the number of landless and land-short peasant
families exceeded 720,000. Therefore, our Party’s policy of labelling as landlords those leasing out more than five hectares of land and of eliminating them, was a most popular policy designed to wipe out 44,000 landlords and deliver more than 720,000 peasant families from feudalistic exploitation and subordination, and it was a most revolutionary policy that made it possible to assure the unchallenged superiority of the revolutionary forces over the counter-revolutionary forces and to concentrate on the struggle against the handful of landlords.

Our Party took a series of tactical steps and followed a correct class policy to disperse and weaken the hostile forces and ensure the smooth progress of the agrarian reform.

In the struggle to eliminate the landlords, we confiscated only land and left other property untouched so far as the absentee landlords who lived in towns were concerned. At the time of the agrarian reform nearly 20 per cent of the 44,000 landlords were absentee landlords who resided in towns while possessing estates in the countryside. They were mainly engaged in commerce or industry in towns while collecting rent from their farmland. Therefore, they had no foothold and little influence in the countryside. Taking this situation into consideration, we adopted measures to confiscate only land as far as those landlords living in towns were concerned. Thanks to this policy of our Party, the absentee landlords were not deprived of their shops, factories and other possessions in the towns although they lost several hectares of land in the countryside. They considered themselves fortunate and did not try to resist as vigorously as the landlords in the countryside.

Our Party provided a means of living even to the rural landlords who were being liquidated as a class. As for those landlords who meekly gave up their land without offering resistance, we transferred them to other areas and allowed them to farm for their own living. The transfer of landlords to other localities proved helpful in dispersing and weakening their strength. Not only that, it was also conducive to preventing some ignorant peasants from sympathizing with the landlords or falling under their evil influence. Of course, strict control
was exercised to prevent the landlords committing misdemeanours after being moved to other localities.

We enacted and promulgated the “Extraordinary Law on Measures for Enforcing the Agrarian Reform”, as well as the Agrarian Reform Law, to bar the landlords and reactionaries from perpetrating subversive acts while the agrarian reform was being carried out.

With the publication of the Agrarian Reform Law, the landlords who were to be eliminated and their accomplices—reactionary elements and wicked profiteers—might have used a variety of ruses to frustrate the reform. In order to check this in advance, it was stipulated that upon the publication of the Agrarian Reform Law any landlords who should sell or damage draught cattle, horses, farm implements, houses, storehouses and so on would be severely punished as enemies of the people and that any profiteers who purchased them from the landlords would also be punishable by law. It was also laid down that the local government bodies and rural committees should register the draught cattle, horses, farm implements, houses, seed grain, irrigation installations and any other property of the landlords and then make the landlords write out certificates of custody, holding themselves responsible for the temporary safeguarding of this property. These rigid measures made it possible to protect the enormous wealth created by the peasants with their sweat and blood from the subversive acts of the landlords and reactionary elements and to assure the success of the agrarian reform.

At the time of the agrarian reform we did not define the rich farmers as targets of the struggle. Although they were an exploiting class like the landlord class in that they exploited farm hands and poor peasants, they were not the targets of the struggle in the stage of the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution. Many of our country’s rich farmers, however, rented part of their land while farming themselves using hired hands. Since the plots of land they rented out were all subject to confiscation under the agrarian reform, the rich farmers, too, were to receive a blow through this reform and, accordingly, they might also have come out against it. But our Party
prevented the rich farmers from resisting the agrarian reform directly by allowing them to keep hold of the plots which had not been leased out but cultivated by themselves, and pursued the policy of isolating them to keep them from siding with the landlords.

The middle peasants had no grounds for thinking ill of the agrarian reform, because their interests would not suffer in the least through the reform. As they had been oppressed by the landlords and lived under the threat of bankruptcy, they rather supported the confiscation of the landlords’ land and its distribution among the farm hands and poor peasants and the abolition of the feudalistic system of exploitation. Therefore, the middle peasantry was to be our ally in the agrarian reform.

Our Party pursued the class policy of relying firmly on the hired hands and poor peasants who had the most vital interest in the agrarian reform, allying with the middle peasants and isolating the rich farmers, which made a successful struggle to eliminate the landlords quite possible.

Another important aspect of the agrarian reform was to distribute the confiscated land properly.

We stipulated that the land confiscated from the landlords should be given to the hired farm hands, landless and land-short peasants, and saw to it that the hired hands and tenant farmers who had lived in penury, subjected to all manner of maltreatment and humiliation because they had had no land in the past, were given the best plots of the land they had been tilling.

We ensured that land was distributed evenly according to the size of family and the number of able-bodied people. In order to distribute the land evenly, points were awarded according to the number of people and able-bodied persons in the peasant family qualified to receive land and then the size of land to be allotted was determined by these points. In awarding the points for land distribution, the rule was: 1 point for a man of 18 to 60 and a woman of 18 to 50, 0.7 of a point for a youth of 15 to 17, 0.4 of a point for a child of 10 to 14, 0.1 of a point for a child under 9, and 0.3 of a point for a man of 61 and over and a woman of 51
and over. On the basis of this, the points were assessed for each peasant household according to the number of members and able-bodied persons, and then the land was distributed.

We also saw to it that in distributing the land, the fertility of the plots concerned was taken into account. This prevented the distribution of land being unfair. The proportionate allotment of land according to the number of family members and able-bodied people was of great significance in improving the lives of the peasants evenly.

Our Party granted the ownership of the distributed land to the peasants, but prohibited them from selling, mortgaging or renting their land, and stipulated that the peasants must return the land to the state should they ever stop cultivating it themselves. This prevented the land from being monopolized by individuals again or employed as a means of exploitation.

Our Party saw to it that the peasants took the initiative in the struggle to implement the agrarian reform.

The hired hands and poor peasants were most keenly interested in the solution of the land problem in the rural areas; they were better informed than anybody else of the actual state of affairs there, such as the relations of landownership. Therefore, only when the farm hands and poor peasants played the leading role would it be possible to achieve success in the fight against the landlords and deal properly with all the problems relating to the agrarian reform.

In order to encourage the peasants to play the leading role in the agrarian reform, we ensured that the rural committees were formed of farm hands and poor peasants and that these committees became the direct executors of the agrarian reform.

Upon the promulgation of the Agrarian Reform Law, the peasants held rallies in the rural areas and rural committees were formed, and these committees numbered more than 11,500. The rural committees, as executive organs directly in charge of the agrarian reform, took charge of the work of determining which land should be confiscated and which categories of people eliminated and dividing the confiscated land among the peasants, as well as of all the other tasks arising in the
implementation of the Agrarian Reform Law. The agrarian reform was thus carried out in full accord with the interests of the peasant masses and, in the course of this, a large number of rural hard cores were created.

For the successful enforcement of the agrarian reform, our Party mobilized the working class and the rest of the population to give active support to the struggle of the peasants. In particular, the workers were organized into support-agrarian-reform squads, which were sent to the countryside to give active help to the peasants in their struggle. At that time large numbers of fine workers were chosen from the Hungnam Fertilizer Factory, the Sadong Coal Mine in Pyongyang and many other factories and mines and from the railways throughout the country and dispatched to the countryside. They rendered active assistance to the rural committees in their work by going among the peasants and informing them fully of the significance of the agrarian reform and showing them the ways to implement it. In particular, the workers waged an energetic struggle, in cooperation with the public security organs and the self-defence corps organized in the countryside, to expose and frustrate the schemes and manoeuvres of those landlords and reactionary elements who came out in opposition to the agrarian reform. The support of the working class was a great encouragement to the peasants in their struggle against the landlords and further strengthened the class alliance of the workers and the peasants.

Our Party also strengthened the united front with all the other political parties and social organizations to carry out the agrarian reform and strove to enlist them in the struggle to win the success of the reform. The result was that the broad masses from all walks of life affiliated to different political parties and social organizations came out in support of the agrarian reform and actively helped to enforce it. This was an important factor in the successful implementation of the agrarian reform in our country within the short period of less than a month.

Immediately after the agrarian reform our Party took steps to
consolidate its success. If one confines oneself to depriving the landlords of their land and distributing it to the peasants without following this up with relevant organizational work, one cannot consolidate and develop the success of the agrarian reform. In order to consolidate the success of the agrarian reform, we worked hard to strengthen the position of the Party in the rural areas. After the agrarian reform some overthrown landlords and reactionary elements spread various false rumours and persistently committed acts of subversion and sabotage to nullify the success of the reform. Under such circumstances, without consolidating the rural position from the class standpoint, neither could the acts of subversion and sabotage of the landlords and reactionary elements be smashed, nor could the victory of the agrarian reform be confirmed.

Our Party admitted to its membership large numbers of rural committee members and farm hands and poor peasants tested and tempered in the course of the agrarian reform, and thus expanded its cells in the countryside. Further, it merged the rural committee and the peasants’ association and strengthened the ranks of the association’s cadres with rural hard cores. It also put greater energies into ideological education to heighten the class consciousness of the peasants. Along with this, it strengthened the public security organs and self-defence corps and enhanced their role. Thanks to these steps taken by our Party, its position in the rural areas was further reinforced. This constituted an important guarantee for crushing all the subversive acts of the hostile elements in the countryside and for consolidating the achievements of the agrarian reform.

The state gave active assistance to the peasants in raising good crops on the distributed land in the first year, to consolidate the successes of the agrarian reform. This was an important factor in providing material proof of the success of the agrarian reform. If the peasants had kept the distributed land idle or had gathered poor harvests after the agrarian reform, their lives could not have been improved and the reform might have come to nothing. Under the slogan “Don’t let even an inch of land lie idle!” we roused the peasants
in the struggle to produce good crops in the first year after the agrarian reform.

Although they had received land through the agrarian reform, the peasants had no draught cattle, farm implements, seed grain and the like at that time, so they found it very difficult to farm in the first year by themselves. Taking advantage of this, the ousted landlords and reactionary elements made crafty attempts to shake the peasants by circulating various rumours such as “Don’t be glad that you have got land” and “You cannot farm without landlords”.

In order to enable the peasants who had received land to procure draught cattle, farm implements, seed grain and the like, the state set up the Peasant Bank and provided them with long-term loans for farming. In order to solve the question of draught cattle in particular, the state disbursed money, in spite of the very difficult economic situation in the country, and purchased tens of thousands of draught cattle in the mountainous areas and distributed them among the peasants on the plains. In order to settle the seed problem, the state divided the seed grain confiscated from the landlords at the time of the agrarian reform among the peasants and, at the same time, persuaded the middle peasants to share their seed grain with the former hired hands and poor peasants. The state supplied chemical fertilizer to the peasants and made them pay it back in kind in the autumn.

Meanwhile, measures were taken to form many factory and office workers and students into aid-sowing squads and aid-rice-transplantation squads to go out to the countryside and render active assistance to the peasants.

Thanks to the state’s energetic assistance, all farming operations, beginning with sowing, were carried out with credit in the right season in the first year after the agrarian reform.

In order to consolidate the achievements of the agrarian reform our Party abolished the system of grain delivery, land tax, profit tax and other miscellaneous exacting taxes levied on the peasants previously, and introduced the system of agricultural tax in kind.

For many years the peasants had been deprived of the greater part of
their harvests in the form of enforced grain delivery and high farm rents by the Japanese imperialists and landlords. Although they were glad to have received land gratuitously, inwardly they had misgivings in case the state should take away their grain after harvest, as in the days of Japanese imperialist rule. While the peasants were still very anxious to know what measures the state would take after the harvest, the Law on Agricultural Tax in Kind was published.

Under the system of agricultural tax in kind, the peasants were to deliver only 25 per cent of their harvests to the state and to take full possession of the remaining 75 per cent. When this law was proclaimed, the peasants were as delighted as at the time of the agrarian reform, and they enthusiastically hailed the system of agricultural tax in kind.

Thanks to the introduction of the system of agricultural tax in kind in the wake of the agrarian reform, the reform’s success was further consolidated.

The success of the agrarian reform and the consolidation of its achievements represented a brilliant solution to the land problem in the stage of the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution in our country. This was a revolutionary change of great historical significance in the development of our revolution and the building of a new society.

The agrarian reform created favourable conditions for freeing the peasants, who made up the overwhelming majority of our population, from feudalistic exploitation and subordination and for improving their material and cultural standard of living; it greatly enhanced the peasant masses’ revolutionary enthusiasm and creative activity in the building of a new society.

The agrarian reform also freed the productive forces of agriculture from the fetters of feudalism and thus laid the foundation for the rapid development of agricultural production. The reform made it possible, through the development of agriculture, to supply sufficient raw materials to industry and food to the people, thereby giving a strong impetus to the rehabilitation and development of national industry and
the national economy as a whole.

The agrarian reform put an end to the feudalistic relations of production, which had obstructed social progress, and eliminated the landlord class, the most reactionary class, and thus brought about a radical change in the appearance of our countryside and created favourable social and economic conditions for the democratic development of the country.

2. ON AGRICULTURAL COOPERATION

The cooperation of private farming is indispensable for the prosperity of the nation and the building of a new society to provide a happy life for all the people.

The agrarian reform is nothing more than the initial step towards the solution of the peasant and agricultural problems. Although it abolishes the feudalistic system of tenancy and liberates the peasants from feudalistic exploitation, it cannot completely wipe out the sources of exploitation and poverty in the rural areas. Even after agrarian reform the rich farmers remain as ever and private farming prevails there. While there are private farming and people with and without large areas of land, draught cattle and farm implements, it is impossible to stop the practice of some well-to-do farmers exploiting the poor peasants in a variety of ways and to eliminate class differentiation in the rural areas. Therefore, for the complete elimination of exploitation in the countryside it is imperative to transform private farming along cooperative lines.

The cooperation of private farming is also an urgent need for the mechanization and modernization of agriculture and the rapid development of the forces of agricultural production. The very existence of private farming, even dispersed and on a small scale, makes it impossible to develop agriculture on a planned basis, to
introduce advanced farming methods widely and to mechanize farm work.

Agricultural cooperation is also essential to strengthen further the worker-peasant alliance on a new basis and to fortify the political foundations of the revolution.

In building a new society, therefore, the party and state of the working class must, without fail, carry out the agrarian revolution and then consolidate its achievements and, on the basis of this, gradually transform agriculture along socialist lines.

An important aspect of agricultural cooperation is to time it correctly.

The agricultural cooperative movement, like all other revolutionary movements, may have to go through twists and turns if it is timed incorrectly and started too early or too late.

Although the cooperation of private farming is important in the socialist revolution, it is not posed as an urgent task right at the start of this revolution.

In our country the democratic revolution was carried out in one or two years after liberation and gradually the period of transition to socialism began. But in the first days of the transition period the task of agricultural cooperation did not present itself as an urgent requirement. The peasants, who had become the masters of the land thanks to the agrarian reform, actively supported the policies of our Party and the Government of the Republic and their patriotic enthusiasm and zeal for production ran very high. It had been the lifelong desire of the peasants to till their own soil, so they were deeply attached to their land. If we, giving no heed to this, had advanced the policy of reorganizing private farming along cooperative lines, we would have failed, beyond doubt, to win the active support of the peasants, and would have dampened the peasant masses’ enthusiasm for production which had been fired by the agrarian reform, thus hindering the development of agricultural production. That was why we did not advance the question of agricultural cooperation in the first stage of the transition period.

In the early days of the transition period, we directed our main
efforts towards consolidating the achievements of the agrarian reform and displaying its full vitality and, at the same time, we made preparations for the future socialist transformation of agriculture.

In our country preparations for the socialist transformation of agriculture had been made in part during the period of democratic reforms.

At the time of the agrarian reform we pursued the policy of restraining the development of the rich farmers’ husbandry in order to create favourable conditions for agricultural cooperation in the future. As the rich farmers were the chief target of struggle in agricultural cooperation, it was necessary to restrict in advance their husbandry to prevent it developing to any great extent. So we prohibited the selling, buying and mortgaging of the land distributed through the agrarian reform, ensured that the rich farmers raised crops for themselves and forbade them to employ permanent farm labour.

We also set up the Peasant Bank to check extortionary exploitation by the rich farmers and usurers in the rural areas.

One urgent problem raised in the rural areas after the agrarian reform was to furnish the peasants with funds for farming. Most of the peasants who received land thanks to the agrarian reform had formerly been farm hands or poor peasants, so they did not have the wherewithal to farm. At that time the economic situation in the country was very difficult and so there were not sufficient assets to finance the farming of the peasants. Taking advantage of this, the rich farmers and usurers sought to exploit the peasants by offering loans at a high rate of interest.

Tapping and making use of idle funds to the full in the rural areas was a rational way of protecting impoverished peasants from usurious exploitation and providing them with farming capital. As it is said that many a little makes a mickle, even the few pennies of each peasant, if pooled, could make a great deal of capital for providing funds for farming. For this reason, we set up the Peasant Bank in April 1946 and encouraged broad sections of peasants to join it.

This bank, as a cooperative credit organization, established its
capital with the investments made by the peasants, the deposits of the rural population and loans from the state, and provided money for the peasants mainly as farming capital, but partially as living expenses. In those days the usurers used to furnish the peasants with money at exorbitant rates of interest, but the Peasant Bank charged only 9.2 per cent interest. Thus, the Peasant Bank stopped the usurers exploiting the peasants and convinced the peasants, through actual experience, of the superiority of cooperative husbandry.

Consumers’ cooperatives, too, played an important role in making the peasants aware of the advantages of cooperative farming.

Immediately after liberation, individual merchants ruled the roost in our markets. They took advantage of the short supply of goods and made huge profits. They purchased commodities at a low price in towns and sold them at a high price in the rural areas, and bought agricultural products very cheaply in the rural areas and sold them at a high price in towns. In this way they exploited the rural population.

We set up consumers’ cooperatives of the peasants to put an end to profiteering in the countryside and improve commodity supply to the rural population.

These cooperatives constituted the cooperative economy in the field of trade, having been established by pooling the money of the peasants.

They supplied on time to the countryside such industrial products as salt, cloth, footwear and matches that were indispensable for the peasants’ daily life and, at the same time, widely purchased agricultural produce and sideline products from the peasants and sold them in towns; they divided the profits gained through these trading activities evenly among their members, according to the size of their investment.

The consumers’ cooperatives made a major contribution to strengthening the economic ties between town and country through commodity supply and purchasing work, to preventing intermediary exploitation by profiteers and to stabilizing and improving the peasants’ livelihood. They demonstrated the advantages of the
cooperative economy to the peasants by promoting their interests and their daily comfort.

In preparation for the socialist reorganization of the rural economy, our Party also set up in the countryside state agricultural and livestock farms, farm-machine hire stations, ox and horse hire stations and widely popularized and encouraged such cooperative forms of labour as ox sharing and mutual labour aid, which had long been a tradition with our peasants. During the Fatherland Liberation War in particular, when manpower, draught animals and farm implements were in short supply, our Party formed and managed many mutual-labour-aid and ox-sharing teams, thereby heightening the peasants’ spirit of mutual help and their aspirations for cooperative farming.

The socialist transformation of agriculture in our country presented itself as an urgent requirement in the postwar period.

The three-year long war severely damaged our rural economy. After the war there remained a very small number of the draught cattle and farm implements that are indispensable for agriculture and manpower was also in short supply. Some peasants had draught cattle and farm implements but lacked work hands to farm properly, while others had land and manpower but were short of draught cattle and farm implements. In short, the peasants found themselves incapable of farming without pooling their efforts and cooperating with each other in one way or another.

After the war, life for our peasants was very hard. Owing to the war almost all their furniture and household goods had been destroyed, and clothing and food were in short supply. The war had reduced nearly 40 per cent of the agricultural population to minor peasants.

In this situation, as long as private farming was left intact it was impossible to develop agricultural production quickly and to solve the questions of food and the peasants’ livelihood, which were very difficult problems. If private farming was left intact, this could involve the risk of bringing about disparity between industry, which was being reconstructed and developed rapidly in a planned way, and agriculture, which was being reconstructed slowly, so that the development of
industry and the national economy as a whole would be seriously hampered. Thus the postwar reality called urgently for the cooperation of private farming.

In the postwar period favourable conditions existed for agricultural cooperation in the rural areas.

The three-year long devastating war had played havoc with agriculture, but in return it had given our peasants revolutionary training and awakened them. In the crucible of the war, the peasants had become keenly aware that our Party policy was correct and that the people’s government was dear to them, and they rallied closely around the Party and the Government; they had formed the firm conviction that they could be victorious and happy only when they followed the path indicated by the Party.

The peasants were awakened politically and united closely around the Party, whereas the power of the rich farmers was severely weakened. It was not the poor peasants alone who had suffered from the war. The middle and well-to-do middle peasants, too, had lost their houses, farm implements and draught cattle and had been impoverished; the economy of the rich farmers had almost totally been destroyed, too, and become insignificant. In truth, after the war the rich farmers had nothing but their land and the thought of exploiting others.

After the war the peasants’ desire to possess land was very weak. Since even if they had land, they could not cultivate it properly because draught cattle, farm implements and manpower were in short supply, their desire for land was not as strong as immediately after the agrarian reform.

In the light of both the balance of power between the classes and the situation and mental condition of the farming population, the postwar period favoured agricultural cooperation. If we missed this favourable opportunity and were delayed, and then, after the resurgence of the rich and middle farmers, tried to reorganize them on cooperative lines, this might have proved very difficult. So, our Party and the Government of the Republic regarded the postwar period as the most appropriate time for agricultural cooperation and advanced the policy of reorganizing
private farming along cooperative lines.

When our Party first put forward the policy of agricultural cooperation, some people would not support it, arguing that agricultural cooperation could not be realized in a situation in which industry had not yet been developed and modern farm machines were unavailable. The argument that agricultural cooperation was impossible before the country was industrialized was a dogmatic view incompatible with the actual situation in our country. Of course, up until then it had been understood, from the experience of another country and established theory, that agricultural cooperation was possible only after socialist industrialization.

We, however, believed that even if the level of development of the productive forces and technology was relatively low, agricultural cooperation was quite possible when the reorganization of the old production relations was such an urgent demand and the strength of the revolutionary forces prepared to carry it out was sufficient.

The masses of the people are the decisive factor for victory in both the revolutionary struggle and construction work. Since the peasant masses, the masters in charge of agriculture, were urgently demanding cooperation, there was no need to postpone the socialist transformation of agriculture until industrialization had been realized, simply because there was no modern farm machinery.

We also gained practical experience which told us that if a large number of people pooled their wisdom and efforts, they were capable of carrying out irrigation and land-realignment projects, something which private farmers could not even dream about, and thus of rapidly developing agricultural production. During the war we had formed agricultural cooperatives in some places on an experimental basis to determine the direction agriculture would take for its revitalization after the war. Although these agricultural cooperatives merely pooled land and small farm implements, they proved immensely superior to private farming.

Drawn from an analysis of the state of affairs in our country and from our practical experience, we held the firm belief that agricultural
cooperation was possible even when we had no developed industry and modern farm machinery, and we promoted the agricultural cooperative movement energetically, without vacillation. Thus, unlike in other countries, the socialist transformation of agriculture in our country was carried out prior to technological reconstruction.

In guiding the agricultural cooperative movement, our Party and the Government of the Republic saw to it that the principle of voluntary involvement was strictly observed.

The principle of voluntary involvement is a requirement stemming from the essence of this movement. As agricultural cooperation is a drive aimed at protecting the interests of the peasants and making them prosperous, it is absolutely intolerable to employ such methods as drawing peasants forcibly into agricultural cooperatives.

The principle of voluntary involvement, however, does not mean that it is permissible to leave the peasants alone to do what they like—join agricultural cooperatives if they please or not if they do not. If the principle of voluntary involvement is to be observed, it is necessary to take various steps to encourage the peasants to join agricultural cooperatives of their own accord.

An object lesson is the best way to make the peasants join agricultural cooperatives voluntarily.

The private farmers had been used to earning a precarious living, tied down to their small peasant husbandry for generations, so they were very conservative and circumspect and would not readily accept anything until they became convinced of its worth by gaining firsthand experience. Such an attitude was characteristic of them and, taking this into account, we conducted wide-scale information work among the peasants concerning the advantages of agricultural cooperatives and, at the same time, set an experimental stage of agricultural cooperation and demonstrated its advantages to them through practical examples.

Setting the experimental stage was of great importance in showing the peasants a practical example of agricultural cooperation. In setting the experimental stage prior to starting the agricultural cooperative movement on a mass scale, our Party aimed to enable officials to gain
experience in forming and managing cooperatives, in line with the actual conditions in our country and the specific features of the local areas, and to demonstrate to the peasants the superiority of cooperatives over the private economy.

Of course, when we launched the agricultural cooperative movement, we studied and took into consideration the experience of cooperation in other countries. We, however, could not carry out such a deep-rooted, complex social and economic reform as agricultural cooperation by drawing entirely on the experience of others without gaining our own experience. And in a situation in which the peasants had no idea what an agricultural cooperative was like, it was impossible to convince them of the advantages of cooperatives by producing information about their merits from the experience of other countries alone.

The former farm hands and poor peasants presented no problem with regard to voluntarily joining cooperatives. In the past they had had little in the way of means of production, particularly land, but, thanks to the agrarian reform, they had become the masters of the land for the first time. Therefore, they wholeheartedly supported the line and policies of our Party. They also urgently demanded cooperation because of their own economic situation.

This, however, was not the case with the middle peasants. They were working people who farmed for themselves and, at the same time, small proprietors who owned land and draught cattle, so they were wavering as to which road to take at the crossroads of capitalism and socialism. As for their attitude towards agricultural cooperation, those who had become middle peasants after the agrarian reform supported it, whereas those who had originally been middle peasants adopted a “wait-and-see” attitude. Since the middle peasants were a strata that counted for much in the countryside, the success of the cooperative movement depended largely on whether they were won over or not.

If they were to be won over and induced to join cooperatives of their own accord, the superiority of cooperative farming over private husbandry had to be demonstrated. That was why our Party formed a
few cooperatives in each county on an experimental basis with the former farm hands, poor peasants and rural hard cores who actively supported agricultural cooperation.

An important question at the experimental stage of agricultural cooperation was to ensure that the newly formed cooperatives demonstrated their advantages quickly. We saw to it that the state took various measures to consolidate these cooperatives and bring their advantages into full play.

The economic foundations of the agricultural cooperatives formed with poor peasants were weak and their members were very poor. The state gave the newly formed cooperatives loans of food and seed grain which they had been short of, supplied them with fertilizers and farm implements on a preferential basis and, at the same time, granted them long-term loans to buy draught cattle, farm implements, farming materials and the like. It also set up farm machine hire stations and ox and horse hire stations, which gave priority to the agricultural cooperatives in ploughing and carrying farming materials.

Thanks to the active guidance and assistance given by the Party and the state and to the devoted efforts of the cooperative members, the agricultural cooperatives gradually began to demonstrate their advantages. In 1954 the per-unit-area grain yield of cooperative farming was 10 to 50 per cent higher than in private farming and the cash income as much as twice to seven times as great.

Once the great superiority of cooperative farming over private farming had been proved, middle peasants began to join agricultural cooperatives in large numbers. Thus, our agricultural cooperative movement entered the stage of mass development.

Our Party applied the principle of voluntary involvement to the rich farmers, too. In one country the rich farmers were eliminated by means of expropriation when agriculture was transformed along socialist lines. Our Party, however, at the time of agricultural cooperation, followed the policy of restricting and gradually remoulding the rich farmers instead of dispossessing them.

Of our rural population at this time, the poor peasants represented
about 40 per cent and rich farmers only 0.6 per cent. This small number of rich farmers had nearly gone bankrupt during the war, so that their economic foundations were insignificant. Taking this into account, our Party ensured that those rich farmers who accepted the cooperation policy and wanted to live by their own labour in cooperatives, were admitted to the cooperatives and transformed into socialist working people, and that those who hindered the cooperative movement were severely punished. Most of the rich farmers adopted an attitude of indifference in the early period of cooperation, but they joined the cooperatives of their own accord as socialist transformation progressed swiftly and the objects of exploitation gradually disappeared in town and country. Thus, our agricultural cooperative movement proceeded smoothly without much ado.

It was highly important to determine the correct forms that cooperatives should take in persuading the peasants to join agricultural cooperatives and in advancing the agricultural cooperative movement smoothly.

Land was under the private ownership of peasants and the economic conditions and levels of ideological preparedness were different for each person. Taking this into account, we defined three forms of agricultural cooperative and allowed the peasants to choose any of these forms to accord with their will and desire.

The first form of agricultural cooperative was the mutual-labour-aid team in which the peasants did not pool their land and farm implements, but simply did farm work together.

Such a team was necessary for the peasants to have a taste of cooperation and become interested in it.

In the mutual-labour-aid team the peasants farmed by sharing draught cattle and farm implements and, after the harvest, they had to pay for their use in kind or cash. As for the labour aid, the balance was struck on the principle of repaying labour with labour, and compensation was made in kind or cash only for the amount of labour not repaid in this way. The mutual-labour-aid team was allowed to decide on the amount of compensation in kind or cash in accordance
with the standards defined by the state, by taking into account its own specific situation. The team was encouraged to build up a common fund, with which it would buy draught cattle and farm implements, organize such joint sidelines as stockbreeding and sericulture, reclaim land, construct pumping stations and thus gradually extend the foundations of the joint economy.

The second form of agricultural cooperative was one in which the land was pooled and cultivated jointly and the crop yield was distributed according to the work done and to the size of the land contributed.

In this form the distribution of crops and cash gained through joint husbandry was made by the number of workdays assessed according to the quality and quantity of the work done in joint labour and by the number of points given according to the sizes and fertility of the paddy and dry fields contributed to the cooperative. The rate of income distribution for work done was set at over 80 per cent and that for the size of contributed land at less than 20 per cent. In principle, draught cattle and farm implements were placed under common ownership, but, on request, could be left under private ownership and used jointly. In short, the first form was an embryo of socialism, while the second was a semi-socialist form.

The third form of agricultural cooperative was the highest one, in which land and other major means of production were placed under common ownership and distribution was made entirely according to the work done.

In the third form, the draught cattle and major farm implements, not to mention the land, were all placed under joint ownership, and individuals were allowed to hold no more than 50 phyong of household plots per family and some fruit trees in the yards of their houses, and to keep such farm animals as pigs, sheep, fowl and rabbits domestically, so long as this did not interfere with the collective farming. And when draught cattle, farm implements and other means of production were pooled and placed under common ownership, they had to be duly paid for, without fail. These measures taken by our Party induced the
farmers of various strata to accept the policy on cooperation readily.

The classification of agricultural cooperatives into three forms did not mean that in organizing cooperatives one had to proceed in due order from the first form to the second and then from the second to the third. Yet, at the time there were instances of some officials incorrectly believing that just as schoolchildren were moved up from the first year to the second and then to the third, agricultural cooperatives should also advance from the first form to the second and then to the third. On the other hand, some others merely sought to organize cooperatives of the third form indiscriminately, claiming that the higher form was preferable.

We identified these errors immediately and saw to it that the peasants’ preparedness and their wishes were taken into consideration in forming agricultural cooperatives, and that there was no instance of forcing a lower form on those peasants who wanted a higher form, or of imposing a higher form from the start on those peasants who could only accept a lower form in view of their preparedness.

Fixing the sizes of cooperatives correctly was also important in the agricultural cooperative movement.

Needless to say, in view of the essential requirements of the socialist joint economy, it is preferable to have a fairly large size of cooperative farming. Only when agricultural cooperatives are large in size is it possible to introduce mechanization and irrigation properly and carry out land realignment and the like efficiently. Nevertheless, it is not good to expand cooperatives thoughtlessly without taking into consideration the level of farm mechanization and the peasants’ preparedness. In a situation in which farm mechanization, the peasants’ ideological consciousness and the cadres’ qualifications for management were at a low level, over-size cooperatives would make it impossible to manage the cooperative economy properly and bring its advantages into full play.

Our Party made sure that the sizes of agricultural cooperatives were so defined as to suit the standard of technical equipment, the preparedness of the personnel and the topographical features of the
area. At the beginning of the agricultural cooperative movement the size of the cooperative was set to comprise some 15 to 20 households and, gradually, as various conditions matured, it was expanded to embrace some 40 to 100 households.

The small size of the cooperative, embracing some 15 to 20 households in the initial stage of the agricultural cooperative movement, made it possible for the management to build up good cooperatives and run the joint economy rationally in spite of the low qualifications of the managers. After some experience had been accumulated and the standard of management improved in the experimental stage, the cooperatives were reorganized with the village as a unit, comprising some 40 to 100 households each. At the time, villages in the mountainous areas were small and their farm houses were scattered. In view of this, cooperatives were formed at a size of about 40 to 50 households each in the mountainous areas, while in the intermediate zone and on the plains they were formed within the limit of 100 households, depending on the size of the village. By fixing the size of a cooperative in this way, according to the level of its personnel’s preparedness and the topographical features of the area, it became possible to run the cooperatives rationally.

In the agricultural cooperative movement, we synchronized the quantitative expansion of cooperatives with their qualitative development.

Our Party and the Government of the Republic directed close attention to the qualitative development of new cooperatives from the first days of their formation. Especially in the stage in which the middle peasants, who had been hesitating, began to join cooperatives in large numbers, the qualitative development of cooperatives posed itself as a very serious problem. The newly formed cooperatives had not yet been strengthened organizationally or economically when they had to accept large numbers of middle peasants. If in such conditions no steps were taken to consolidate the cooperatives qualitatively, the middle peasants’ propensity for petty ownership might have been reflected in the work of the cooperatives, and it would have been
impossible to develop the cooperatives on a sound basis.

Our Party made great efforts, before anything else, to consolidate the agricultural cooperatives politically and ideologically.

The rapid heightening of the cooperative members’ level of ideological consciousness was an urgent demand in consolidating the agricultural cooperatives and giving full scope to their advantages. Our Party stepped up class education and education in socialism in keeping with the developing situation in order to heighten the cooperative members’ class awareness and socialist consciousness.

To strengthen the class positions in the rural areas was of great significance in consolidating the agricultural cooperatives. It was only when the rural class positions were established firmly that it was possible to win over the broad masses in the rural areas fully to the side of the revolution, to strengthen the worker-peasant alliance and to develop the cooperatives on a sound basis.

The former farm hands and poor peasants and, in particular, the bereaved families of patriotic martyrs, families of People’s Army soldiers and ex-servicemen were the rural hard cores our Party had to rely on; they were the core elements who would work most devotedly for the victory of agricultural cooperation. Our Party actively helped former farm hands, poor peasants, bereaved families of patriotic martyrs and families of People’s Army soldiers to play the hard-core role in the work of cooperatives, and chose fine people from among them and placed them in the leadership bodies of the Party and working people’s organizations and in the management organizations of cooperatives. Along with this, it dispatched many war-hardened demobilized soldiers to the rural areas to play a core role in the cooperatives.

Our Party and the Government of the Republic also exerted great efforts to consolidate the agricultural cooperatives economically and technologically.

The material assistance rendered by the state played the decisive role in strengthening economically the weak agricultural cooperatives formed of poor peasants.
As industry was reconstructed and developed rapidly and the country’s economic foundations consolidated, the state supplied larger quantities of chemical fertilizers, farm machinery and building materials to the rural areas. It gave loans of food, seed grain and a large amount of funds for farming to the agricultural cooperatives with weak economic foundations. It took steps to introduce the system of fixed taxes in kind and to reduce considerably the rate of taxation in kind in 1956 in order to lighten the burdens on the peasants and stimulate their enthusiasm for production. In particular, the state levied 5 per cent less tax in kind on agricultural cooperatives than on private farmers. At the same time, it set high purchasing prices for the joint products of agricultural cooperatives to increase their revenue and induce their members to take greater interest in the joint economy than in their private sidelines.

In order to ease the manpower shortage in the countryside after the war, the state also sent tens of thousands of ex-servicemen and secondary school leavers to the rural areas and mobilized factory and office workers, students and soldiers to give assistance to agricultural cooperatives during the important farming seasons every year.

This active support from the state and social assistance helped strengthen the economic foundations of agricultural cooperatives and improve their members’ livelihood quickly.

Improving the management of agricultural cooperatives was a matter of great urgency for strengthening the newly formed cooperatives.

In the first days of agricultural cooperatives, there was no one who knew how to draw up plans, organize and administer labour, do bookkeeping and make account settlements and income distribution. Such being the case, there was no socialist order and system in the management of cooperatives and there occurred many instances of disorder in collective labour and in the administration of common property. No consolidation and development of the young cooperative economy could be expected without straightening out how the cooperatives were run.
The primary task in improving the management of agricultural cooperatives was to build up reliable ranks of management cadres and improve their qualifications quickly.

There was no one with experience in the running of a large-scale economy because originally the backward, small peasant economy had been predominant. To add to this, because many fine rural cadres who had worked hard since the agrarian reform had been killed in the war, there was a very small number of officials capable of undertaking the management of agricultural cooperatives. Taking advantage of this situation, in some localities rural “bigwigs” and even some unsound elements who had slipped into agricultural cooperatives became ensconced in their leadership posts. So, negative phenomena appeared in some agricultural cooperatives, such as allocating to their members more household plots than stipulated in the regulations and paying too much for the draught cattle and farm implements pooled in the cooperative economy. To reinforce the management staff with Party hard cores presented itself as a very important question in guaranteeing the success of the cooperative movement.

As the agricultural cooperative movement entered the stage of mass development, many new cooperatives were formed and, thus, the need to settle the question of management cadres became still more pressing.

Our Party and the Government selected fine officials from among the state civil servants and sent them to agricultural cooperatives and, at the same time, opened new agricultural-cooperative-management-worker training courses at the agricultural universities and colleges and cadre-training institutions, and set up short courses in the provinces to train and re-educate agricultural cooperative management personnel. Thus, a large number of such personnel were trained and, as a result, the matter of agricultural cooperative management cadres, which had posed a very serious problem, was settled.

For the better management of agricultural cooperatives it is important to establish strict democratic order in their management. In order to establish thoroughly the democratic principle of management
in the cooperatives, we ensured that every problem arising in their work was discussed and resolved collectively at general membership meetings of cooperatives and conferences of their management boards convened at regular intervals, and that the results of the activities of cooperatives and of the management of their property were made known to their members periodically.

In the management of agricultural cooperatives it was also important to organize the labour properly and observe strictly the socialist principle of distribution. Only when labour is organized rationally, the quantity and quality of the work done are assessed accurately and promptly and, on this basis, fair distribution is made, is it possible to increase the cooperative members’ enthusiasm for production and develop agricultural production rapidly.

The state fixed standard work norms by grades for crop raising, stockbreeding, fruit growing, sericulture and all other productive operations, and let agricultural cooperatives decide their own work norms according to these standards, in keeping with their own specific conditions.

In order to enforce labour discipline and encourage cooperative members to participate in collective labour conscientiously, the state fixed the number of obligatory workdays for all members, so that they worked for a definite number of days annually without fail.

We formulated the Standard Rules of Agricultural Cooperatives and sent this document to the cooperatives to improve their management. The rules stipulated the character and aim of the cooperative, the duties and rights of its members, and the formation and operation of its management body. The rules also laid down in detail the procedures for using and managing the basic means of production and common property; the organization of production and labour; the assessment of work and methods of income distribution; and other principles and procedures for managing the cooperative. In pursuance of the state’s standard rules, agricultural cooperatives drafted their own rules to suit their specific conditions, adopted them at general meetings and then implemented them scrupulously. In this
way, all agricultural cooperatives would work according to their own standards of operation and their members would work and live in accordance with the regulations of collective life.

With the political and economic consolidation of agricultural cooperatives, the advantages of cooperative farming became more evident. As the newly formed agricultural cooperatives were strengthened and their advantages displayed more fully, even those well-to-do farmers who had turned their backs on the cooperative movement began to join cooperatives. Thus, our agricultural cooperative movement entered the stage of completion.

Those who had so far remained outside the cooperatives were mainly the well-to-do farmers, farmers who farmed while engaged in trade on the outskirts of towns, farmers dispersed in mountainous regions and those in the newly liberated areas. Taking into account the situation of these particular farmers, we adopted steps to admit them to cooperatives in different ways to conform to their characteristics and the situation in their locality.

Those people who farmed at the same time as trading on the outskirts of towns were encouraged to join agricultural cooperatives or production-and-marketing cooperatives according to their wishes. And for the peasants scattered in the mountainous areas, steps were taken to form workteams rationally to suit the local conditions and to concentrate the households in fixed places. This enabled all of them to join cooperatives. As for the farmers in the newly liberated areas, our Party’s policy on agricultural cooperation was explained to them and, at the same time, more object lessons were given, in view of their ideological lag behind the peasants in other areas.

Thanks to the correct policy and energetic guidance of our Party and the Government of the Republic the cooperative movement was promoted at a faster rate and completed across the country in August 1958.

Although our agricultural cooperative movement did not experience much trouble, this does not mean that the process of agricultural cooperation was free from class struggle.
Essentially, the agricultural cooperative movement is a struggle to transform the small-commodity and capitalist economic forms in the rural areas into a socialist economic form. Accordingly, it is accompanied by an acute class struggle.

Our agricultural cooperative movement, too, progressed through an acute class struggle. The overthrown exploiting classes refused to give up their wild dream of restoring the old system and, furthermore, the country had been divided into the north and the south and half of its territory was under the occupation of American imperialism. This situation obliged us to combat the subversive activities of the enemy from the outset of the cooperative movement.

When our Party advanced the policy of agricultural cooperation the class enemy spread all manner of slander and reactionary rumour against the Party’s policy in order to prevent the peasants from joining cooperatives, and ran wild to strangle the newly formed cooperatives in their infancy.

As the agricultural cooperatives were consolidated and developed, the enemy became more desperate. He committed vicious acts of subversion and sabotage—killing draught cattle, destroying farm implements and murdering cadres and hard cores of the cooperatives.

Our Party adhered strictly to the class policy of relying firmly on the poor peasants, allying closely with the middle peasants, and restricting and remoulding the rich peasants, and roused the broad masses of the peasants to a vigorous struggle against the counter-revolution. As a result, the enemy’s foothold for conducting underhand manoeuvres was removed, his subversive activities and sabotage were exposed and smashed at every turn, and the historic victory of the agricultural cooperative movement was fully guaranteed.

Our agricultural cooperative movement was brought to a triumphant completion in a short space of time after the war—only four or five years.

The victorious completion of the difficult and complex task of agricultural cooperation in our country within such a short period was due to the fact that our Party advanced a correct line for this movement
and fought for its implementation stubbornly, without vacillation, in the teeth of every manner of hardship and obstacle, and that our peasants supported the Party’s policy on agricultural cooperation actively and participated in this movement enthusiastically.

The completion of agricultural cooperation in our country marked the shining victory of our Party’s policy on agricultural cooperation, and meant that a great change had been brought about in our rural areas. It proved that agricultural cooperation could be carried out even when rustic techniques were prevailing and that even such a cooperative economy was incomparably superior to private husbandry.

With the completion of agricultural cooperation our rural areas were clear of all sources of exploitation and poverty and were converted into a socialist countryside where all the people worked and lived happily and in comfort, and our farmers were turned from the minor proprietors of yesterday into masters of large-scale cooperative farming, honourable socialist working people.

An important task confronting our Party and the state after the completion of the socialist transformation of agriculture was to further consolidate the cooperative economy, give full scope to its advantages and develop rapidly the agricultural productive forces.

With a view to consolidating and developing the socialist cooperative economy we took steps to merge the agricultural cooperatives by the ri unit and thus to increase their sizes.

The merger of agricultural cooperatives by the ri unit was essential to improve the management of cooperative farming and to speed up the technical revolution and thereby develop further the agricultural productive forces. Therefore, we merged the agricultural cooperatives by the ri unit in 1958. As a result, the average size of agricultural cooperatives was expanded from 80 to 300 in the number of households and from 130 to 500 hectares in crop area.

As agricultural cooperatives grew in size, it became possible to promote land realignment in earnest, introduce modern farm machinery and advanced farming techniques widely and make more rational use of the natural and economic conditions to develop
cooperative farming in a diversified manner. And it was possible to eliminate the waste of manpower and materials and press ahead with rural construction in a planned way and on a large scale.

We also took radical steps to reorganize the system of guidance of agriculture in conformity with the new situation in order to consolidate and develop socialist cooperative farming.

In the past the county people’s committee had guided agriculture mainly by administrative methods. In the days of private farming it had been possible to guide the rural economy by administrative methods, and these methods of guidance could be tolerated until the time when agricultural cooperatives had just been formed and their sizes were not yet large. However, as the scale of the cooperative economy increased, the material and technical foundations of the rural economy became stronger and the technical revolution in the rural areas entered on the stage of full-scale promotion, it became totally impossible to guide the rural economy by administrative methods.

Like industry, the socialist rural economy, whose management scale grew larger and which was equipped with modern technology, called for guidance by industrial methods of management.

Nevertheless, the county people’s committee had neither the technical forces capable of guiding agriculture by industrial methods of management nor the farm machinery, irrigation facilities and other material and technical means for serving agriculture. And as the lowest organ of administrative guidance, the county people’s committee was responsible for organizing and directing not only agriculture but also trade, education, culture, health services, city administration and all other activities within the county. Therefore, it was not capable of guiding agriculture by industrial methods of management as the developing situation demanded.

The guidance of agriculture by industrial methods necessitated intensified technical guidance of agricultural production and the establishment of a new, specialized organ of agricultural guidance to plan and organize management activities. To this end, we established a new system of agricultural guidance in 1962 by setting up the county
cooperative farm management committees and the provincial rural economy committees and reorganizing the Ministry of Agriculture to make the Commission of Agriculture.

The county cooperative farm management committee occupies the most important position in the newly established system of agricultural guidance.

The county is the most convenient size of unit for the guidance of agriculture by industrial methods in view of the conditions in our country. The cooperative farm is too small in size to be the unit of guidance by industrial methods because it has only a small number of management personnel and technical cadres and its technical means are inadequate. On the other hand, the province is too large. Therefore, we designated the county as the basic unit and separated the function of directing agriculture from the county people’s committee and set up the county cooperative farm management committee as a specialized organ of agricultural guidance.

The basic factor in the guidance of agriculture by industrial methods of management is the technical guidance of production. Technical guidance was not a great problem when farming was done by manual labour. But the technical guidance of agricultural production became an important question when irrigation, mechanization, electrification and the use of chemicals were widely introduced in the rural areas and agricultural production became a technical process.

In order to intensify the technical guidance of agricultural production, we ensured that the agronomists and such state enterprises in the service of agriculture as the farm machine station, farm implement factory and irrigation administration office in the county were attached to the county cooperative farm management committee and that this committee gave coordinated guidance to the cooperative farms and the state enterprises in the service of agriculture.

The formation of the county cooperative farm management committees and the guidance of cooperative farms by industrial methods of management brought about a radical change in the development of agriculture.
In the past the officials of the county people’s committee and the management personnel of cooperative farms had guided agricultural production by rule of thumb, with no scientific basis, but now, after the establishment of the county cooperative farm management committee, a well-regulated system of technical guidance of agriculture was established and all production processes such as allotting crop areas, selecting seeds, sowing and applying fertilizers were guided in conformity with scientific and technical principles. This brought about a rapid growth in agricultural production.

As a result of the establishment of the county cooperative farm management committees, the cooperative farms were further strengthened organizationally and economically, materially and technically.

Before the formation of the county cooperative farm management committees, the cooperative farms and the enterprises in the service of agriculture worked with no coordination between them. Therefore, cooperative farms drew up their plans with no clear idea of how much farm machinery, water, fertilizers, agricultural chemicals and other such important factors of agricultural production would be provided and, accordingly, these plans were ill-balanced. However, now that the county cooperative farm management committees had been formed and they could coordinate these plans by maintaining unified control over the cooperative farms and the state enterprises in the service of agriculture in their counties, it became possible to draw up realistic plans. These committees also directly helped cooperative farms in labour administration, financial management and various other complex matters related to their management activities, and this raised their standard of management considerably.

The county cooperative farm management committees’ unified control over the state enterprises in the service of agriculture enabled the state’s technical equipment and personnel to serve better the development of the rural economy, and further strengthened the material and technical foundations of the cooperative farms.

The establishment of the county cooperative farm management
committees also strengthened production ties between industry and agriculture and enhanced the dominance of state property over cooperative property and thus stimulated the development of the latter into the property of the whole people.

We detached the function of directing agriculture from the provincial people's committee and set up the provincial rural economy committee, a specialized organ of agricultural guidance.

The main duty of this committee was to draw up the plan for agricultural production and direct and control its implementation. We ensured that while directing the development of agriculture in the province as a whole, this committee supplied the counties in particular with adequate amounts of farm machines and their parts, fertilizers, agricultural chemicals and various other farming materials, and took charge of the guidance of technical matters such as the allotment of crop areas and the selection and improvement of seed varieties. The establishment of the provincial rural economy committees made it possible to draw state guidance of the rural areas closer to production and to develop agriculture in each province on a scientific basis in keeping with the regional characteristics.

It was laid down that while guiding the rural economy as a whole, the Agricultural Commission was mainly to organize and lead in a responsible manner the study of various technical problems relating to the long-term development of agriculture.

With this commission organizing and guiding the study of farm mechanization and farm machinery and research work into the development of agricultural techniques, including seed improvement and production, land improvement, fertilizing methods, improvement of breeding stock and the orientation of the development of animal husbandry, and also undertaking large-scale nature-harnessing projects and training agricultural cadres, it has become possible to put agriculture onto a modern, scientific and technical basis and rapidly develop it on a long-term basis.

As a result of the establishment of a new system of agricultural guidance and the radical improvement of the guidance of the rural
In order to find a good solution to the rural question, an energetic campaign should be launched to wipe out the legacies of the old society in all fields of ideology, technology and culture, at the same time as carrying out the agrarian reform and transforming private farming along socialist lines.

In the rural areas the legacies of the old society are found in various areas of the economy and culture, ideology and morality. Therefore, with only the transformation of the old production relations in the rural areas it is impossible to develop rapidly the agricultural productive forces and to provide the peasants with full, genuine freedom and a happy material and cultural life.

Conducting the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions energetically in the rural areas is fundamental to guaranteeing success in solving the rural question. Unless the political and ideological consciousness of the peasants is heightened through the ideological revolution in the countryside, social and economic reforms cannot be carried out with success nor can the revolutionary gains be resolutely defended. Without carrying out the technical and cultural revolutions in the rural areas, it is impossible to free the peasants from arduous and backbreaking labour and meet their material and cultural demands in full.
In the first days of building a new society after liberation, our Party defined the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions as important in solving the rural question at each stage of the revolution, and has been promoting them consistently ever since.

During the period of the democratic and socialist revolutions the basic task in solving the rural question was to enforce the agrarian reform and reorganize private farming along cooperative lines. So, in this period the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions were aimed primarily at guaranteeing the success of the agrarian reform and of agricultural cooperation, and at consolidating their achievements.

After the completion of agricultural cooperation, the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions present themselves as fundamental tasks in the rural areas. After the establishment of the socialist system, the lag of farm villages behind towns finds expression in the fact that the material and technical foundations of agriculture are weaker than those of industry, that the cultural level of the rural population is lower than that of the city dwellers, and that the peasants lag behind the workers in their ideological consciousness. The difference between town and country and the distinctions between the working class and the peasantry that remain in socialist society are directly associated with this very ideological, technical and cultural backwardness of the rural areas. Therefore, our Party defined the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions as the main content of the revolution which had to be continued in socialist society and as the basic revolutionary task for finding the final solution to the rural question, and strove to carry out these three revolutions.

In the *Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country* our Party illuminated the basic principles and ways for finding the final solution to the peasant and agricultural questions after the establishment of the socialist system, and roused the whole Party, the whole country and the entire people to implement them. As a result, a great success has already been achieved in the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions, and today these three revolutions are promoted at a very high level.
Now, let me speak briefly about how our Party carried out the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions at every stage of the revolution.

Our Party has always held fast to the policy of giving definite precedence to the ideological revolution in carrying out the three revolutions.

The ideological revolution in the rural areas is concerned with ideological remoulding to root out the remnants of outworn ideas from among the peasants and to equip them with the progressive revolutionary ideas of the working class. Only when the work of ideological remoulding is conducted well to arm the peasants with progressive ideas and enhance their revolutionary enthusiasm can the work of transforming the economy and of developing the forces of agricultural production be fulfilled with success.

In the period of the anti-imperialist, anti-feudal democratic revolution after liberation, the main task of the ideological revolution in the rural areas was to root out the ideological remnants of feudalism and Japanese imperialism and equip the peasants with progressive democratic ideas.

There existed widespread feudalistic ideas and conventions left over from the prolonged feudal rule and, to add to this, the Japanese imperialist aggressors had disseminated all manner of reactionary thoughts, so the peasants were deeply ingrained with outdated ideas, such as the mentality of slavish submission and a menial spirit. The ideological remnants of feudalism and Japanese imperialism placed major obstacles in the way of arming the peasants with democratic ideas and mobilizing them to build a new country.

In the past our peasants had lived in great misery under the harsh exploitation and oppression of the Japanese imperialists and landlords. Nevertheless, some peasants sympathized with the landlords or fawned on them even after the country’s liberation, because of the low level of their ideological consciousness and their lack of class awareness. Without awakening the class consciousness of the peasants, the struggle against the landlords could not be waged properly, nor could
the agrarian reform be carried out successfully. Our Party opened the eyes of the peasants to the landlords’ crimes and informed them in clear terms of their true class nature, so that they turned out with courage in the struggle against the landlords. We also exerted great efforts to root out the old ideological legacies and degenerate conventions of Japanese imperialism from among the peasants, to arm them with the consciousness that they were masters of the new Korea and with the idea of nation-building, and to establish a sound way of life among them.

The general ideological mobilization movement for nation-building was of importance in remoulding the thoughts and consciousness of the peasants. This movement was a mass movement for ideological remoulding to eradicate the ideological remnants of Japanese imperialism and feudalism, to equip the working people with the consciousness of being the masters of the country and with the nation-building idea and to cultivate revolutionary habits among them. We put great energy into the general ideological mobilization movement for nation-building in the rural areas, and thus armed the peasants with democratic ideas and patriotism and roused them actively for building a new country.

The main aspect of the ideological revolution in the stage of socialist revolution was the strengthening of socialist education.

Our Party defined the content of the ideological education of the peasants in the stage of socialist revolution to accord with the demands of agricultural cooperation and conducted ideological education in close combination with the work of transforming the economy.

The strengthening of class education was the most urgent problem arising in socialist education in the period of agricultural cooperation. Since the transformation of private farming along cooperative lines was a radical social change to eliminate all the sources of exploitation in the rural areas, the class struggle in this period was more acute and complex than ever before. So, without awakening the class consciousness of the peasants, we could not defend the gains of the
revolution we had already won, to say nothing of accomplishing agricultural cooperation.

By strengthening their class education our Party brought the peasants to form a clear understanding that the exploiting system was evil and that the socialist system was good, to hate the exploiting classes and system and to combat resolutely the class enemies.

Another important aspect of socialist education was to arm the peasants with the collectivist spirit.

The agricultural cooperative is a form of joint economy based on collectivism, under which everyone works and lives well. Therefore, in order to consolidate and develop the cooperative economy, all cooperative members should be equipped with the collectivist spirit of holding the interests of the collective dearer than their personal interests and of working with devotion for society and the collective.

For the purpose of arming the peasants with the collectivist spirit our Party directed great efforts towards educating them to value and take loving care of the cooperative’s joint property, with the correct idea that the collective interests represented their personal interests and that common wealth included their own wealth, to take part honestly in communal labour and to observe labour discipline with good grace.

The ideological revolution in the countryside was promoted energetically at a still higher level after the completion of agricultural cooperation.

After the socialist transformation, the basic task of the ideological revolution in the rural areas is to form genuine communists of the peasants by making them revolutionary and working-class.

This should be done so that all the remnants of the old thinking can be eliminated and the peasants can be armed closely with the revolutionary ideas of the working class and communist ideology. It is only by doing this that the distinctions between the working class and the peasantry can be eliminated and a communist society be built, and a final solution found to the peasant question.

In order to make the peasants revolutionary and working-class, our Party deepened education in communism with class education as its
main content and education in socialist patriotism, in conformity with the new requirements for building socialism and communism. In particular, it bent great energies towards arming the peasants fully with its Juche idea, so that they fought resolutely for the accomplishment of the cause of socialism and communism, and worked and lived in a revolutionary way with a high degree of consciousness of being masters of the state and society.

As a result of the energetic promotion of the ideological revolution in the rural areas, the peasants’ ideological and moral qualities have undergone a great change. Today all our agricultural working people have been equipped solidly with our Party’s revolutionary ideology, are united firmly around the Party and the Government, and are working with great revolutionary enthusiasm and creative initiative to hasten the victory of the cause of socialism and communism.

The technical revolution in the rural areas is a revolutionary task aimed at developing the forces of agricultural production and freeing the peasants from heavy labour by equipping agriculture with modern machinery and technology and by widely introducing the advances of agricultural science.

Our Party presented the rural technical revolution as a social and political matter to liberate the peasants from arduous and toilsome work, not as a mere economic and technical problem to develop the forces of agricultural production, and has advanced it energetically.

One important aspect of the technical revolution in the rural areas is to determine correctly its main content and the order of priority within it. Our Party set irrigation, electrification, mechanization and the introduction of chemicals as its basic content and advanced the policy of giving priority to irrigation.

The specific features of agricultural production and the natural and climatic conditions of our country demanded that priority be given to irrigation in the rural technical revolution. Unlike industry, agriculture is largely subject to the influence of natural and climatic conditions. Agriculture, which is concerned with living organisms, cannot ensure production without water. Water is literally life-giving in agriculture.
In particular, it is of decisive importance in agricultural production to establish irrigation systems in the paddy and dry fields of our country and to prevent flood and drought damage because rice farming is our chief form of agriculture and we suffer from long droughts in spring and frequent floods in summer.

Before liberation there were only about 100,000 hectares of irrigated fields in our country, and most of the paddies were poorly irrigated. Therefore, the peasants worked their land looking up to the heavens and had a great deal of trouble over water. In the spring of the year when the agrarian reform was carried out I visited many farm villages. There I saw peasants dibbling young rice plants because of the lack of water, sitting and sighing in the arid and cracked rice fields. At the sight of them I felt keenly aware that it was impossible to solve the agricultural question simply by distributing land to the peasants, and that it was essential to carry out irrigation work.

We saw to it that, in order to solve the problem of water for agricultural production, irrigation projects were started as a mass movement. Consequently, 19 irrigation projects were completed in 1946, and in 1948 work was started on the large-scale Phyongnam irrigation project, financed by state investment, and 88 projects were begun.

At the time of agricultural cooperation, too, we continued to promote irrigation projects energetically, alongside the formation of cooperatives.

In irrigation development, we laid the main stress on rice-field irrigation and, at the same time, carried out the irrigation of dry fields, river improvement projects and sand guard works. We set the policy of combining large-scale with small- and medium-scale irrigation and river improvement works, and ensured that large-scale irrigation and river improvement works were undertaken with state funding and that small- and medium-scale projects were carried out by the agricultural cooperatives themselves with technical assistance from the state.

Since the irrigation programme is a huge nature-harnessing project, it cannot be carried out successfully by the efforts of the peasants
alone, and should at all costs be conducted in an all-people movement through the mobilization of the broad masses. At the plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee held in September 1958, our Party set the ambitious goal of carrying out irrigation work in 1,000,000 hectares of land, and roused the entire people to the struggle to attain this. At that time the working class, in hearty response to the Party’s call, produced large quantities of water pumps, cement, steel and other equipment and materials for the irrigation works and supplied them to the rural areas, and the office workers, students and soldiers gave labour assistance to this work. With the proper organization and mobilization of the efforts and wisdom of the masses of the people, irrigation projects to water 370,000 hectares of land were completed within six months of the September Plenary Meeting of the Party Central Committee, and a miracle was wrought by completing the irrigation of 1,000,000 hectares within a few years.

Having finished the irrigation of rice fields first, our Party took measures to prevent damage caused by stagnant water in the main rice-producing regions, and conducted extensive river improvement and afforestation work throughout the country. Thus, our national irrigation programme was completed in the main during the period of the Seven-Year Plan and the peasants were able to raise crops in safety, free from damage caused by drought and flooding.

With the completion of irrigation development, the problem of water was completely solved, this having been the ardent desire of our peasants for thousands of years, and our country became a “land of irrigation” where irrigation water flowed over all parts of the countryside.

Another important aspect of the rural technical revolution is electrification.

Electrification in the rural areas is essential to expedite farm irrigation and mechanization and to guarantee the success of the cultural revolution in the countryside. As most of our irrigation facilities were powered by electricity, it was impossible to introduce irrigation without electricity. And only when all the farm villages and
farmhouses had electricity could threshing and various other types of farm work be mechanized and the peasants have electric lighting, listen to radio broadcasts and lead a comfortable life.

In order to settle the problem of the electric power that was necessary for rural electrification, our Party put forward the policy of building small- and medium-sized power stations in an all-people movement, at the same time as constructing large power stations.

Small- and medium-sized power stations can be built simply and quickly without the need to spend a large amount of money, and they can make effective use of water and various other sources of electricity that are plentiful in the provinces. Because they can be built anywhere, they are convenient for supplying electricity to scattered farm villages and farmhouses.

We also took steps to draw together scattered farm households to facilitate rural electrification.

Thanks to our Party’s correct policy and the positive assistance of the state, the task of rural electrification in our country was successfully completed in a fairly brief span of time.

Mechanization occupies an important place in the technical revolution in the rural areas.

The mechanization of agriculture is the most important way of freeing the peasants from arduous and heavy labour and increasing labour productivity. This is essential to raise the cultural and technical levels of the peasants and to remould their ideological consciousness successfully.

Before liberation the material and technical foundations of our rural areas were very weak. The peasants did not even know what farm machines were; they did all their farm work with primitive, small farm implements and by bending their backs and using their hands. So, agricultural output could not be increased and farm labour was the most toilsome and arduous of work.

Freeing the peasants from backbreaking labour was one of the important revolutionary tasks that confronted our Party. But we had inherited a colonial, one-sided industry from the Japanese imperialists
after liberation and even that had been utterly ravaged, so we were unable to supply the rural areas with modern farm machinery right away. And at the time, the peasants’ cultural and technical levels were not high enough to handle modern farm machines.

After liberation we began by improving the conventional small farm implements, taking into account the country’s situation and the technical level of the peasants. We built many small farm implement factories so that they produced large quantities of better small farm implements to be sent to the rural areas.

Meanwhile, we saw to it that farm machine hire stations were set up in major grain-producing areas in preparation for the mechanization of agriculture. Before the war farm machine hire stations had been established in Ryongchon and Jongju in North Phyongan Province, in Anju in South Phyongan Province, Jaeryong in South Hwanghae Province and Hamju in South Hamgyong Province. They ploughed the fields for the peasants and, at the same time, played an important role in showing them the effectiveness of mechanization.

With the fulfilment of agricultural cooperation, farm mechanization presented itself as an urgent requirement.

In our country, where agricultural cooperation was carried out before technical reconstruction, the advantages of the new cooperative economy could not be displayed to the full, nor could agricultural production be developed rapidly, without accelerating mechanization.

During the period of agricultural cooperation we were not yet capable of producing and supplying modern farm machinery in large quantities. So we put forward the policy of combining the use of power-driven farm machines with animal-drawn farm implements and encouraged the cooperatives to do all they could to improve their small- and medium-sized farm machines and introduce animal-drawn implements widely, while the state provided them with modern farm machinery.

The mechanization of our agriculture got into full stride after the foundations of an independent national economy had been laid and it had become possible to produce and supply tractors and various other
farm machines in large quantities.

In the mechanization of agriculture it was very important to determine a proper order of priority and distribute tractors and other farm machines rationally. Taking into consideration the fact that rice farming was the chief form of agriculture and that the regions differed from each other in their natural and geographical characteristics, we pursued the policy of introducing mechanization on the plains where rice fields predominated and then extending it to the intermediate zones and finally the mountainous areas, and mechanizing arduous and labour-consuming work first and then gradually proceeding in the direction of the comprehensive mechanization of all operations. This markedly increased the effectiveness and rate of use of farm machines in agricultural production.

In order to mechanize agriculture successfully, we paid close attention to increasing the number of farm machine hire stations and enhancing their role.

In some countries the mechanization of agriculture was carried out by selling tractors and other farm machines to the cooperatives. However, in view of the economic foundations of the cooperatives, the prospects for the cooperative economy and the technical aspects of the use of farm machines, this method was not suited to the situation in our country.

We ensured that the state farm machine hire stations had coordinated control over the tractors and other modern farm machines and did farm work for the cooperatives. We made the farm machine hire stations play their role not simply as enterprises doing farm work for the cooperatives for money, but as centres for spreading industrial mechanical techniques, advanced methods of enterprise management and cultured ways of production to the rural areas. In this way, our farm machine hire stations went a long way towards heightening the leadership role of the working class and strengthening the worker-peasant alliance.

The main factor in farm mechanization is to produce and supply tractors and other farm machines in large quantities. We built many
factories to serve farm mechanization, such as modern tractor, automobile, tractor accessory and trailer farm machine factories in different areas and trained greater numbers of drivers to cope with the increasing number of tractors and lorries. Thus in 1974 we accomplished the objective of the rural theses to increase the number of tractors in the rural areas to between 70,000 and 80,000.

We manufactured and provided many tractors and various new farm machines that suited the conditions in our country, and thus made it possible to perform various farming operations such as ploughing, rice-transplanting and weeding by machine.

In our country the struggle to mechanize agriculture has now reached a new stage. We are fighting to attain the goal of providing 8-10 tractors and 3-4 lorries for every 100 hectares of cultivated land in the near future through producing and supplying the rural areas with a greater number of various types of large and small tractors, rice-transplanting machines, combine harvesters, and other modern farm machines. If this objective is attained, the comprehensive mechanization of agricultural production will be fully realized in our country.

Along with mechanization, the introduction of chemicals is very important in the rural technical revolution. This is essential to increase grain output markedly through intensive farming and to relieve the peasants from arduous labour.

For the introduction of chemicals, it is necessary, above all else, to produce plenty of various chemical fertilizers.

Fertilizer is, so to say, food for crops. That is why we reconstructed the fertilizer factories first when, after liberation, we set about rebuilding the factories destroyed by the Japanese imperialists in their flight, and when we carried out postwar reconstruction work. Our Party concentrated great energies on the production of fertilizers under the slogan “Fertilizer means rice, and rice means socialism”. As a result of a continuous increase in fertilizer output, the amount of chemical fertilizers applied per hectare rose to one ton a long time ago and a campaign is now under way to reach the goal of over two tons.

In addition, we produce and supply large quantities of herbicides
and various other highly effective agricultural chemicals, and thus we
weed and prevent damage caused by blight and harmful insects with
the help of chemistry.

In applying chemistry in agriculture, it is important to establish a
scientific fertilizing system. It is pointless to apply fertilizers at random
without taking into consideration the peculiarities of the soil and crops.

We carried out an agronomic survey throughout the country, so that
all the cooperative farms had a clear understanding of the soil
conditions of every plot and applied fertilizers accordingly. At the
same time, we saw to it that the amounts of fertilizers and the methods
by which they should be applied were prescribed for every crop and
every stage of its growth so that they were used on a scientific and
technical basis.

We intend to free the peasants from arduous labour, and to
industrialize and modernize agriculture. To this end, comprehensively
mechanizing and introducing chemicals in agriculture should be
finished in a short time, and thus all farm work should be done with the
help of machines and chemistry. This is precisely our goal in the rural
technical revolution.

Another important aspect of finding a solution to the rural question
is to carry out the cultural revolution.

It is only when the cultural revolution is carried out in the rural
areas that it becomes possible to farm on a scientific and technological
basis through raising the cultural and technical levels of the peasants,
to free them from outdated conventions and to abolish thoroughly the
cultural lag of the countryside.

The abolition of illiteracy presented itself as a prime objective in
the rural cultural revolution.

In the past our peasants were deprived of their right to learn and
lived in ignorance and darkness, and this was due to the policy of the
Japanese imperialists to keep the Korean nation in ignorance.
Immediately after liberation there were over 2,300,000 unlettered
adults in the northern half of our country, and in the main they were
peasants. Unless illiteracy was wiped out in the rural areas, the
peasants could not be organized and mobilized to build a new country, let alone be equipped with progressive ideas.

Our Party defined the abolition of illiteracy as the first task to be settled in the rural cultural revolution and ensured that this was done under the state’s coordinated plan and guidance, through an all-people movement.

We formed anti-illiteracy guiding committees in the capital and provinces and set up Korean alphabet schools throughout the country, and led the whole population to turn out in the campaign against illiteracy under the slogan “Let’s abolish illiteracy first for the cultural improvement of the people!”

The campaign against illiteracy was waged energetically in an all-people movement, with the result that at last, in March 1949, a historic victory was won in completely abolishing illiteracy in the rural areas. The complete abolition of illiteracy in the rural areas was a gratifying success in the cultural revolution. It made it possible to raise the levels of culture and knowledge of the peasants further and to push ahead energetically with the ideological and technical revolutions in the rural areas.

Our Party eliminated the colonial slave education system of the Japanese imperialists and made education democratic, thus opening up learning for the sons and daughters of the peasants. It also set up the study-while-you-work system of education and established adult schools in all farm villages, thereby enabling the peasants who had never had the opportunity to learn to acquire systematically the general knowledge of a primary school leaver.

At the same time, in order to raise the cultural level of the peasants, our Party saw to it that democratic information halls were built in the farm villages and ri and that, with these as centres, a variety of cultural enlightenment work, including the diffusion of scientific knowledge, was conducted on a large scale. In this way, it ensured that the peasants rid themselves of their medieval ignorance and darkness within a short time.

As private farming was reorganized along cooperative lines and
agricultural science and technology developed rapidly, the need to raise the peasants’ level of general knowledge and their scientific and technological standards became more pressing.

Unless the peasants heightened their cultural and technical levels in step with the developing situation, they could neither hasten the introduction of machinery and chemicals into agriculture nor farm on a scientific and technological basis.

Our Party set the task of raising the peasants’ cultural and technical levels to the standard of a middle school leaver and let all the agricultural workers who had not attended middle school go to the working people’s middle school to learn general knowledge and agricultural skills. Along with this, our Party saw that a hall for the propagation of agricultural science and technology was built in every ri to popularize systematically scientific and technological knowledge among the peasants.

The adult education and dissemination of scientific and technological knowledge were promoted in the rural areas and, as a result, all the adults who had never had the opportunity to learn in the past graduated from working people’s middle school, and the cultural and technical levels of our peasants generally reached those of a middle school leaver.

While raising the peasants’ cultural and technical levels, our Party directed great efforts towards the work of training a large number of competent agricultural technicians.

According to the Party’s line of building a comprehensive cadre-training centre in every province, an agricultural, a medical and an educational university were set up in every province to train locally a large number of cadres, including agricultural technicians, public health workers and educationists. Today, as a result of this, every cooperative farm in our country has dozens of technicians and experts, and they play the core role in the cultural, technical and ideological revolutions in the rural areas.

Based on the successes it gained in raising the cultural and technical levels of the peasants and in training agricultural technicians, our Party
has set the task of making every peasant acquire the general knowledge of a senior middle school leaver, as well as at least one kind of skill, in the near future and is endeavouring to achieve this, and has also set the far-reaching goal of making all the peasants intellectuals.

Another important aspect of the rural cultural revolution is to improve the peasants’ living conditions and amenities with regard to hygiene and culture.

Previously our peasants had lived in very unhealthy and unhygienic conditions and suffered from all manner of misery and distress because of various epidemics and diseases. Without rebuilding the rural areas to meet hygiene and cultural requirements and eliminating the sources of epidemics and diseases, it was impossible to provide a happy, modern life for the peasants.

Our Party conducted energetic hygiene enlightenment work among the peasants, so that they observed the rules of personal hygiene and acquired the habit of keeping their houses and villages neat and clean. At the same time, it launched a mass movement to improve the hygiene facilities in the rural areas.

In order to eradicate various epidemics and wipe out diseases and endemics in the rural areas, disease prevention committees were formed in the capital, provinces, cities, counties and ri, the campaign against infectious diseases intensified, and steps taken to open a clinic or a subclinic in every ri. In particular, the system of universal free medical care was introduced even under the difficult circumstances of the war. Thus, the peasants who had had no opportunity to consult a doctor even when they fell ill in the past came to enjoy the benefits of modern medical services.

As the economic foundations of the country were consolidated, our Party continuously improved medical facilities for the peasants and put forward, at its Fifth Congress, the policy of developing the clinics in the rural areas into hospitals. With the brilliant implementation of this policy, the peasants, like the city dwellers, can now receive the medical assistance of specialists at any time.

To provide a water supply system is of importance in developing
the rural areas in a cultured way and improving the living conditions of the peasants. Our Party took measures to provide the countryside with a water supply system to relieve the peasants on the plains of their problem with drinking water and to free the rural women from the toil of carrying water jars on their heads. With the implementation of the policy of laying water pipes in the farm villages, the practice of carrying a water jar on the head, which was the scourge of rural women for thousands of years, is no longer seen in our rural areas and peasants everywhere have been freed from the problem of drinking water.

Our Party directed great efforts towards the opening of bus services in the rural areas to improve the living conditions of the peasants. Thus, in our countryside today, bus services have been opened even in the remote mountain village, and, consequently, the peasants’ life has been made more convenient and the ties between town and country strengthened further.

Our Party has always paid close attention to improving the peasants’ housing and has built a large number of modern houses in the countryside at state expense. Today straw-thatched houses are no more to be seen in our countryside and cozy modern houses, nurseries, kindergartens, bathhouses, barber’s shops and other cultural and welfare facilities have been built throughout the rural areas, so that all the peasants enjoy as good a cultured life as the people in towns.

Our Party has made strenuous efforts to improve the dissemination of publications and broadcasting work for the rural areas. In our rural areas today the introduction of a cable-radio service has already been completed and the introduction of television is being promoted successfully, and every family receives newspapers and magazines.

As a result of the successful progress of the cultural revolution in the rural areas, our countryside, where once illiteracy and ignorance prevailed, has changed beyond recognition and become a modern, socialist countryside where it is good to live.
4. ON THE STATUS AND ROLE
OF THE COUNTY IN THE CONSTRUCTION
OF A SOCIALIST COUNTRYSIDE

In order to find a creditable solution to the rural question, it is necessary to establish a certain area as the unit of coordinated and comprehensive guidance for the rural areas and, with this as the base, to guide rural work.

Rural work is very difficult and complex: it has as its objects farm villages scattered across the country, work sites dispersed over wide areas and peasants who work in many different places. Although once agriculture has been reorganized along cooperative lines, the dispersed nature of the rural areas is reduced markedly compared to the days of private farming, it still remains the predominant feature in the countryside. Therefore, it is impossible to direct agriculture and the rural ideological, technical and cultural revolutions successfully without definite regional bases.

Farm production, unlike industrial production, is subject, in a large measure, to the influence of natural and geographical conditions. These conditions differ from place to place, and the variation in them is particularly great in our country. This demands that certain regional units be designated as bases for the guidance of agriculture and that concrete guidance be given to farming to suit the features of the area concerned.

Proceeding from the specific conditions in our country, our Party chose the county out of the province, county and ri administrative units, and defined it as the base to offer comprehensive guidance to rural work.

The county is ideal as the regional unit for the coordinated and comprehensive guidance of rural work in view of its size, its natural
and economic conditions and its control of cadres, leadership bodies and material, technical and cultural means.

In our country there are 20 to 30 cooperative farms and some 10,000 hectares of cultivated land in each county on average. This is a moderate size to guide the rural economy by industrial methods of management and to make efficient use of modern technical means.

Moreover, within the bounds of a county the natural and geographical conditions, the levels of economic and cultural development and the customs of the population are much the same.

The county has Party, administrative and economic organs capable of giving coordinated and comprehensive guidance to all branches of activity in its bounds and also has trading, cultural and health service establishments that cater to the people’s material and cultural needs. It also has such state enterprises in the service of agriculture as a farm machine station, a farm implement factory, an irrigation administration office and an epizootic prevention centre, as well as local factories.

In our country the county is the lowest unit of leadership in the state administrative system, and it guides the rural areas directly; it is the comprehensive unit of local economic and cultural development. The development of local industry and agriculture, rural construction and supply work for the countryside are conducted with the county as the unit; education, culture and health services, too, develop with the county as the basis.

The county is the base for linking the towns with the countryside in all spheres of politics, the economy and culture. Party lines and all its relevant policies are conveyed to the farm villages via the county, and it is through the county that economic ties between industry and agriculture are established. The advanced socialist culture and technical civilization of cities are also introduced into the rural areas through the medium of the county.

Therefore, the county should be strengthened and its role enhanced in every way to develop the local economy and culture evenly and to step up the ideological, technical and cultural
revolutions energetically in the rural areas and thereby to abolish the difference between town and country and the distinctions between the working class and the peasantry and to find a good solution to the rural question.

As early as 1952 our Party saw to it that the state administrative system was revamped so that the sub-county, which had played the role of intermediary between the county and ri, was abolished and the county was divided into smaller parts for the county to guide the ri directly. After that, too, it took various measures to consolidate the county. Through the struggle to carry out the tasks advanced at the Changsong Joint Conference of Local Party and Economic Officials in 1962 and the Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country, great success has been achieved in the work of strengthening the county and enhancing its role.

Our Party directed great efforts, above all else, to building up the county as the political and ideological base of the area concerned and to enhancing its role.

The county, as the lowest unit of Party and administrative guidance in our country, serves as the political base for conveying the lines and policies of the Party to the rural areas and for organizing their implementation directly. The farmers are kept informed of the lines and policies of the Party and the Government through the county and carry them out under the leadership of the county. Therefore, whether the Party’s lines and policies are implemented correctly or not depends entirely on how the county, as the political and ideological base, organizes and guides political work.

The most important aspect of elevating the role of the county as a political base is to strengthen the leadership role of the county Party committee.

The county Party committee is the political general staff which directly conducts Party organizational and ideological work in the rural areas and exercises coordinated control over and directs all the affairs of the county. We ensured that the county Party committee played the role of helmsman skilfully to make the county people’s
committee, the county cooperative farm management committee and the other administrative and economic organizations in the county organize and carry out economic and cultural activities properly in the rural areas in conformity with Party policy, and worked well with the rural cadres, Party members and cooperative farmers, thereby putting great efforts into organizing and mobilizing all personnel and agricultural workers to implement the Party’s agricultural policy. In particular, we intensified ideological education among the officials of county organizations and encouraged all of them to cultivate the traits of the revolutionary who, clearly informed of Party policy, thinks and acts as required by it at all times and in all places, and strives to carry it out to the end with a high sense of responsibility and great enthusiasm. We also persuaded all personnel to visit the masses, listen to and meet their demands and lead them forward by setting examples at all times in accordance with the Chongsanri spirit, the Chongsanri method.

With the county Party committee’s work improved and the officials’ sense of responsibility and enthusiasm heightened, socialist rural construction forged ahead at a great pace.

Our Party also strove to consolidate the county as the economic base, the supply base for the rural areas.

The most important aspect of consolidating the county in this way is to develop local industry on a large scale.

The development of local industry makes it possible to improve the people’s standard of living rapidly by producing a large amount of goods with less investment. Building a large factory requires major funding and involves the construction of many additional facilities, including a nursery and a kindergarten, as well as the recruitment of workers from other places. But this is not necessary in erecting small- and medium-sized local factories. If we make effective use of local resources, we can easily build local factories and begin production quickly.

To develop local industry is advantageous in popularizing the advanced management methods of industry and in introducing its
techniques and cultured ways of production in the rural areas and in exerting the political and ideological influence of the working class on the peasantry. It also makes it possible to build reasonable numbers of factories even in remote mountainous areas to ensure the development of all the regions of the country, to strengthen the ties between industry and agriculture and to eliminate the difference between town and country quickly.

At the June 1958 Plenary Meeting of its Central Committee our Party set the policy of developing local industry on a large scale and of building small- and medium-sized local factories to produce consumer goods in every county, through a mass movement.

Our Party ensured that the creative energies of the masses and local initiative were displayed to the full, and that the idle materials and equipment in the provinces and rustic techniques were widely used to lay the foundations for local industry. Upholding the Party’s policy, the working people throughout the country rose as one in the struggle to build local factories. As a result, more than 10 local factories, including textile, food and furniture factories, were constructed in each county in a very short space of time with little state investment.

In developing local industry our Party followed the policy of encouraging the regions to satisfy their own demands for consumer goods by making good use of the mountains in the mountainous areas and turning the sea to good account in the coastal areas, in keeping with natural and geographical conditions. This policy brought local initiative into full play and made it possible to harness local resources and potential in increasing the production of consumer goods, thereby further consolidating the county as the supply base for the rural areas.

Now that the foundations of local industry had been laid, our Party made vigorous efforts to develop it further.

It is only when the backward techniques of local factories are replaced with up-to-date techniques and the material and technical foundations of these factories are consolidated, that local industry can improve the quality of the goods it produces and increase their variety.
to satisfy the needs of the population. We made sure that production processes at these factories were mechanized and automated by stages as the foundations of local industry were laid and the engineering industry developed.

One important principle observed by our Party in developing local industry is to ensure that production relies on locally available raw materials.

We encouraged all local factories to build up their own reliable raw materials bases and make effective use of them in keeping with the regional characteristics and, at the same time, to purchase and process the peasants’ agricultural produce and sideline products promptly. Thus, we ensured that these factories not only put production onto a regular basis without suffering any shortage of raw materials, but also stimulated the development of agricultural production on cooperative farms and of sidelines in the rural areas.

At present our local industry has been modernized on the whole and reached a high stage of development, turning out a variety of good-quality consumer goods in large quantities. Local industry makes a great contribution to raising the material and cultural standards of the people and meets the demands of the population for consumer items in all the regions, mainly with the goods it produces itself.

It is very important in enhancing the role of the county as the supply base for the countryside to set up good trade networks and strengthen commodity circulation.

Manufactured goods produced in towns are supplied to the rural areas through trade networks, and agricultural produce and sideline products turned out in the rural areas are supplied to the towns through the same media. So, well-organized trade networks and improved commodity circulation are essential to conduct economic exchange smoothly between town and country and between industry and agriculture, to satisfy the demands of the rural population for manufactured goods and those of the urban population for agricultural produce, and to accelerate further the development of industry and agriculture.
As agriculture developed rapidly and the incomes of the peasants rose, their demands for various high-quality goods increased, and with the development of socialist industry, conditions were created to satisfy their demands for manufactured goods better. This new state of affairs required that the commercial ties between town and country were further strengthened by enhancing the role of the county and that trade in the rural areas was greatly improved.

Our Party advanced the policy of converting the county into the supply base for the countryside and the rural ri into the cell of supply, and took steps to reorganize the trading system accordingly, in a rational way.

We placed retail trade under local leadership and control. In order to strengthen local control over retail trade, we set up a trade department under the county people’s committee, formed, in the county, a retail trade management office, which is a business-accounting enterprise, and placed under it rural ri shops, rural consignment shops and a county building-materials shop. This made it possible to strengthen the administrative leadership and economic and technical guidance of trade. In particular, this opened up the possibility of creatively organizing the work of commodity supply to the population in a way that suited the regional characteristics and it also enhanced the local government bodies’ responsibility for the people’s livelihood and their role.

Furthermore, we separated rural trade from the cooperative farms and reorganized it so that it fell under state operation.

While merging the cooperatives, after the completion of agricultural cooperation, with the ri as the unit, we made the cooperatives control and organize production, distribution and trade in a coordinated manner. This step helped to consolidate the economic foundations of the cooperatives and improve the peasants’ standard of living. However, as the peasants’ livelihood improved and their demands for commodities rose gradually closer to the level of the city dwellers, it became necessary to raise the level of trade in the countryside to the level of urban trade. Meanwhile, since the
production scale of cooperative farms grew larger and their management activities became more complex, it became necessary to free them from such burdens as running shops, which were out of their line, and to make them concentrate all their efforts on the development of agricultural production. Proceeding from this, our Party reorganized trade in the rural areas into state trade and set up a unitary state trading system in town and country.

The establishment of a unitary state trading system enabled the county to distribute the trade networks more rationally in the rural areas and ensure that goods were supplied to the peasants more smoothly.

With a view to improving the supply of goods to the rural areas, we organized many forms of trade network and brought them closer to farm villages as far as possible and, in particular, we paid close attention to ensuring a smooth supply of manufactured goods to the peasants in the mountainous areas which lacked traffic facilities. In this way, we ensured that socialist trade made a positive contribution to reducing the distinctions between town and country and between the peasants of flat and hilly areas in their standard of living. In our country now the distinctions between urban and rural areas have already been eliminated in commodity circulation; even in the remote mountainous areas the same kinds of goods are supplied at the same prices as in the towns.

Along with an adequate supply of goods by the county to the farm villages, it is important to straighten out the purchasing system and strengthen purchasing work in keeping with the rapid growth of agricultural production and with the diversified development of agriculture. We ensured that reliable purchasing bases including purchasing stations and daily-necessities and foodstuff purchasing shops were established in the counties and that agricultural produce and rural sideline products were procured promptly through on-the-spot purchase, mobile purchase, consignment purchase, contract purchase and various other means. We also improved the system and methods of purchasing and steadily enhanced the standard
of service of the purchasing workers and their sense of responsibility to suit the requirements of the developing situation.

By so doing our counties have now been consolidated as the supply bases for the rural areas, admirably fulfilling their role as the bases which maintain the economic ties between town and country.

In order to enhance its role in socialist rural construction, the county should be set up as the reliable base of the cultural revolution.

It is only when the county is well established as the base of the cultural revolution that it is possible to successfully introduce the advanced culture of towns in the rural areas, to clear the countryside of feudalistic ideological legacies and backward customs and to transform the peasants’ ideological consciousness and way of life along socialist lines.

In building up the county as the base of the cultural revolution, our Party has directed its primary efforts towards reinforcing educational institutions and improving educational work.

All the members of our younger generation receive compulsory schooling and, after finishing school, go to work in local factories and on cooperative farms. The success of the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions in the countryside, therefore, depends largely on how the schools educate their pupils and students. When schools send them out to the rural areas after educating them to be ideologically sound, knowledgeable and well-mannered, the young people can fulfil their role with credit as builders of the socialist countryside.

Today every rural village in our country has primary and senior middle schools and the county has technical colleges. We have strengthened Party guidance in the work of schools and ensured that the principles of socialist pedagogy have become fully embodied in education, thereby bringing up the pupils and students to be people of a new type equipped with a good stock of knowledge, moral purity and physical fitness, to be builders of socialism. At the same time, we have built up county Party schools and other cadre-training establishments in the counties and are training and reorientating junior rural cadres. By so
doing the counties themselves are training a large number of the cadres who are needed in building a socialist countryside.

Moreover, the county seats are equipped with mass culture halls, bookshops, libraries, cable-radio studios and various other facilities for ideological and cultural education and, through the medium of these, the ideological and cultural education of the population in county seats and farm villages is being intensified.

In order to improve medical services to the rural communities we have concentrated great efforts on modernizing county hospitals and turning village clinics into hospitals and, for the rural women, we have set up a maternity hospital in every county and introduced the sectional midwife system.

Establishing good county seats is of great importance in stepping up the cultural revolution in the countryside.

Peasants in farm villages often go to county seats although they cannot visit large cities frequently. They go to county seats and learn a great deal of advanced culture and about the socialist way of life. So beautiful and clean county seats should be established as models for farm villages.

Our Party saw to it that a rural construction corps was formed in each county to undertake the building of the county seat along with rural construction within the county. At the same time, it was ensured that good cultural and welfare establishments such as schools, hospitals, mass culture halls, shops, restaurants, bathhouses and barber’s shops in the county seats were established in a mass movement and that houses and streets were kept clean. As a result, all our county seats are now tidy and attractive, and they have become models in the cultural revolution in the countryside.

Our Party’s policy of building up reliable counties and enhancing their role has brought excellent results in the building of the socialist countryside and in the political, economic and cultural development of the regions. In the future, too, we will continue to consolidate the counties and heighten their role in the struggle for the final solution of the rural question and the building of communism.

386
For over 30 years since the liberation our Party has waged an energetic campaign for the solution of the rural question and, in the course of this, has won truly great successes and victories.

Now our Party is confronted with an honourable yet heavy task: on the basis of the successes already achieved in the construction of a socialist countryside it should make the peasants revolutionary and working-class, rapidly industrialize and modernize agriculture, transform cooperative property into the property of the entire people, and thus settle the rural question once and for all.

The officials of state and economic organs bear a very heavy responsibility in the struggle for the final solution of the rural question. I hope you will step up the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions vigorously in the rural areas and thus win greater success in the struggle for the final solution of the rural question.
LET US STEP UP SOCIALIST CONSTRUCTION
UNDER THE BANNER OF THE JUCHE IDEA

Report at the National Celebration
of the 30th Anniversary of the Foundation
of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea

September 9, 1978

Comrades,

Thirty years have passed since the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea proclaimed its birth to the whole world.

In the past 30 years our people, holding their destiny firmly in their own hands under the banner of the Republic, have travelled a revolutionary path that is resplendent with victory and glory.

Today all the people of our country are jubilantly celebrating the 30th anniversary of the foundation of the DPRK with feelings of great national pride and the high honour of being victors, under the solemn circumstances in which energetic efforts are being made to carry out the Second Seven-Year Plan, a magnificent programme of socialist construction, with success.

On this historic day, I warmly congratulate our heroic people who have worked with complete devotion for the prosperity and development of the Republic and the triumph of the cause of socialism and communism.

On this memorable day, I send warm congratulations and militant greetings to the entire people of south Korea, particularly the revolutionaries, youth and students and the patriotic democrats who,
looking up to our Republic as a beacon of hope, are fighting resolutely for their right to live, their democratic freedom, national reunification and for the victory of the revolution.

I also extend warm greetings to our 600,000 fellow countrymen in Japan and to all other overseas Koreans who are struggling courageously in foreign lands for their democratic, national rights and for their socialist homeland with feelings of great national pride as citizens of our Republic.

Many revolutionary fighters and patriots fell in the hard yet worthwhile battle for the country’s independence and for the Republic. I pay the highest tribute to the memory of our immortal revolutionary forerunners and patriotic martyrs who laid down their precious lives in the cause of the country’s freedom and liberation, of the foundation of the Republic and its strengthening and development. The meritorious service rendered by our anti-Japanese revolutionary forerunners and patriotic martyrs will long abide with the name of the Republic in the nation’s history.

Many Party and government delegations and foreign friends have come to our country to celebrate the 30th anniversary of the DPRK. On behalf of the Government of the Republic and the entire Korean people, I extend a hearty welcome to these people who have come to celebrate our people’s national holiday.

Comrades,
The foundation of the DPRK is a great gain of our revolution.

The Korean communists and patriotic people waged a long, hard struggle to overthrow the colonial rule of Japanese imperialism, achieve the country’s independence and establish their own state power. In the crucible of the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle, the brilliant traditions of our revolution were established and solid foundations were laid for establishing the people’s government.

After liberation our people set up the people’s government and carried out democratic reforms successfully under the leadership of the Workers’ Party of Korea and, on the basis of this, founded the DPRK in September 1948.
The foundation of the DPRK was a great, historic event in the development of our revolution and in the life of our people. With the birth of the DPRK our people became the genuine masters of the state and society and a mighty and dignified people whom no one would dare touch. The foundation of the Republic provided our people with a powerful weapon for the revolution and construction and enabled them to stand proudly in the international arena under the banner of an independent and sovereign state. Indeed, the establishment of the DPRK marked the emergence of an independent people and signified the solemn declaration of the birth of Juche Korea.

Over the past three decades, since its foundation, the DPRK has travelled a road of hard struggle and glorious victory and accomplished immortal feats for the sake of the country and the people. The Government of the Republic has led the masses of the people to promote the revolution and construction with vigour and thus established the most advanced socialist system in this land where exploitation and oppression had once prevailed, and turned our once poor and backward country into an independent socialist state with its own solid, independent national economy, brilliant national culture and powerful national defence. The thirty years of the Republic have been years of victory and glory, years of creation and prosperity.

Our Republic has now reached the zenith of its prosperity. The socialist system in our country is becoming consolidated and developed with every passing day and the Republic is steadily gaining in scope and strength in all areas—political, economic, cultural and military. Under the care of the Republic our people are provided in full with true freedom and rights, and enjoy all the material and cultural benefits they desire. Our Republic fully exercises its rights as an independent state in the international arena and has friends and sympathizers throughout the world. Never before in our nation’s 5,000-year history has our country so flourished or demonstrated its grandeur to the whole world.

Our Republic has won the absolute support and confidence of our people through its 30 years of struggle. All the people of Korea have
unbounded love for the Republic and give unqualified support to all the lines and policies of the Government of the Republic. Our people are fully convinced, through their actual experience, that only the Republic can bring them a happy life, and they see a happier future in its strengthening and development.

It is a source of infinite honour and pride for all the people of our country to live and conduct the revolution as citizens of the Republic and they are fully confident that they can build a socialist and communist paradise in their homeland under the banner of the Republic. Today our people are fired with the determination to fight with complete devotion for the safeguarding of the Republic and for its prosperity and development.

1. LET US THOROUGHLY EMBODY THE JUCHE IDEA IN STATE ACTIVITY AND ENERGETICALLY CONDUCT THE THREE REVOLUTIONS

Comrades,

The Democratic People’s Republic of Korea is the banner of freedom and independence for our people and a powerful weapon for building socialism and communism.

Proceeding from the general task of our revolution, the Government of the Republic has persevered in its efforts to accelerate the building of socialism in the northern half of Korea, support the revolutionary struggle of the south Korean people and strengthen unity with the peoples of the world.

In the struggle for the reunification and independence of the country and the building of a new society, the Government of the Republic has thoroughly implemented the revolutionary line of independence, self-support and self-reliant defence in all spheres of
state activity, with the Juche idea of our Party as its invariable guiding principle.

Political independence is the lifeblood of an independent and sovereign state. A government with independence alone can defend the dignity of the country and the people and push ahead energetically with the revolution and construction.

The Government of the Republic has firmly maintained independence since the first day of its existence. It has formulated all its lines and policies independently in conformity with the actual situation in our country and carried them out, relying on the strength of our people themselves. We have repudiated dogmatism and the worship of major powers, solved all the problems that arise in the revolution and construction at our own discretion, and accepted approved theories and foreign experience to suit the interests of our revolution.

The Government of the Republic develops friendly and cooperative relations with other countries on the principles of complete equality and mutual respect and deals with all international issues according to its own judgement and conviction. We never dance to the tune of others or allow outsiders to meddle in the internal affairs of our country. The prestige of our country as an independent and sovereign state and the dignity of our people consist precisely in the fact that the Government of the Republic adheres strictly to independence.

In order to consolidate the country’s political independence and ensure complete independence, it is necessary to build an independent national economy.

Economic independence is the material basis of political independence and independence. The building of an independent national economy is essential for consolidating national independence, exercising sovereign rights and providing a prosperous material life for the people.

The Government of the Republic set the line of building an independent national economy, and has adhered to the revolutionary principle of self-reliance. As a result, it has built an admirable
independent national economy fed with our own raw materials, run by our own skills and our own cadres and comprehensively developed and equipped with modern technology. Today our economy satisfies all the needs of socialist construction and of the life of the people with its own production and continues to develop at a high rate, unaffected by any economic upheavals in the world.

Self-reliance in national defence is a fundamental principle in building an independent and sovereign state.

Without a self-reliant defence capability it is impossible to defend one’s national independence and safeguard the revolutionary gains and the people’s security. In fact, a state which does not have the power to defend itself cannot be called a fully independent state.

Because we had founded regular revolutionary armed forces in good time and built up the country’s defence capability, we defended with honour the country’s independence and the gains of the revolution in the three-year long Fatherland Liberation War against the American imperialist aggressors.

The Government of the Republic has carried out the Party’s military line, the essence of which is to train the whole army into a cadre army, to modernize it, to arm all the people and to fortify the whole country, and has, in this way, strengthened our People’s Army to make it a revolutionary armed force each member of which is a match for a hundred foes, and converted the whole land into an impregnable fortress. Today we can say with confidence that our defence power is invincible and capable of completely smashing any enemy invasion.

The Government of the Republic has thoroughly implemented the revolutionary line of independence, self-support and self-reliant defence in all areas of the revolution and construction, and thus turned our country into a mighty socialist state that is politically independent, economically self-supporting and self-reliant in national defence.

The great changes and brilliant successes achieved in our country in the 30 years since the foundation of the Republic bear witness to the correctness and vitality of the line of independence, self-support
and self-reliant defence.

In future, too, the Government of the Republic will fully apply the Juche idea in all fields of state activity and thus hasten the historic cause of equipping the whole of society with the Juche idea.

Equipping the whole of society with the Juche idea is the ultimate goal of the Government of the Republic. The Government should turn all members of society into communist people of a Juche type and completely transform the whole of society in conformity with the requirements of the Juche idea and thus take the ideological and material fortresses of communism.

The struggle to equip the whole of society with the Juche idea is, in essence, a struggle to guarantee the full independence of the working masses. The full independence of the working masses demands that the legacies of the old society be eliminated from all domains of social life—political, economic, ideological and cultural—and society be reorganized along revolutionary lines in all aspects of its basis and super-structure. Therefore, if a working-class state is to accomplish the historic task of providing complete independence for the working masses, it should transform the old social system and, at the same time, carry out the revolution in the ideological, technical and cultural fields, too.

The ideological, technical and cultural revolutions are posed as a particularly important question in those countries—formerly colonies or semi-colonies—which have won their independence and are building a new society. The countries which were once under imperialist colonial rule are now backward ideologically, technically and culturally, so conducting the three revolutions is very difficult and complex and takes more effort and time in these countries.

After the democratic and socialist revolutions emerge victorious and the socialist system is established, the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions pose themselves as the fundamental revolutionary task facing the working-class state.

With the establishment of the socialist system, the socio-political independence of the working masses is achieved, but the task of
completely freeing them from the fetters of old ideas and the restrictions of nature still remains. Therefore, after the establishment of the socialist system, it is necessary to consolidate and develop this system without cease and, at the same time, to step up the work of comprehensively remoulding the people and harnessing nature through the vigorous promotion of the three revolutions. This is the way to achieve the complete independence of the working masses in all spheres.

In the first days of building a new society, the Government of the Republic put forward the policy of carrying out the three revolutions—ideological, technical and cultural—and has since been consistent in implementing it.

After the victorious conclusion of the socialist revolution, the Government of the Republic stipulated that the three revolutions should be the main content of the revolution in socialist society and the task of the continuous revolution until communism had been built, and has conducted the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions with vigour ever since. With the three revolutions forging ahead dynamically, our revolution and construction have progressed very rapidly and shining victories and successes have been achieved in all spheres of politics, the economy and culture. Holding aloft the three red banners of the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions, our people are now advancing with vigour in the spirit of Chollima, spurred on by the speed campaign, towards the high peak of socialism and communism.

Of the three revolutions, the ideological revolution is the most important.

The ideological revolution is the work of remoulding human beings to form communist revolutionaries of the working people through making them revolutionary and working-class and is political work to enhance their revolutionary enthusiasm and creative initiative.

In leading the revolutionary struggle and construction work the Government of the Republic has always regarded the ideological revolution as the most important revolutionary task and adhered
strictly to the principle of keeping it in advance of all other work.

As a result of the successful progress of the ideological revolution, our people’s ideological and moral qualities have undergone a great change.

All the working people have been equipped solidly with our Party’s revolutionary ideology, the Juche idea, and the whole of society is pervaded with this idea. Today all our people are intensely loyal to our Party and the Government of our Republic and, when dictated by the revolution, fight valiantly through fire and water.

We have also scored a great success in remoulding the working people after the revolutionary and working-class patterns. All the working people have been closely armed with the progressive thinking of the working class, and work, study and live in a communist way under the slogan, “One for all and all for one”. All our working people have now become revolutionary so that they love work and struggle and make continuous innovations and advance without interruption.

The ideological revolution has further strengthened the political and ideological unity of our people. All the people are united solidly in one mind and one purpose on the basis of the Juche idea, and the whole of society has become a huge revolutionary family living in harmony, all the members of which help and lead each other forward. No force can ever break the political and ideological unity of our people that is based on the Juche idea. The indestructible unity and cohesion of our people is a sure guarantee for the prosperity of the Republic and the final victory of our revolution.

Today our revolution and construction have entered on a new, higher stage of development. We should step up the building of socialism and communism further by intensifying the ideological revolution without cease in compliance with the new requirements of the revolution.

It is an irrevocable requirement of the revolution to keep strengthening the ideological revolution. Unless this revolution is steadily intensified in socialist society, obsolete ideas may be revived in the minds of the people and capitalist thoughts spread by the
imperialists may infiltrate from outside. Moreover, with the livelihood of the people improving and as they feel no worries about food, clothing and housing, if the ideological revolution is halted, their revolutionary enthusiasm may cool. Only when the ideological revolution is stepped up without cease can the difficult yet important task of re-educating the people in communism be fulfilled with success and the revolution and construction be advanced without interruption.

The central task of the ideological revolution at present is to equip all the members of society closely with the Juche idea. By intensifying education in the Juche idea further, we should see to it that all the working people equip themselves fully with the Juche revolutionary outlook and fight energetically for the comprehensive victory of the Juche idea.

Because they have their socialist homeland of Juche, our people have become a most dignified and proud people. All the working people should be educated to love their socialist homeland passionately and to fight resolutely for its prosperity.

Our struggle is not yet over and we are still on the revolutionary road. All the people should surmount every obstacle and difficulty with courage, a high degree of revolutionary ardour and a firm belief in their victory, and they should fight on unyieldingly until the final victory of the revolutionary cause.

The technical revolution is an important component of the three revolutions.

The technical revolution is a solemn revolutionary task to promote the people’s material well-being steadily and to free the working people from arduous labour through developing the productive forces. It is only by conducting the technical revolution that it is possible to build an independent socialist national economy, free the working people from hard labour and provide them with an independent and creative working life.

The Government of the Republic set the technical revolution as a momentous revolutionary task for building a new society and a noble political task for enhancing the independence of the working people,
and launched it with vigour in all branches of the national economy.

By carrying out the technical revolution with energy, we eliminated the colonial one-sidedness and technical backwardness of the economy, that were a result of Japanese imperialist occupation, in a short period of time after liberation and, furthermore, accomplished the overall technical reconstruction of the national economy and fulfilled the historic task of socialist industrialization with honour. Following the accomplishment of socialist industrialization, the Government of the Republic set the three major tasks for the technical revolution, strove to carry them out, and has already achieved great success.

As a result of the successful promotion of the technical revolution, our economy has now been placed firmly on a modern scientific and technological basis and its strength has grown immeasurably.

Today the productive forces in our country have reached a very high level. Last year industrial production was 196 times greater than in 1946, and between 1946 and 1977 the share taken by the engineering industry in the total value of industrial output rose from 5.1 to 33.7 per cent. Domestic production meets 98 per cent of our needs for machinery and equipment, and our country now ranks among the developed nations with regard to the per-capita output of major industrial products.

The working people have been relieved, to a large extent, of arduous labour, and the people’s standard of living has risen markedly. Mechanization, automation and remote control are being widely introduced in the major sectors of industry, particularly the mining and metallurgical industries, and the industrialization and modernization of agriculture have made brisk headway, with the result that the working people are free, in a large measure, from heat-affected labour, harmful labour and other kinds of hard labour. The food industry has been developed, so that the household burden of our women has been greatly eased. Easier labour and the increased output of material wealth have enabled the people to enjoy a more prosperous and cultured life, free from any worry.

The Government of the Republic should continuously and
energetically advance the technical revolution, based on the success already achieved. In this way it should develop the productive forces to such an extent as to make it possible to realize communist distribution according to the needs of the individual, and should free the working people completely from the need to do arduous labour.

One important objective of the technical revolution is that, at the same time as promoting its three major tasks unremittingly, the national economy should be made Juche-oriented, modern and scientific.

This is the primary objective of the Second Seven-Year Plan, and constitutes the strategic line that must be consistently followed in the economic construction of socialism. In order to make the national economy Juche-oriented, modern and scientific, it is essential to promote the technical revolution with vigour and thus make the national economy more independent, improve the technical means and place the economy as a whole on a new, scientific basis.

The stress should be laid, above all else, on realizing the Juche-orientation of the national economy.

One important aspect of making the national economy Juche-oriented is to make more effective use of the country’s natural resources and improve the structure of the national economy further. There are rich deposits of a variety of mineral resources in our country. It is necessary to improve geological prospecting work to secure more mineral deposits and to locate all the mineral resources that have not yet been discovered. We should improve the structure of industry by creating new industrial branches and adhere strictly to the principle of developing an industry that is fed with domestic raw materials, and in this way we shall strengthen the independence and Juche character of our industry.

The modernization of the national economy means precisely the modernization of the technical means and the mechanization and automation of production. It is necessary to raise the level of the technical equipment in the national economy and to mechanize and automate all production. To do so, the work of making machines and
equipment that are precise, large in size and high-speed should be accelerated and a variety of modern machines and equipment developed and built in larger numbers.

An important task facing us today is to modernize transport. Recently the mining and manufacturing industries have been making rapid progress, but transport is failing to keep pace with them. We should step up the modernization of transport and increase carrying capacities markedly. The electrification of the railways should be completed swiftly, the automation of the railways stepped up, and loading and unloading operations mechanized. Our country is bordered by the sea on three sides and has many rivers, so we should move towards developing water transport on a wide scale by building many large cargo ships and constructing canals extensively. To build many large, modern cargo ships and develop marine transport is of great significance in expanding our foreign trade.

Through the development of science and technology, we should put production and technical processes, methods of production and business activities in all branches of the national economy on a modern, scientific basis. The officials of state and economic organizations, scientists and technicians should improve the scientific research work that is essential for making the national economy more scientific and introduce new advances in science and technology in production to raise the scientific level of our national economy to a higher standard in the near future.

In particular, we should work hard to make farming more scientific and modern. Agricultural production should be made more scientific and intensive by consolidating the success already achieved in the struggle to apply the Theses on the Socialist Rural Question in Our Country and by meeting in full the requirements of the Juche method of farming. At the same time, we should strive to accelerate the reclamation of tideland and obtain more land by the widespread use of modern technical means and scientific methods of operation.

The cultural revolution is one of the three revolutionary tasks devolving on the working-class state.
The cultural revolution is the only way to eliminate the cultural backwardness that remains from the old society, to create a socialist and communist culture and to turn all the members of society into comprehensively-developed communists.

As a result of the successful promotion of the cultural revolution in the past, a socialist national culture has blossomed and our people, who were once far removed from modern civilization, have become genuine masters and enjoyers of socialist culture.

Education has made tremendous progress in our country. With the advance of the revolution and construction, compulsory education has been introduced by stages, and today universal 11-year compulsory education is in force so that all the younger generation receive comprehensive general secondary schooling. In our country now 8.6 million children and students, accounting for over half the population, receive free education at state expense, growing up into communist revolutionaries. Through the successful promotion of adult education, all the working people acquired the general knowledge of the standard of a secondary school leaver and above long ago, and today they are studying hard to master the general knowledge of a senior middle school leaver. Indeed, our country has now become a “country of learning”, a “country of education”, where all the people study.

Great success has also been registered in the training of our own cadres. In our country, which did not have a single institution of higher learning before liberation, 158 colleges and universities have sprung up, a comprehensive cadre-training centre has been established in every region and a huge army of one million intellectuals has been developed to manage state, economic and cultural institutions admirably. Now the question of our own cadres has been completely solved here, where once we suffered so much from the lack of cadres.

Literature and art have risen to a high level, fully meeting the growing cultural needs of the people and greatly inspiring the working people in their revolutionary struggle.

The cultural revolution, which started with the elimination of illiteracy in our country after liberation, has advanced a long way
under the banner of the Republic and has now reached a very high standard where compulsory higher education is the objective. This is one of the most valuable achievements made by our Republic in the building of a new society, and it is a source of great pride for our people.

Currently, the most important task of the cultural revolution is to hasten the work of making the whole of society intellectual. Only when the cultural and technical standards of the entire population are improved radically through this work is it possible to build socialism and communism successfully, to destroy the distinctions in labour for good and to ensure the complete equality of the working people.

In order to make the whole of society intellectual, education should be developed further through the full implementation of the Theses on Socialist Education. The people’s government bodies should implement universal 11-year compulsory education at a high qualitative level and further improve adult and higher education. All the members of the younger generation should thus be brought up as communist revolutionaries of a Juché type, knowledgeable, morally impeccable and physically strong; all the working people should be made to acquire the general knowledge of a senior middle school leaver and master more than one modern technical skill at an early date; and the training of cadres should be improved.

It is an important task of the cultural revolution to establish thoroughly cultured habits in production and living, as well as a socialist way of life. This is indispensable for providing the working people with comfortable working and living conditions and for introducing a revolutionary way of life in the whole of society. The officials of people’s government bodies and all the working people should strive to make the factories, rural communities, towns and villages beautiful and keep them clean and tidy and to raise the quality of goods produced and make them more presentable. The strict observance of the socialist code of living and rules of conduct is required in all spheres of state activity and social life, as is the establishment in the whole of society of a more sound habit of working
and living in a revolutionary way.

Success in the cultural revolution calls for the thorough implementation of the line of building a socialist national culture. In all areas of building culture, we should firmly establish Juche, fully embody Party loyalty and the working-class spirit, and strongly reject capitalist and feudalistic elements and the corrupt Western way of life.

In order to promote the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions more energetically, our Party initiated the three-revolution team movement and took active measures to form three-revolution teams with politically and practically qualified Party hard-cores and young intellectuals and dispatch them to different branches of the national economy, such as factories, other enterprises and cooperative farms.

The three-revolution team movement is a contemporary method of guiding the revolution, which incorporates the Chongsanri method. In other words, this movement is a new method of revolutionary guidance that combines politico-ideological guidance with scientific-technological guidance, and encourages superiors to help their subordinates and rouses the masses to step up the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions.

One result of the three-revolution team movement that has been conducted briskly under the guidance of Party organizations is that the struggle for the three revolutions has become ever more organized and dynamic and great success has been achieved in all fields of socialist construction. Actual experience has shown that the three-revolution team movement is a most superior and viable method of revolutionary guidance which increases the fighting efficiency and leadership role of Party organizations, gives full scope to the functions of the state and economic agencies, and motivates the officials and working people to promote the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions vigorously.

We should continue to develop the three-revolution team movement, the advantages and vitality of which have been confirmed in practice.

In order to develop this movement, the members of the three-revolution teams should enhance their role and sense of responsibility. They are the advance guards of the three revolutions
and standard-bearers in battle. They should arm themselves closely with the Juche idea, always maintain a noble revolutionary spirit and go among the masses to bring their revolutionary enthusiasm and creative initiative into full play, so that the three revolutions are stepped up still further.

In order to ensure success in the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions, the three-revolution red flag movement should be developed energetically. This movement is a movement of the entire people that aims to give strong impetus to the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions to speed up socialist construction. This movement should be further stepped up in all fields of socialist construction to give a strong spur to the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions and to advance our revolution at a greater speed.

Today, the thorough implementation of the line of the three revolutions is the basic revolutionary task confronting the Government of the Republic in the struggle to build socialism and communism. Holding aloft the red banner of the three revolutions, the Government of the Republic should vigorously promote the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions and hasten the historic cause of the building of socialism and communism.

2. LET US SMASH THE “TWO KOREAS” PLOT AND PEACEFULLY REUNIFY THE COUNTRY

Comrades,

Even now, 30 years after the foundation of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, our nation remains divided and the country’s reunification is still the greatest national task facing all the people of Korea.

Reflecting the unanimous will and desire of all the Korean people, the Government of the Republic has made every possible effort to
solve the question of national reunification independently by peaceful means, according to democratic principles. But owing to the “two Koreas” plot of the separatists at home and abroad, the question of reunifying our country has run up against serious obstacles and the danger of perpetual national division is increasing all the time.

The American imperialists have set the “two Koreas” policy as the basis of their current strategy towards Korea and are resorting to all manner of plots and intrigue in order to realize it. The Japanese reactionaries, too, following the policy of American imperialism, are obstructing the reunification of our country in many ways. Under the aegis of the American imperialists and Japanese reactionaries, the south Korean puppet clique has overtly made national partition their policy and, raving about “simultaneous UN membership” and “cross recognition”, are making frantic efforts to create “two Koreas”.

The American imperialists are seeking to continue their occupation of south Korea and their rule over it by perpetuating the division of our country and rigging up “two Koreas”, and the Japanese reactionaries are trying to regain their old position as colonial rulers there. The south Korean puppet clique are trying to keep the present state of north-south partition intact in their efforts to secure an easy and comfortable life for themselves and realize their wild design to remain in office permanently.

On no account can we tolerate any plot of the separatists to rig up “two Koreas”; it should be smashed by the united strength of the entire Korean people.

Korea must, by all means, be reunified. The Korean nation is historically one nation and our people are unanimous in their longing for reunification. The forces opposed to Korea’s reunification are the external forces that are keen to invade and dominate Korea and, as for the corresponding internal forces, they are only a handful of quislings who are selling out the country and the people to foreign powers.

The Korean question is fundamentally different in nature from the question of a country that was divided as a consequence of a war it started and lost. Our country was neither a party to a war of aggression
nor was it defeated. Ours is a nation which had been oppressed under
the colonial yoke of imperialism and won its liberation by fighting the
imperialist aggressors. And even if our country is reunified, it will
neither attack nor threaten other countries. On the contrary, if Korea
remains divided, this will be a constant menace to peace in Asia and
throughout the rest of the world. Therefore, Korea must not be divided
into “two Koreas”, but must, by all means, be reunified, not only for
the vital interests of the Korean nation but also for lasting peace in Asia
and the world.

The question of Korean reunification should be solved in a peaceful
way through dialogue, as our people demand and the people the world
over desire.

The Government of the Republic is making every effort in all
sincerity to start dialogue for the peaceful settlement of the
reunification question and keeps the door to dialogue open at all
times. We are keeping the door open to discussion with the United
States and with the south Korean authorities and political parties
there, too.

If dialogue about the reunification of Korea is to take place and
make a practical contribution to solving the reunification question,
both parties to the dialogue should proceed from the right position, that
of sincerely desiring reunification. If one side pursues an ulterior
objective behind the screen of the talks or tries to use the talks as a
means to rig up “two Koreas”, instead of proceeding from the position
of seeking a solution to the reunification question through mutual
understanding and cooperation, the dialogue will not go well and will
be a sheer nonsense. We can by no means hold talks about division; we
should hold discussions only for reunification.

A dialogue and collaboration between north and south are an
important way of hastening the peaceful reunification of the country.

The north-south dialogue, opened to the satisfaction of all
concerned thanks to the sincere efforts of the Government of the
Republic, was broken off due to the mean perfidy of the south Korean
authorities and remains in abeyance to this day. The south Korean
authorities are talking loudly about “dialogue” and “collaboration” between north and south, but, in fact, they are pushing for confrontation and division all the time. They insist that we are seeking reunification under the banner of communism and stir up anti-communist feelings and ignite a war atmosphere in south Korea on the pretext of a fictitious “threat of southward invasion”, shouting for “reunification through prevailing over communism”. If they uphold the banner of “opposing communism” and “prevailing over communism”, how can they hope for dialogue and collaboration with communists? Of late, the south Korean authorities have put forward what they call “a plan for north-south economic cooperation”. But it does not stand to reason that they want to promote “economic cooperation” with communists at the same time as clamouring about “prevailing over communism”. This is nothing but a clumsy trick of the separatists to hide their true colours. If the south Korean authorities sincerely want dialogue and collaboration with us, they should change their policy of national division for a reunification policy and their anti-communist policy for a policy of alliance with communists.

The fundamental guarantee for independent and peaceful reunification lies in great national unity. Since different ideologies and social systems actually exist in the north and the south of our country, peaceful reunification is unthinkable apart from the idea and principle of great national unity. The struggle of our nation for reunification is by no means a struggle between communism and capitalism; it is a struggle between the invading and the invaded and between patriotism and treachery. In other words, our struggle for national reunification is a liberation struggle for national sovereignty and a patriotic struggle for national unity. In order to reunify the country, therefore, the north and the south should refrain from advancing communist and capitalist ideas respectively, and should put forward a common idea—the national idea—and, on the basis of this, achieve the great unity of the whole nation.

We will not impose our socialist system and communist ideology
on south Korea. We are ready to promote unity with any political party in south Korea in accordance with the idea of great national unity, without regard to the present institutions in south Korea and the ideologies cherished by its people. Furthermore, should some political party in south Korea want to come and operate in the northern half of Korea, we will welcome it. The south Korean authorities and political parties, too, should be willing to join hands with different political parties in the north, and should not oppose any political party from the north operating in south Korea. The cause of national reunification can be expedited only when the north and the south, proceeding thus from the idea of great national unity, fully open their societies to one another and realize diverse collaboration in all the political, economic, cultural and military fields.

With a view to achieving the great unity of the whole nation and the peaceful reunification of the country, south Korean society should become democratic.

It is in south Korea today that the most despotic and infamous fascist rule ever seen in history is maintained. Having established the fascist “Yusin system”, the south Korean puppet clique has brought in a number of wicked fascist laws and a huge apparatus of suppression to trample mercilessly upon the fundamental rights of the masses of the people and repress brutally the patriotic people and democrats who demand democracy and national reunification. Unless south Korean society is made democratic, its people cannot free themselves from their present plight in which they enjoy no rights and, moreover, national union cannot be achieved, nor can the way to peaceful reunification be sought.

In order to make south Korean society democratic, it is necessary, first of all, to abolish the “Yusin Constitution” and repeal the “anti-communist law”, “national security law” and other fascist laws. The unwarranted penalties inflicted on patriotic people and democrats under the “emergency measures” and the fascist laws should be revoked, and freedom of speech and of the press and the freedom of political parties and public organizations to conduct activities must be
ensured. The activities of the Revolutionary Party for Reunification and other underground political parties should be legalized, and the Korean organizations and patriotic people struggling abroad for democracy in south Korean society and for the independent, peaceful reunification of the country should be permitted to return to south Korea as they wish and engage in free political activities.

To guarantee freedom of activity for political parties and public organizations is the most fundamental requirement of democracy. In the northern half of Korea different political parties and public organizations are now operating freely, enjoying legal rights. In most of the world’s countries today freedom of activity is guaranteed for political parties and public organizations, and even in imperialist nations progressive parties, including Communist Parties, and public organizations have legal status. In south Korea, too, all the political parties and public organizations should naturally be granted the freedom and right to conduct lawful activities.

Even under the difficult circumstances in south Korea, where such harsh fascist suppression persists, people of all social strata and democrats are waging an unyielding struggle against fascism and for democracy to win democratic freedom and rights. The Korean nationals in Japan, the United States and other countries are also taking an active part in the righteous patriotic struggle for democracy in south Korean society and the independent, peaceful reunification of the country from a high sense of their national mission. The south Korean people should fight against the fascist forces of dictatorship with their own united and organized strength by forming a broad united front of all the democratic forces at home and abroad, irrespective of any differences in ideology, religious belief, party affiliation and political view. By doing this they will make south Korean society democratic and hasten the independent, peaceful reunification of the country.

In order to reunify the country independently by peaceful means, the interference of the United States and all other external forces must be rejected out of hand.
To our people, national sovereignty is their life and they will never tolerate interference from any external powers in the solution of the question of national reunification. It is high time that the United States stopped interfering in the internal affairs of our nation and left the Korean question well alone.

The United States should not protect the puppet regime that is strangling democracy and brutally repressing the people in south Korea, nor should it stand in the way of the south Korean people’s struggle for democracy and national reunification. If it fails to renounce its misguided policy of the past and continues to take the south Korean fascists, who are totally isolated at home and abroad, under its wing, the United States will be unable to avoid the strong condemnation of our people and people the world over as an accomplice in the suppression of human rights.

Furthermore, the United States should abandon its aggressive design to create “two Koreas” to continue its colonial rule in south Korea and then gobble up the whole of Korea; it should withdraw all its troops from south Korea as soon as possible in accordance with the UN resolution and its own “commitment”.

If the United States truly wants peace and the peaceful reunification of Korea, it should naturally contact the Government of the DPRK to seek a way of solving the Korean question peacefully. We have already made a proposal to hold negotiations with the United States and are making efforts to this end. The question is whether the United States sincerely wants to hold negotiations with us or not and, should it want to, whether it means to negotiate for a single Korea or for “two Koreas”. If it abandons its wrong stand of dividing our country into “two Koreas” and assumes a correct attitude to bring about the reunification of Korea, we will start talks at any time and settle all the outstanding problems. Then the United States will be able to leave the Korean question alone without damaging its own honour, and this will accord with the interests of both our people and the people of the United States.

The people in the northern half of Korea and in south Korea will
become ever more firmly united on the principle of great national unity and surely smash the “two Koreas” plot of the separatists at home and abroad and accomplish the historic cause of national reunification without fail.

3. NEWLY-EMERGING POWERS, UNITE AND FIGHT AGAINST IMPERIALISM AND ALL OTHER FORMS OF DOMINATIONISM

Comrades,

Today a fierce struggle is being conducted in the international arena between the forces of independence and those of dominationism, and between the forces of revolution and those of counter-revolution.

Alarmed at the daily expansion of the revolutionary forces in the world, the old and new dominationists are making desperate efforts to maintain their supremacy.

In pursuance of their invariable wild design to bring the whole world under their domination, the American imperialists are stepping up their preparations for war while fooling the people of the world by putting up the specious sign of “peace”. They continue to build up their armaments under the sign of “disarmament”, to conduct nuclear tests under the sign of “restrictions on nuclear weapons” and to make military intervention under the sign of “easing tension”. As their economic crisis deepens and their position gets more untenable, the imperialists intensify their manoeuvres for aggression and war.

The imperialists are turning the spearhead of aggression against the newly-emerging countries. The principal method they employ in their aggression against the non-aligned states, the countries of the third world, is to divide and alienate them and destroy them one by one. The imperialists are seeking to pit the non-aligned states, the countries of the third world, against one another and fish in troubled waters by
shrewdly taking advantage of border disputes—the aftermath of colonial rule—and a variety of other delicate problems so as to drive wedges between these countries, sow discord and cause disputes and conflicts among them.

The imperialists and dominationists are making vicious attempts to establish their political and economic control over the newly-emerging countries. They are trying to subordinate the newly independent states politically through a variety of devious and wicked methods such as threats, blackmail, appeasement, cheating, subversion and sabotage and are attempting to seize the lever of control over the economics of the developing countries in the name of so-called “aid” and “joint development of backward countries”.

The imperialists and dominationists, intent on extending their sphere of influence, are scrambling feverishly to bring the third world countries under their control. On the plea of “assistance” and “protection” they are vying with each other to poke their noses into the disputes between third world countries, interfering openly in them, and are contending to bring these countries under their thumb.

The current international situation is extremely tense and complicated due to the machinations of the imperialists and dominationists. Owing to their manipulation and intrigue, cases of subversion, sabotage and assassination take place every day, disputes arise in every part of the world, and even such a tragic situation develops as friendly countries fighting, exchanging gunfire. Consequently, the countries of the third world face many difficulties and the non-aligned movement is undergoing ordeals.

The present situation urgently demands that the socialist countries, non-aligned states, third world countries and all the oppressed nations of the world unite firmly and intensify their struggle against imperialism and all other forms of dominationism.

Dominationism is a counter-revolutionary trend that runs against the contemporary move towards independence; it is a common target of the struggle of the revolutionary peoples of the world. It is in the nature of dominationism to override the independence of other
countries and oppress and control other nations and peoples. Dominationism means, in one way, openly colonizing other countries and overtly oppressing and exploiting them and, in another way, dominating and controlling other countries by using various devious methods to put them under the yoke of slavery. Dominationism is practised by the large, comparatively small, capitalist and other countries. In short, all those countries which seek to control other countries represent the dominationist forces, irrespective of their size and social system, and it is all dominationism to control others overtly or covertly.

All the people of the newly-emerging countries should concentrate the spearhead of their attack on imperialism and dominationism. It is only by waging a resolute struggle against imperialism and dominationism that the peoples of the newly-emerging powers can consolidate their national independence, assure the independent development of their countries and build a new world free from every form of domination and subordination.

In order to fight resolutely against imperialism and the other forms of dominationism, it is imperative to form a broad united front of the newly-emerging countries.

This united front will be a decisive guarantee for the victory of the struggle against imperialism and dominationism. The formation of such a united front acquires still greater importance particularly because the imperialists and other dominationists are now increasing their schemes to divide and estrange the newly independent states and win them over to their side.

The newly-emerging countries should counter the manoeuvres of the dominationists to divide, alienate and win them over to their side by adhering to a strategy of unity. The non-aligned countries, the third world countries, should form a broad united front and make a concerted effort to smash these manoeuvres of all the dominationists.

To fight against their common enemy, the newly-emerging countries should attach prime importance to unity and subordinate everything else to it, and should closely band together, transcending
any differences in social system, political view and religious belief. Differences in the social system, political view and religious belief must in no way be a barrier to the unity of the newly-emerging countries. The common ground shared by the newly-emerging countries is greater than their differences and the force knitting them together is stronger than the force that estranges them from one another.

The non-aligned countries should not be fussy about which countries are progressive and which not, but endeavour to find some common ground and unite with each other. Classifying the non-aligned states into this or that side contradicts the essential character and idea of the non-aligned movement. This will lead, in the long run, to forming new blocs within the movement and splitting it. As for the progressive nature of a country, its criterion is independence, and a nation which maintains its independence is automatically a progressive nation. Since the non-aligned states are all opposed to domination and subordination and aspire after independence, they can unite on the basis of this common feature—their aspiration for independence.

The non-aligned states should base themselves on the principle of unity in settling any differences or disputes that arise between them. However serious they may be, differences and disputes between non-aligned states are the internal affairs of brothers who are advancing shoulder to shoulder towards a common goal; they are not matters to be settled by fighting or by bringing in outside forces. They should be settled through negotiations by the parties concerned, in keeping with their national interests and the interests of the non-aligned movement as a whole, free from any interference from outside. Should non-aligned states antagonize or fight each other, trapped by the intrigues of the dominationists, they will play into the hands of the latter, and this will simply make them the losers.

For the newly-emerging countries to fight in unity against imperialism and all other forms of dominationism, they should maintain their independence.

The non-aligned states, the third world countries, must
categorically reject all forms of interference from abroad and not follow other countries blindly or as their henchmen. And the newly-emerging countries should respect each other’s independence and refrain from picking holes or meddling in the affairs of other countries. This will preclude any dominationist forces from gaining a foothold in the non-aligned movement, render whatever nation’s baton impotent and enable the newly-emerging countries to strengthen their unity and wage a determined struggle against dominationism.

A country’s independence must be guaranteed by an independent national economy. Without a powerful independent national economy a nation cannot exercise its sovereign rights, nor can it have its say, nor do as it likes.

If the non-aligned countries, the developing countries, are to build an independent national economy successfully, they should tap their own potentialities to the maximum and, at the same time, strengthen economic and technical cooperation with the other newly-emerging countries. The territories of the third world countries are vast and these countries are rich in natural resources and have acquired a variety of good experience and skills in the course of creating a new life. They should exchange raw materials and technical skills on the principle of fulfilling one another’s needs and, in particular, sincerely help and teach one another by exchanging technical personnel. Then, they will be able, without any need to turn to the imperialists and dominationists for help, to shake off their economic and technical backwardness, to lay the solid foundations of an independent national economy and to build a prosperous independent and sovereign state.

The old international economic order is a product of the colonialist system and the lever used by the imperialists to dominate, control, exploit and plunder other countries. As long as the old international economic order remains intact, the developing countries cannot emerge from destitution nor build an independent national economy successfully. They should strive to abolish the absurd old international economic order that favours only the imperialists and dominationists and to establish a new, fairer international economic order that suits the
interests of the peoples of the newly-emerging powers.

The most pressing aspect of the struggle against imperialism and dominationism at the present time is to check and frustrate the imperialists’ moves for aggression and war.

The peoples of the newly-emerging powers should mercilessly expose and denounce the crafty manoeuvres of imperialism for aggression and war, and bring pressure to bear on and administer blows to the imperialists in all the places where they have stretched their tentacles of aggression. The peoples of the newly-emerging powers should struggle energetically to put a stop to the imperialists’ arms race, achieve general disarmament and make the imperialists withdraw all their aggressive troops from and dismantle their military bases in foreign territories.

There are still many colonies on the globe, and the imperialists and dominationists are manoeuvring craftily to bring the newly independent states once again under their domination and control. The peoples of the newly-emerging countries and all the oppressed peoples should fight still more resolutely to clear all the continents of colonialism, neo-colonialism and all other forms of dominationism completely and for good. Only when Asia, Africa and Latin America are clear from colonialism and all other forms of dominationism will the liberation of the nations be complete and final.

The Government of the DPRK and the Korean people make it an important aspect of their foreign policy to fight against imperialism and dominationism in unity with the peoples of the socialist countries, non-aligned countries, developing countries and all the other newly-emerging countries of the world.

As before, so in the future too, the Government of the Republic will make unabated efforts to strengthen the unity and cohesion of the socialist forces and develop the relations of friendship and cooperation with the peoples of socialist countries.

The Government of the Republic and the Korean people will make every effort to strengthen unity and cooperation with the peoples of the non-aligned states, the peoples of the third world countries, and will
always stand shoulder to shoulder with them in the common struggle against imperialism and dominationism and for social progress and national prosperity.

The Korean people actively support the Asian, African and Latin-American peoples in their struggle for freedom and independence and express firm solidarity with all the oppressed peoples of the world in their liberation struggle.

The Government of the DPRK and the Korean people will continue to fight strenuously against imperialism and all other forms of dominationism and for peace, democracy, national independence and the building of a new society, in unity with all the revolutionary peoples of the world who advocate independence.

* * *

Comrades,

The DPRK is the genuine homeland of all the people of Korea. To strengthen and develop the Republic constitutes the true source of welfare for our people and the decisive guarantee for victory in the revolution and construction.

The entire people should make strong efforts to strengthen and develop the Republic. We should increase the might of the Republic in every way by consolidating our revolutionary government and thoroughly embodying the Juche idea in all spheres of state activity.

Today our people are confronted with the heavy yet honourable task of fulfilling the Second Seven-Year Plan. By energetically conducting the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions on all fronts of socialist construction, we should bring about a new upswing in production and construction and thus fulfil the Second Seven-Year Plan ahead of schedule.

The revolutionary cause of our people is just and the future for our Republic is bright. Victory and glory are always in store for our people
who are fighting on for a just revolutionary cause under the banner of
the Republic.

Holding high the revolutionary banner of the Juche idea and the red
banner of the three revolutions, let us all unite closely around the
Government of the Republic and advance vigorously for the
reunification of the country, for the nationwide victory of the
revolution and for the cause of socialism and communism.

Long live the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea, our glorious
homeland, which celebrates today the 30th anniversary of its
foundation!
A CONGRATULATORY LETTER
TO THE TEACHING STAFF AND STUDENTS
OF KIM CHAEK UNIVERSITY
OF TECHNOLOGY

September 26, 1978

On the occasion of the 30th anniversary of the foundation of Kim Chaek University of Technology, I should like to offer warm congratulations to the teaching staff and students on the great success achieved in training the nation’s technical personnel and in scientific research in the past.

Kim Chaek University of Technology was established in September 1948, as the first university of industrial technology in our country, in line with our Party’s Juche-oriented policy of educating our own cadres and in order to meet our people’s desire to build the national economy by the efforts of our own technical cadres.

Through the foundation of this university our people were provided with a centre of the highest technological education, the first of its kind in their history, and this enabled them to train for themselves the technical cadres needed to build a new society.

Over the past 30 years, Kim Chaek University of Technology has proudly travelled the road of victory and glory and has rendered great service to the country and the people.

Kim Chaek University of Technology has displayed unbounded loyalty to the Party and the revolution from the first days of its foundation. In the course of the arduous revolutionary struggle, the
teaching staff and students of this university have always supported our Party, strongly championed and carried out the Party’s lines and policies and discharged their revolutionary duties with honour.

Even in the trying years of the Fatherland Liberation War, Kim Chaek University of Technology continued to train national technical cadres without cease, and thus ensured the success of postwar reconstruction and socialist economic construction. During the postwar period it implemented to the full the policy of training a greater number of technicians faster and better, as the comprehensive technological renovation required, and thus made a great contribution to the accomplishment of the historic cause of socialist industrialization.

Over the past 30 years, Kim Chaek University of Technology has produced a large number of able industrial technicians who are fully armed with the Juche idea and who have acquired expertise in modern science and technology, for the different sectors of the national economy. Today these technicians are playing the central role at our factories and other enterprises, in state and economic bodies and in many other posts dealing with socialist construction in our country.

By establishing Juche in scientific research and displaying to the full the revolutionary spirit of self-reliance, the teaching staff and students of this university have solved many scientific and technological problems that have arisen in the construction of our independent national economy and the technical revolution and made a major contribution to the development of science and technology in our country.

Kim Chaek University of Technology has played its role successfully as a parent university in the area of industrial technology and made a great contribution to the establishment of technical training bases for heavy and light industries, construction, transport and other areas.

I am delighted that in the past 30 years Kim Chaek University of Technology, supporting the education policy of our Party, has trained many able technicians, industrial management workers, scientists and
educationalists and rendered great service to socialist economic construction and the development of science and technology in our country, and I express great praise for this.

Today our people are faced with the historic task of accelerating the process of making the national economy Juche-oriented, modern and scientific through the energetic promotion of the technical revolution and fulfilling the Second Seven-Year Plan ahead of schedule.

The technical revolution at a new, higher stage urgently requires that the training of technical personnel be further improved. In this, the duty and responsibility of Kim Chaek University of Technology are very heavy.

Kim Chaek University of Technology must firmly establish the Party’s monolithic ideological system on the campus, equip the teaching staff and students solidly with a Juche-oriented outlook on the revolution and ensure that they fight for the Party and revolution and for the sweeping victory of the Juche idea without flinching, whatever the storm or stress. The university must intensify ideological education and the revolutionary organizational life and struggle against selfishness, the technology-is-almighty attitude and every manner of outdated ideas among the teaching staff and students so as to make them all revolutionary and working-class to the core.

Kim Chaek University of Technology must implement the Theses on Socialist Education in its education work. It must imbue its education with Party loyalty and the working-class spirit and firmly establish Juche in it, combine education with practice and continue to improve educational methods. In particular, the system and contents of the natural science and technical engineering subjects must be improved as required by Party policy and the technical revolution and they must be enriched constantly with the latest advances in science and technology by stressing the importance of imbuing the content of education with Party policy and modernizing it. Thus, it will equip all the students with a knowledge of modern science and technology and train them to be able technical cadres who are capable of advancing the technical revolution at a high level.
While intensifying scientific research to solve the immediate scientific and technological problems arising in carrying out the three major tasks of the technical revolution and in putting the national economy on a Juche-oriented, modern and scientific basis, you, the teaching staff and researchers of the university, must explore many new fields of science and technology and make significant contributions to bringing about radical progress in all branches of science and technology in our country.

The decisive factor in raising the quality of the training of the national cadres lies in establishing a revolutionary habit of study among the teaching staff and students. You must study hard with revolutionary enthusiasm and the spirit of inquiry so as to raise your standards of political theory and your scientific and technological qualifications and master your specialist subjects.

By participating voluntarily in socialist construction, you must consolidate the knowledge and techniques you have learnt from books through practical struggle, train yourselves in a revolutionary way and make an active contribution to the technical, ideological and cultural revolutions.

The university leadership must improve the administration of educational work and ensure that education passes through the exact pedagogical processes necessary for training revolutionary workers, must establish a revolutionary educational environment, modernize the educational facilities and equipment still more and establish a revolutionary system and order on the campus.

The revolutionary tasks confronting Kim Chaek University of Technology are honourable and worthwhile, and the Party trusts and expects a great deal from the university.

I am fully confident that all the teaching staff and students of this university will carry out their heavy yet honourable revolutionary tasks with credit and live up to the Party’s trust and expectations.
LET US BRING ABOUT A RADICAL IMPROVEMENT IN EDUCATION THROUGH THE FULL IMPLEMENTATION OF THE THESIS ON SOCIALIST EDUCATION

Speech Delivered at a National Meeting of Educational Workers

October 1, 1978

On behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, the Government of the Republic and the entire Korean people, I would first like to offer warm congratulations to this National Meeting of Educational Workers.

I would also like to extend profound thanks to the professional revolutionary educationalists at this meeting, and to the educationalists throughout the country, who, under the guidance of the Party, have persevered with true devotion since liberation in training the future builders of communism and bringing up cadres.

We have always had a high regard for scientists, educationalists and other intellectuals, both during the anti-Japanese revolutionary struggle and after liberation, from the first days of the Party’s existence.

The building of a new society invariably requires the involvement of intellectuals. That is why, as is apparent from its emblem, the Party comprises workers, peasants and working intellectuals.

In our society intellectuals are workers who do mental labour. The intellectuals in former colonies or semicolonies, in particular, have a
strong patriotic, national revolutionary spirit. It is true that intellectuals do not form a class. But they are a component of society that serves the people and plays an important role in the revolution and construction. Without intellectuals society cannot be developed nor can an independent and sovereign state be built.

At first sight they seem to be doing an easy job, but that is not true. Their work is as arduous as anyone else’s and their mental labour contributes greatly to the revolution and construction.

I think very highly of our educational workers and intellectuals who, upholding the Party’s policies on education and the intelligentsia, have rendered great service to education ever since liberation.

After liberation we started educational work from scratch. There had not been a single university in the country before liberation, and each province had only one or two secondary schools at most.

Today, however, there are well over a hundred universities and colleges in our country, every ri has a senior middle school, and everyone is educated.

Our country has become the best land of education in the world.

The number of pupils and students per 1,000 people is 372. The country has a greater ratio of students for every 1,000 people than any other socialist state and any of the advanced capitalist countries, and the number of students is still larger if the schools run by our overseas compatriots, including those operated by Chongryon, are taken into account. No nation has as many schools overseas as ours, and the world knows no country with as high a percentage of students. This provides ample proof of how much our people love education and what a great effort the Party and the Government of our Republic are exerting for education.

The brilliant success we have achieved in education is unprecedented in our nation’s history. It is the greatest and most magnificent and worthy of achievements, attainable only in the age of the Workers’ Party.

It is by no means because our country is wealthy that it educates large numbers of students and lays such great stress on education.
As yet we are not very wealthy: we have a great deal of work to do and many burdens to bear. We are still obliged to strengthen our economic foundations further and direct great efforts towards increasing our defence capability. So, it is not easy to educate students at state expense.

Our pupils and students alone number more than five million, and if the children at nurseries and kindergartens are included, the figure runs to 8,600,000. We have to provide this huge number of pupils and students with clothing for different seasons and with textbooks, and university students with hostel accommodation. Thus the state’s burden in providing free food and education for this number of children and students, which exceeds half the population, is very heavy.

However, in spite of all these difficulties, we devote primary efforts to education for the sake of the future of the nation; good education is essential for national prosperity and for the successful building of socialism and communism.

Because education is so important, we gave top priority to the building of colleges and universities even under the difficult economic conditions that prevailed immediately after liberation. And during the difficult days of the war, we still continued with education while fighting the enemy. We recalled students from the front line and educated them in tents pitched on the mountains. In the postwar days, when everything was lying in ruins from the war, we tightened our belts and built schools first, allocating a considerable amount of money to education. Of course, this entailed great hardship. However, we are now deservedly reaping the benefits of the education we conducted at such great cost.

We now have a million-strong army of intellectuals, and we are running all our factories, enterprises and state and economic establishments efficiently with our own personnel. We did not, do not and will not bring in engineers from abroad.

Many foreigners visit our country and express their great admiration for our hardworking, energetic, cheerful people, who are
full of hope for the future and are firmly united by a single ideology and purpose. Our people have thus become an object of envy to the people of the world, and this, too, is one result of our successful work in education.

If we had not devoted such great efforts to education in the past, despite all the hardship that was entailed, we would not have a million intellectuals, we would not have been able to create an energetic and industrious people, nor would we have been able to unite the whole society under the Juche idea.

Current developments are a clear testimony to the fact that Party policy on education and the intelligentsia has been correct and splendid from the outset.

We must implement the *Theses on Socialist Education* to bring about a fresh improvement in education.

The strengthening of education is the only way to make every member of society intellectual and to achieve communism.

Communist society is not only a society in which everyone is dressed well, fed well and lives well, but also one in which everyone works in comfort yet produces more material wealth. In our society many people are still obliged to do arduous jobs and the distinctions between heavy and light labour and between physical and mental work still remain. To eliminate these differences and make human labour easier, it is necessary to develop the productive forces so as to attain a high level of automation in production and, at the same time, to improve everyone’s standard of technical knowledge radically. In other words, the whole of society must be made intellectual.

Ultimately, the aim of this is to eliminate all differences in labour, the final disappearance of which will automatically mean the realization of communism. When we have raised the standard of technical knowledge of the entire population through proper education and turned our country into a country of intellectuals and workers, then communism will have been achieved.

Therefore, making the whole of society intellectual through intensified education is a glorious undertaking for the happiness and
prosperity of our nation; it is a noble task to create a communist society for all, in which the well-being of everyone is assured.

Good education through the implementation of the education theses is also of importance in conducting the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions.

At present these three revolutions represent the Party’s general line of stepping up the building of socialism and reunifying the country. To conduct them successfully and speed up progress towards these two goals, the education theses must be put thoroughly into practice.

Education in line with the theses and the three revolutions are closely connected. Success in the three revolutions and in strengthening the material and technical foundations of socialism depends largely on how the people are educated. Proper education is essential for arming the people with the Juche idea, for fulfilling the Second Seven-Year Plan ahead of schedule by stepping up economic construction and for making the national economy Juche-oriented, modern and scientifically-based. Once applied, the education theses will lead, ultimately, to the completion of the three revolutions, and this, in turn, will make it possible to achieve national reunification and communism.

The comrades who took the floor yesterday said that they were quite confident of success in implementing the theses. I am delighted with this, and their confidence in turn fills me with confidence. And since our educational workers have shown such confidence and such a great pride in their work, they will surely carry out the education theses.

We started education from scratch right after liberation and have reached today’s level, so it will not be very difficult now to go on to implement the theses, much easier than the work we did to get education started from nothing and develop it, as we did immediately after liberation.

Of course, it would be difficult to put the education theses into practice if we had nothing with which to start. However, today our country has solid foundations and resources for developing education.
Everything depends on how our educationalists do their work. If all the workers in education brace up and make a great effort, they will be able to implement the theses. Then, we will come to take the ideological and material fortresses of communism and achieve the historic cause of socialist and communist construction.

I am now going to speak about the tasks that must be carried out in order to implement the *Theses on Socialist Education.*

Above all else, we should improve the quality of education. At present education in our country leads the world in terms of quantity, but not in quality, and in particular the quality of higher education is rather low.

It is particularly important to improve the quality of higher education. Different branches of the national economy have been equipped with modern techniques and all the armaments of the People’s Army are up to date. Therefore, it is only by improving the quality of higher education and training large numbers of able scientists, technicians and political workers that we can build a socialist economy successfully and further increase our defence capability.

For better higher education, it is necessary for the colleges and universities to improve their standards themselves and, at the same time, for the quality of senior middle school education to be enhanced. It is only when students have received a solid general education at senior middle school that they can do well in higher education. Therefore, senior middle schools should improve the quality of their education and ensure that all their pupils gain excellent results, before sending the best ones on to higher education. In other words, the problem of improving the quality of higher education should be tackled from below.

The most important aspect of raising the quality of education is to improve the qualifications of the teachers.

The qualifications of the teaching staff in the field of general education are not yet high enough. The main reason for this is that education in our country started from scratch and was developed
rapidly. We introduced compulsory primary and secondary schooling in a very short space of time, and this was soon followed by nine-year compulsory technical and eleven-year compulsory education. So, the schools grew rapidly and the demand for teachers rose steeply. An inevitable result of this was that many people became teachers at primary and secondary schools or kindergartens without having received the appropriate education at a university of education, a teachers training college, or specialized teachers training school.

In recent years a campaign has been conducted to improve teachers’ qualifications, with the result that their level is now much higher than before. However, their general qualifications are not yet sufficiently high, and there are still a good many teachers who have not received higher education at all.

The universities of education and teachers training colleges should first be improved to raise the teachers’ qualifications through better training.

Universities of education and teachers training colleges are “seedbeds” for teachers. Only if they, and the training they give, are improved, will it be possible to produce decent kindergarten and primary and senior middle school teachers and improve the quality of general education and, furthermore, to raise the quality of higher education. Therefore, Party organizations at all levels and the officials in charge of education should pay close attention to improving universities of education and teachers training colleges and to training better teachers.

To improve the teachers’ qualifications, we need, secondly, to consolidate the re-education of the teachers working now.

It will take a long time to staff the schools entirely with graduates from universities of education and teachers training colleges. So, it is necessary to re-educate, through correspondence courses, all those teachers who have had no systematic higher education.

This should not be done in a perfunctory manner, but rather the students should be controlled strictly and made to study hard so that correspondence course graduates are as proficient as those from
regular courses. Meanwhile, a wide variety of short courses, such as ones on how to conduct classes, should also be given.

To raise the quality of education, laboratory and practical training should be improved.

This is essential for the students to consolidate the theoretical knowledge they have gained from books, making it working knowledge and giving full play to their creative initiative in practical work.

It is especially important to do a great deal of laboratory work and practical exercises in the study of natural sciences. Education in social science, too, requires a great deal of practical training. Here, it is necessary for regular oratorical contests, debates and the like to be organized and for various information groups, such as a Party policy information corps, to be active, so that the students can put their classroom knowledge to wider use. The universities of education and teachers training colleges should see to it that students go and teach classes in attached schools and follow all the necessary pedagogical courses.

One important aspect of improving the quality of education is to give the students a knowledge of modern science and engineering.

At present the world is making remarkable progress in these fields and if we are to follow suit, our students must not become complacent, but study advanced science and engineering diligently.

For this purpose we must learn foreign languages. This is essential if we are to have full access to foreign publications on science and engineering and acquire the knowledge we need from them. At college and university the teaching of foreign languages should be improved to ensure that the students master more than one foreign language such as English, French, Russian, Chinese and Japanese before they leave.

The principles of Juche should be rigidly followed when scientific and technological advances are brought in from abroad.

It will not do simply to swallow foreign things whole on the pretext of learning from modern science and technology. When one eats something, one chews and swallows it if it is palatable and spits it out if
it is not. In the same way, we should accept other countries’ scientific and technological advances if they suit the situation in our country, and not otherwise.

In introducing scientific and technological advances from abroad, our criterion should be whether they are needed for making our national economy Juche-oriented, modern and scientific. We should accept only those advances which are necessary for making our economy Juche-oriented, modern and scientifically-based.

In the past our scientists and engineers have invented many new products, including vinalon, for the Juche-orientation of our national economy. This means that our intellectuals are serving the country faithfully, and this is very gratifying.

It is extremely important to use domestic raw materials in developing industry. We have developed industry entirely with our own raw materials. Our recent experience in establishing the power industry is a good illustration of the importance of developing industry along Juche lines with domestic raw materials.

In the past some scientists asserted that building a petroleum power station would be a more rapid way of increasing the production of electric power than building a hydroelectric or any other kind of power station and proposed that petroleum power stations should be constructed. So I told them: Indeed, a petroleum power station may take slightly less time to build than a hydroelectric power station, but in view of the fact that we do not yet produce oil, what shall we do if we cannot import enough from other countries once we have built petroleum power stations? We must build power stations which will use water and coal, which are abundant natural resources in our country. Thus, I turned down the proposal for building petroleum power stations. A few years later there was a worldwide fuel crisis. Seeing this, the scientists were unanimous in saying that our Party was quite right when it adopted the policy of developing the power industry with the use of our own raw materials and resources. If we had built petroleum power stations without recourse to domestic raw materials and resources, our country would have been dragged into the world
fuel crisis and our economic development would have been greatly impeded.

As an embodiment of the Party’s Juche idea, the Juche-orientation of the national economy means developing our economy by our own efforts, our own raw materials and resources. Juche-orientation is the only way to develop the national economy independently and creatively. Therefore, this principle should be strictly adhered to in introducing modern science and technology.

The improved quality of education requires that a habit of studying be established among teachers and students and that the study-first principle be emphasized.

Upholding the Party’s slogan “The Party, the people and the army must all study!”, students and teachers should all study diligently. They must strictly follow the principle of “learn, learn and learn”.

Rigid educational discipline should be enforced so that the education programme can be carried out in full at school. The education programme is a legal requirement and an honourable revolutionary task which teachers and students are duty bound to fulfil. Teachers must teach in accordance with it and students must study all the subjects specified by it. Otherwise they will not be able to say they have fulfilled their revolutionary duties. Teachers should strive to abide by the programme in teaching so as to educate all the students well, allowing no laggards, and the students should study hard to master all the subjects in the programme.

Party and government officials at all levels should provide suitable conditions for the complete implementation of the education programme in schools. In some regions the practice has appeared of mobilizing pupils and students at random for social labour. This must be stopped. It is not bad to make them take part in a certain amount of social labour after school hours for their revolutionary education, but this must not be taken to excess to the extent of interfering with their studies or preventing the implementation of the education programme.

Furthermore, satisfactory material conditions should be provided for education.
Teachers and students are not all that are required for education. Suitable conditions must be guaranteed for good education. Schools must be provided with sufficient educational materials. This is indispensable for improving the quality of education and bringing up the pupils and students as communist revolutionaries equipped with useful working knowledge.

Schools must be built on a large scale to create adequate conditions for learning.

Needless to say, we have so far built a large number of schools and are successfully providing compulsory eleven-year education for all our children. But the number of schools must be further increased because, with the introduction of compulsory eleven-year education, the number of schoolchildren has increased sharply and more pupils are going on to higher education. The sudden increase in the number of schoolchildren has now compelled some schools to operate a two-shift system.

The state and local Party and government bodies and all the people should give active support to ensure that enough materials are supplied to build a large number of schools. Eventually, all schools should operate one shift. The single-shift system is essential for the teachers to pursue their own studies and research work after classes, and thereby improve the standard of their teaching.

Rural schools should be the first to strive to introduce one shift. In urban communities, too, a large number of schools should be built so that the single-shift system can be introduced in all schools.

If a lot of schools are to be built, the materials and funds allocated by the state for this must not be used for other purposes.

The present shortage of school buildings is not due to insufficient allocations from the state. The state furnishes supplies and funds for school construction according to a set plan. But local government officials have used them to build noodle restaurants, hotels, offices and the like, and have neglected the planned construction of school buildings.

The construction of noodle restaurants, hotels and offices can wait until schools have been built. Even if it means postponing the
construction of these other buildings, schools should be built first for the education of our children. The practice of diverting materials and funds intended for school construction must be completely eliminated and schools must be built according to a plan.

More laboratory and practical training equipment should be produced for the schools.

Schools that lack such equipment cannot ensure that education is of a high quality.

It is not very difficult to provide schools with laboratory and practical training facilities; it is quite possible if the officials concerned devote a little attention. If workers are called upon to work ten minutes more every day to produce school laboratory and practical training equipment, they will be able to supply it in large quantities. There are a great number of factories in our country, and if the workers are motivated and each factory makes only a few items of school laboratory and practical training apparatus, enough will be produced for all the schools.

All factories and enterprises should take part in this endeavour. A wireless factory should send wireless equipment to schools and a factory that produces lathes should send lathes. Only when sizable quantities of such equipment are provided for the schools will it be possible to carry out the Party’s policy for all students to acquire more than one kind of technical skill.

Provision of this equipment should be conducted by the entire Party, all the people and the whole state.

A large number of study workshops should be built at schools, and practical training centres for students should be set up at factories and other enterprises.

At present the students at universities and colleges are unable to obtain proper practical training even if they want it because schools have few study workshops and industrial enterprises do not ensure that their training conditions are good enough, on the grounds that it interferes with production.

From the viewpoint of economic construction, now is the age of
welding. Welding is fundamental both in the machine industry and in the building industry. Yet, the level of welding skill of our engineering and building workers is low and, as a consequence, the fulfilment of the Six-Year Plan was delayed to a considerable extent. So we investigated how it was being taught in the Kim Chaek University of Technology, the Pyongyang University of Mechanical Engineering and the University of Construction and Building Materials, and found that, although graduates from these universities had an academic knowledge of welding, they did not know how to weld in practice. This was because they had not practised sufficiently as students.

In future large numbers of study workshops should be built at schools and training centres set up in factories and other enterprises to enable the students to consolidate the knowledge they have acquired from books through practical training.

Officials of the provincial, city and county Party, people’s and administrative committees should call upon the workers at every factory to set up a training workshop or workteam for students. There is no need to erect new buildings for this purpose. Existing factory buildings should be used rationally. For example, at an engineering factory, it will be sufficient to install a few items of equipment such as a lathe and a drilling machine in one corner of a building.

Cooperative farms, too, should mark out plots for farming practice for universities and colleges of agriculture to enable the students to gain experience of farming by actually spreading fertilizers and operating farm machines.

It is only when study workshops are built at all schools and practical training centres are set up at factories and other enterprises to enable the students to do as much practical training as they want, that competent technical personnel can be trained, and university and college graduates do their jobs properly and serve the people better immediately upon starting work.

A revolution must be effected in the production of paper so that more reference books can be published for the students.

At present, we are short of paper and unable to print enough of the
books needed by students, such as books on technology, on Party policies and novels. Thus, students are denied access to some of the reference books they need. To solve this problem it is of vital importance to deal with the paper shortage.

The principal way of tackling this problem is for all the provincial paper mills to operate at full capacity. There are paper mills in nearly every county in our country and raw materials such as shrubs, maize stalks, rice straw and reeds are abundant here. Nevertheless, the provincial paper mills are not being run properly.

For some time after the joint Changsong conference held in 1962 great enthusiasm was evident in every county for building paper mills and producing paper, but now the interest has died down. A great failing of our officials is that they lack perseverance in everything they do, and this applies to Party workers, administrative officials and economic executives.

If the officials do good organizational work and run the existing paper mills efficiently so that each county produces enough paper to meet its own individual needs, it will be possible to use the paper produced by central industry to publish greater quantities of the books needed in education, such as schoolbooks, reference books, technical books, books on Party policies and novels. Every county should launch another drive to increase paper production.

Libraries and reading rooms should be well-stocked.

Since all our people study, this is very important. No matter how many books we publish, it is impossible to provide everyone with all the books they need.

Libraries should be set up in county seats and reading rooms in schools to allow everyone greater access to reading matter.

We are planning to erect a Grand People’s Study House in Pyongyang. This house will be supplied with a wide variety of books and the provincial libraries will be provided with copies of the same books if they do not already have them.

To continue, we should strive to make the whole of society intellectual.
The Party’s aim to make the whole of society intellectual is very good. Making the whole of society intellectual is essential if the differences between physical and mental labour are to be eliminated and a communist society built, the members of which will all work in comfort.

To be successful in this undertaking, it is necessary, above all else, to have a correct conception of the intelligentsia in socialist society. In socialist society intellectuals are not idlers but toiling people just like the workers and farmers. Workers work in factories, farmers work in the fields and intellectuals do research work at their desks and teach. Therefore, we call the intellectuals in a socialist society working intellectuals.

The Party policy of making the whole of society intellectual aims at raising the educational standard of the working people, all the members of society who have been remoulded after a working-class pattern, to that of the intelligentsia.

Making the whole of society intellectual is the ultimate objective of the education theses. While the final goal of the rural theses is to turn cooperative property into public property, the education theses are designed ultimately to turn all the members of society into intellectuals.

To achieve this we should expand and develop the study-while-you-work system of higher education, as indicated in the education theses.

At present many of our young people are serving in the army and, in addition to this, children and students, amounting to more than half the population, are attending creches, kindergartens and schools. This situation prevents us from setting up more regular colleges and universities for all the people. This would weaken the work force and put strain on the country’s labour situation.

To make the whole of society intellectual we should set up a large number of such study-while-you-work institutions as factory, farm and fishermen’s colleges and manage them properly. This is the quickest way to make the whole of society intellectual.
It is not particularly difficult to run a greater number of factory colleges. We have already gained experience in establishing and running them and laid material foundations for them. So, now we can easily set up and operate more factory colleges in the industrial areas, where they are needed.

It is a difficult problem in expanding and developing the study-while-you-work system to set up and manage farm colleges. At present young people in the rural areas have no time to study during the farming season. Therefore, the question arises of how to enrol and educate them at these colleges.

Needless to say, if in the future comprehensive farm mechanization is completed and farmers work eight hours a day like the workers in industry, it will be easy to solve the problem of running farm colleges.

For the present, however, they should be set up and run in the winter on a trial basis at those cooperative farms where mechanization is well advanced and which are situated in the vicinity of factories where there are many intellectuals. After gaining experience in this way, we must gradually propagate it.

The officials of Party organizations, people’s committees and administrative committees at all levels, and management personnel in industry and on cooperative farms should work hard to run study-while-you-work colleges well and thus provide all the working people with ample opportunities to learn and realize successfully the Party’s policy of making the whole of society intellectual.

Furthermore, Party guidance over education should be strengthened.

This matter is stressed in the education theses. Since the Party is responsible for guiding the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions for the building of communism, it is, as a matter of course, in duty bound to give proper guidance to education, too. Only then will it be possible to conduct education well, in accordance with the education theses and, hence, guarantee the success of the three revolutions.

The Party Central Committee has always shown deep concern for education, but the provincial, city and county Party committees have
tended to neglect its guidance. Some local Party officials simply provide the material conditions for the schools and fail to offer proper guidance to education and pay little attention to how teaching and education are being run at schools.

The most essential feature of Party guidance over education is to equip the teachers and students firmly with our Party policy and ensure that the teachers conduct their lessons well; in other words, it means ensuring that education is high in quality. Therefore, Party organizations should have detailed knowledge of how well-versed the teachers and students are in Party policy, and of the quality of school education, and give appropriate guidance to ensure that teaching and education are high in quality.

In order to strengthen Party guidance over education the senior officials of the provincial, city and county Party committees should make frequent visits to schools, giving lectures and quickly solving any awkward problems in teaching and education.

It is very important that officials go and give lectures at schools. If leading officials of the provincial, city and county Party committees give frequent lectures to teachers and students on Party policy and on the situation at home and abroad, they can equip them closely with our Party policy and make them well aware of the internal and international situation. Moreover, this will help them raise their own political and theoretical levels. By visiting schools frequently to give lectures, the officials will be able to discover and solve any awkward problems in teaching and education promptly. By going to the schools often to deliver lectures, the leading officials of the provincial, city and county Party committees will be able, ultimately, to bring Party guidance closer to the schools.

These senior officials are all graduates of a communist university, the Higher Party School, or the University of National Economy, so they are fully capable of preparing their lecture texts themselves. Therefore, with a little effort, they could prepare their own texts on our Party’s industrial, agricultural and other policies and the situation at home and abroad and give decent lectures to teachers and students. In
future, leading provincial Party committee officials should make it a rule to go and lecture once a month at an institute of higher education and those of city and county Party committees at a senior middle school or specialized school. Officials of administrative bodies, including the Administration Council, will also do well to lecture teachers and students.

The activities of the Children’s Union and League of Socialist Working Youth organizations at schools should be properly guided.

An important consideration in the guidance of these activities is to tighten the organizational life of the pupils and students. Life in an organization plays a very important part in making people revolutionary and working-class. Through their life in the CU and LSWY organizations, pupils and students receive ideological education and become tempered through organizational channels. However well they may teach the children and students, teachers cannot educate them properly without improving their organizational life.

In the students’ life in an organization, the main stress should be laid on ideological education and, at the same time, criticism should be stepped up. Our personal experience in the guidance of education shows that criticism exerts a great influence on the education of pupils and students.

In September 1972, when I called at the Taedongmun Primary School in Pyongyang, I asked some eight-year-old children who had just joined the CU if they had been criticized at a CU meeting. One of the pupils stood up and answered that he had been criticized at a CU meeting for failing to write properly from the teacher’s dictation because he had not sharpened his pencils before coming to school. So I asked the boy what were his feelings when he was criticized. He said in reply that his heart was in his mouth, and added that from that time on he made a point of sharpening all his pencils before bringing them to school, so that he never repeated his mistake. Another pupil said that he had been criticized because he had not done his homework and that after the criticism he never failed to do it. Even from the replies of
innocent young children we can clearly see the value of criticism in the CU organizational life for the education of pupils.

The CU and LSWY organizations should see to it that criticism is intensified among their members and that they are thereby educated and tempered politically and ideologically.

These organizations and their instructors should guide the extracurricular activities of the pupils in a responsible manner.

After school hours teachers are unable to exercise sufficient control over the life of their pupils. And at home, parents cannot guide their children’s out-of-school life properly because they all go to work. Therefore, no organizations other than the CU and LSWY can take responsibility for the guidance of the pupils’ extracurricular activities. These organizations and their instructors should take full responsibility for the guidance of the pupils’ lives after school hours.

Proper organization and guidance of the pupils’ activities after school hours is a particularly significant part of their education. If their out-of-school activities are properly organized, pupils can be educated excellently within the collective. This is important not only in general education but also in higher education.

Because the life of our pupils after school hours is properly organized and guided, they are all growing up to be healthy and cheerful and are making a good conduct drive collectively on a wide scale. By using their time after school hours the pupils have planted many CU and LSWY groves, conducted efficient “greenery guard” and “hygiene guard” activities, and conducted an extensive drive for taking good care of their schools and equipment.

The pupils of the Yaksu Senior Middle School, Changsong County, have set a good example in looking after their school and its equipment carefully. Once a reporter who visited the school to obtain information for his newspaper was inspecting the classrooms and wanted to jot down a few lines, so he sharpened his pencil. Seeing this, a pupil came running towards him and caught the falling pencil shavings in the palms of his hands. They say that the reporter, who was sharpening his pencil absent-mindedly, was very impressed by the child’s behaviour.
The example of the Yaksu Senior Middle School has been made known throughout the country and at present all our school pupils are participating in an extensive movement for looking after their schools and equipment well. This is very encouraging.

Our educational system, under which all the pupils lead a CU and LSWY life and enjoy colourful cultural activities after school hours, and under which the pupils are cultivated in the collectivist spirit through their extracurricular activities, is an excellent system of which we can be justly proud.

On behalf of the Party Central Committee, I would like to offer thanks to the CU and LSWY instructors present at this meeting and to others in all parts of the country for their earnest efforts to manage and guide the pupils’ organizational life and extracurricular activities.

In future CU and LSWY instructors should organize extracurricular activities still more efficiently so that the pupils may collectively review their lessons, play games and undertake a good conduct drive after school hours. They should work efficiently with a high sense of responsibility so as to make an active contribution to bringing up the pupils as heirs to the revolution who will fight with complete devotion for their homeland and people, for the Party and the leader.

In conclusion, I hope that all the workers in education will equip themselves well with the Party’s Juche idea and make every effort to carry out the *Theses on Socialist Education* to the letter.
ON THE MAIN TASKS FACING THE KANGWON PROVINCIAL PARTY COMMITTEE

Speech Delivered at the Enlarged Plenary Meeting
of the Kangwon Provincial Committee
of the Workers’ Party of Korea
October 5 and 6, 1978

This enlarged plenary meeting of the Kangwon Provincial Party Committee is being attended by officials of Party, government and administrative and economic bodies and those of the important factories and enterprises and of the cooperative farms in the province. Also present here are senior officials from the Party Central Committee, the Economy Commission of the Central People’s Committee, and the Administration Council. During my current tour I have visited Wonsan and the Namchang Cooperative Farm in Munchon County to take stock of the situation there and have received reports from the guidance teams on the current state of agriculture, industry and the fishing industry in the province.

It is two years since I last paid a visit to Kangwon Province in the autumn of 1976, and in the subsequent period the provincial Party committee has done a great deal of work.

However, quite a few shortcomings have been revealed in its work and these must be rectified as soon as possible.

So, I would like to speak about the mistakes made by the provincial Party committee in its work and the main tasks confronting it.

First of all, I will talk about agriculture.
Of all the provinces, Kangwon Province ranked as the poorest in farming this year. Only in those counties on the coast, out of the 17 cities and counties in the province, was farming at all successful, and in the other counties the crops were worse than last year. This year’s grain yield across the province is no higher than last year.

Some officials in Kangwon Province claim that the area along the east coast is not good for agriculture because the soil is cold and damp and the weather conditions are unfavourable, but these are mere excuses. South Hamgyong Province, too, is located on the east coast, yet it has been successful in farming in the past two years. This province actually ranked first in farming this year. North Hamgyong Province raised good crops this year, although previously its farming had been poor.

In the past officials of the Economy Commission of the Central People’s Committee and the Agricultural Commission visited North Hamgyong Province on several occasions in an endeavour to discover why farming had not been satisfactory, but ultimately they failed.

While talking with some officials of the agricultural sector who had been summoned from North Hamgyong Province this spring, I discovered the reason for the crops in the province being poor over past years. In that province they used to sow rice seeds late in the cold-bed nurseries and so transplanted seedlings that were too small, and also used to bed out humus-cake maize seedlings before the late frost, the only result of which was to ruin the farming. This spring, therefore, I emphasized to the officials of the province the importance of sowing rice seeds earlier in cold beds to enable them to grow strong and bedding out healthy seedlings at the right time, and also of transplanting humus-cake maize seedlings after the late frost. Furthermore, I made sure that able agricultural officials were chosen from among those on the west coast and sent to North Hamgyong Province to help farming there. This year the province farmed as I had instructed, which resulted in an increase in grain production of 100,000 tons over last year. The province promises that it will attain complete self-sufficiency in food next year. Now in both North and South
Hamgyong Provinces farming is proceeding smoothly.
However, this is not the case with agriculture in Kangwon Province. Its poor farming can be attributed neither to the effects of the cold front nor to damage caused by droughts or flooding. The climatic conditions there are not particularly bad. Sepho and other counties situated high above sea level might be affected by natural and climatic conditions to some degree, but Cholwon, Anbyon, Ichon and Kumgang Counties, for example, are all potentially good farming areas.

Such highland areas as Sepho County, too, can produce plenty of grain if the crops are raised in accordance with the Juche farming method. In fact, it can be said that Kangwon Province is much more favourable for farming than North Hamgyong Province in both soil and climatic conditions. The manpower situation in the former is also less strained. In North Hamgyong Province there is only a small number of work hands who can be mobilized to assist the rural communities in their work, but Kangwon Province has a large reserve, including People’s Army soldiers and factory and office workers, who can be used for the purpose.

The reason for the farming in Kangwon Province being poor can, above all, be explained by the fact that the guidance given by the senior officials of the province has been subjective and bureaucratic, instead of being in accordance with the requirements of the Juche farming method.

As I always say, subjectivism results in bureaucracy and they always complement one another. If you dictate any task to your subordinates in a bureaucratic manner without going deep into reality and inquiring into the actual situation at the lower levels in detail, you will never avoid failure.

The failure of the crops in North Hamgyong Province in the past was also a result of the senior officials’ bureaucratic method of guidance. A few years ago a senior official of the North Hamgyong Provincial Party Committee forced the farmers to wage a campaign to build houses in the busy farming season, saying that all the
straw-thatched houses should be demolished during one spring. As a result the farmers were unable to cultivate the crops properly. Even after that, another senior official of this committee compelled the farmers to bed out humus-cake maize seedlings from April 22 on the pretext that manpower was in short supply, only for the seedlings to die in the frost. Ultimately, the bureaucracy of the officials ruined farming in North Hamgyong Province in the past. This year farming has been successful because its officials have not been allowed to act bureaucratically.

Apparently subjectivism and bureaucracy among the officials of Kangwon Province, too, are at a level that cannot be tolerated.

This year they ordered that cold-bed nurseries should be laid out for rice seedlings in sloping fields. So, many cooperative farms followed this instruction and sowed seeds in the nurseries early, but they were unable to water the nurseries satisfactorily. So the seeds could not germinate on time and even those which did sprout wilted and died in great numbers. Simply because the method of sowing cold-bed rice seedlings in dry fields is encouraged, an indiscriminate order must not be given to the lower units without considering the actual situation at the cooperative farms.

Cold-bed nurseries for rice seedlings should be laid out where enough water is available and where it is easy to tend them. If they had to lay out nurseries in the sloping fields because the area of fertile land was limited, they should have taken certain steps to water them by pumps or to carry water by vehicles for them. In Kangwon Province, however, they laid out cold-bed nurseries in non-irrigated sloping fields but took no measures to fetch water for them. If no lorries or tractors were available, they should have fetched water for the nurseries even if it meant using ox-carts, but they did not do so. Therefore, it should have been obvious that the seedlings would not thrive. Just as a man must be strong in his childhood if he is to be healthy when he grows up, so strong rice seedlings must be grown in the nurseries if they are to bear good fruit.

In directing maize cultivation, too, a great deal of subjectivism and
bureaucracy has been revealed.

This year the senior officials of Kangwon Province gave orders, without any calculation, that all maize seedlings should be grown in humus-cakes. Consequently, quite a few cooperative farms prepared mud-cakes. To make matters worse, the cakes all broke because they were handled carelessly, so that seedlings with a few pieces of mud on their roots were transplanted. Some cooperative farms bedded out the seedlings after cutting their leaves because they had grown too tall, and some others bedded out seedlings not on ridges but in furrows, with the result that rainwater caused them to rot. Because the senior officials of Kangwon Province guided farming in such a subjective and bureaucratic manner, they made a mess of it this year.

We can say frankly that in Kangwon Province the loss brought about by the subjectivism and bureaucracy of the senior officials this year exceeds that caused by nature.

Another reason for the poor farming in Kangwon Province is that Party organizations and Party workers paid little attention to agriculture.

Busy as I have been, I have taken control of and have been giving personal guidance to farming since 1973 because of its great importance. As a result, our country enjoys a bumper harvest every year and our people are free from any worries about food, although the crops fail in a number of other countries due to the effects of the cold front, and hundreds of millions of people are starving.

When I take farming in hand and direct it, Party organizations and Party officials must pay particular attention to it, in support of the Party’s agriculture-first policy. Nevertheless, the Party organizations and officials of Kangwon Province are not showing any interest in farming.

As you have seen today, a Party secretary from Kimhwa County is not aware of how many tons of each variety of rice were harvested per hectare and how many tons of maize were produced per hectare in the non-irrigated sloping fields in his area this year. How can he meet the requirements of the Juche farming method when he raises crops
without any knowledge of per-hectare yields by varieties and fields?

Worse still, the chairman of the management board of one cooperative farm in Phangyo County does not know even the acreage under cultivation at his farm. Apparently he was transferred from the post of a ri Party deputy secretary to the chairmanship of the cooperative farm this August. Even so, since two months have passed, he should at least know the acreage under cultivation and similar matters. Even if he became management board chairman yesterday, he should have acquired such knowledge, although he may not know other things, before attending this meeting.

In addition, quite a few of the ri Party secretaries and management board chairmen in Kangwon Province are not really familiar with the situation at their cooperative farms. The acreage under cultivation at a cooperative farm is only a few hundred hectares at most, and yet, these officials have no correct understanding of the cultivated acreage of their own farms and the per-hectare yields by seed varieties and soil conditions. This shows that Party organizations and Party workers in the province have paid no attention to agriculture in the past. None of the Party workers from the provincial to the ri level are ingrained in the habit of exerting themselves to make a success of farming. If they had this habit, it would not be possible for ri Party secretaries and management board chairmen to be ignorant of the true state of affairs at their cooperative farms. Whenever the provincial Party committee and county Party committees held a meeting in the past, they would apparently summon subordinate officials to the meeting and hurl abuse at and censure them before sending them away. It is likely that they did not demand any detailed explanations about farming.

Because the Party organizations in Kangwon Province have been indifferent to farming and have not given detailed guidance to it, their officials’ standard is some 10 years behind that of officials in other provinces. In North and South Phyongan Provinces the officials are well familiarized with farming and are ready with an answer whenever they are asked a question, because the Party organizations there have shown deep interest in agriculture and guided it in detail. I do not know
why only the Party organizations and Party workers in Kangwon Province behave in the way they do, although it is guided by the Party Central Committee in the same way as North and South Phyongan Provinces are. I cannot understand why they show such little interest in farming. The rural Party organizations and workers have nothing special to do except farming.

It goes without saying that the Party’s Juche farming method cannot be implemented in Kangwon Province because the Party organizations and Party workers there are indifferent to farming.

In the past the province has not improved its cold and damp soil properly. At the National Meeting of Activists in the Field of Agriculture held in 1973, a girl student from the Wonsan University of Agriculture who was working as a member of the three-revolution team at the Samhwa Cooperative Farm in Munchon County, made a speech on the experience she had gained in increasing the grain yield by improving cold and damp soil. At that time I praised her and stressed the need to conduct a wide campaign for improving cold and damp soil at cooperative farms. However, Kangwon Province has done little of this, although several years have passed since then.

The cooperative farms in Kangwon Province have not even cleared ditches properly.

My grandfather used to clear ditches in spring, summer and autumn every year, although he held the land under a lease. But nowadays the cooperative farms in this province do not do this work.

Yesterday I visited workteam No. 3 at the Namchang Cooperative Farm in Munchon County, where I found that the paddy fields and sorghum fields in front of some modern houses were flooded because they had not maintained the roads properly nor cleared the ditches. Even though there was heavy rainfall the day before yesterday, the fields would not have been submerged had the ditches been cleared in a proper manner. When I visited this province in 1976, I gave instructions that the ditches should be cleared because the paddy and non-paddy fields in Munchon County were boggy, but this has not yet been done.
The officials of Kangwon Province lack the spirit of carrying out the Party’s policies unreservedly and without fail.

The Kangwon Provincial Party Committee must rectify as soon as possible the shortcomings revealed in farming and fully apply the Juche farming method so as to bring about a fundamental change in agricultural production.

Above all else, it is essential to do rice farming well.

Distributing suitable varieties in accordance with the principles of planting the right crop in the right soil and the right crop in the right season, is an important factor for ensuring the safety of the crops and gathering rich harvests even in the unfavourable climatic conditions caused by the continuing effects of the cold front. However fertile the land may be, it is impossible to reap a bumper harvest unless a suitable seed variety is chosen. Therefore, you must not sow just any variety without due consideration, but plant a variety which has proved its worth. In this province you have sown any untried variety blindly in the past, saying that Kosan No. X or Hamju No. Y was good. If you do this, you will never increase the per-hectare yield.

If, in South Hwanghae Province, they had sown Paechon No. 68 widely this year, a total failure might have resulted. At the beginning of this year they proposed sowing Paechon No. 68 widely, referring to its superiority. So I sent the chairman of the Agricultural Commission there to reduce the area to be planted with Paechon No. 68 by about 20 per cent and sow instead Pyongyang No. 8. The recent harvest has shown that the per-hectare yield of Paechon No. 68 was 0.5 to 1 ton lower than that of Pyongyang No. 8, so I am told.

Also, you must not accept, without due consideration, the varieties which agricultural science research institutes force upon the cooperative farms under the pretext of test cultivation or whatever. Last year one cooperative farm in Sonchon County, North Phyongan Province, sowed more than 10 varieties, as requested by an agricultural science research institute, only to ruin its rice farming.

In the future cooperative farms should plant only those proven varieties which are recognized by the state, and other varieties must not
be sown. As for the new varieties which are being experimented on at agricultural science research institutes, we must, from now onwards, definitely determine how many hectares a specific cooperative farm should set aside for them, and strict discipline must be established so that the farms abide by this.

It would not be a bad idea for Kangwon Province to grow *Pyongyang No. 8*. Even so, you must not order every farm to plant it exclusively. As we have not yet determined clearly which variety is good for each cooperative farm in Kangwon Province, we must decide on the variety to be sown next year, after careful examination.

In addition to choosing the right variety, the cooperative farms should store its seeds properly and take good care of them.

For successful rice farming, it is imperative to sow the rice seeds early in cold-bed nurseries.

Next year the planting of seeds in cold-bed nurseries in Kangwon Province must be started from March 15 and finished by March 30. It can be started on March 15 because there is little difference between the climatic conditions of Kangwon Province and South Phyongan Province. There is no need to start this work as early as March 10 simply because you are instructed to do it early.

Even though planting rice seeds in cold beds is started on March 15 in this province, the rice seedlings will have more than 50 days to grow strong before being transplanted at the right time. This year the seeds were sown late in some counties of the province. To make matters worse, instructions had been given to bed out the seedlings early, and so, 35- or 30-day-old seedlings and, worse still, 20-day-old seedlings had to be transplanted. This should not be done.

In the old regulations issued by the Agricultural Commission, it was prescribed that 45-day-old seedlings should be transplanted, but this does not suit the conditions of today when we are affected severely by the cold front. Under these circumstances rice seedlings must be raised for at least 50 days in the cold-bed nurseries before being transplanted. Only then can we ensure that sufficient time is allowed for the rice crops to grow and that the harvests are rich and stable.
It is best to bed out 55-day-old seedlings. Considering the state of the rice crop both on the west coast and in North and South Hamgyong Provinces, the per-hectare yield in the paddy fields bedded out with 55-day-old seedlings is the highest.

In North Hamgyong Province they sowed rice seeds in the cold-bed nurseries on March 15 this year and harvested 8 to 9 tons of rice per hectare in the fields transplanted with 55-day-old seedlings, and in Chongjin they harvested as much as 9 tons of rice per hectare in the fields bedded out with similar seedlings. In the past the people of North Hamgyong Province would be surprised even if they were instructed to produce four tons of rice per hectare, but this year they produced more than five tons from each hectare across the province by sowing seeds in the cold-bed nurseries early and transplanting the seedlings at the right time. In South Hamgyong Province, too, they produced 5,866 kg of rice from each hectare across the province this year by sowing seeds and transplanting seedlings in the same way, although they had produced only four tons in previous years.

If you sow seeds in the cold-bed nurseries early and bed out the seedlings at the right time once they are fully grown after 50 days or more, as is done in other provinces, you can harvest 5 or 6 tons of rice per hectare. This year the Suthae Cooperative Farm in Kimhwa County produced 5.5 tons of rice per hectare, which shows that it is possible to produce more than 5 tons of rice per hectare in this province. Needless to say, compared to other provinces 5.5 tons of rice is not a high figure, and yet, it is fairly good for this province to take the per-hectare yield to that level.

You must not allow the sowing of seeds in the cold-bed nurseries to drag on for a month, but finish it at the earliest possible date. If you drag it out for a month, you cannot bed out 50- or 55-day-old seedlings, even though you start on March 15.

Should there be a shortage of manpower at the time of sowing seeds in the nurseries, you must mobilize government officials, students and People’s Army soldiers if necessary and start on March 15 and finish before March 30 without fail.
The area of cold-bed nurseries must be in accordance with what has already been defined. The Songjong Cooperative Farm in Ichon County decided on 300 phyong of nurseries for each hectare this year, but this is too large. Next year the area of the nurseries will have to be decided correctly in accordance with the technical regulations.

To raise healthy seedlings, good humus must be prepared in sufficient quantities. In those areas where spring arrives late and the weather is cold in spring, 35 to 40 kg of humus soil must be laid in each phyong of the nurseries. Then the seedlings can grow well, although the rice seeds are sown in the nurseries early.

In North Hamgyong Province this year they sowed seeds in the nurseries before the land had thawed, but healthy seedlings were grown because 40 kg of humus soil was spread in each phyong of the cold-bed nurseries. This experience shows that however cold the area may be, seedlings can thrive if enough high-quality humus is laid in the cold-bed nurseries. In Kangwon Province you must make strenuous efforts to secure plenty of humus for use next year.

To sow the seeds in the cold-bed nurseries early, plastic sheeting, straw thatch, wind-breaking fences, bent sticks and the like should be prepared in advance.

The Political Committee of the Party Central Committee which met some time ago decided that in spite of the shortage of foreign currency, plastic sheeting must be obtained for all the cooperative farms even if it meant importing it. Therefore, farms need have no worries about sheeting. All that they should do is to repair the sheets which have been used before and prepare sufficient thatch, wind-breaking fences, bent sticks and similar things.

In view of the fact that seeds are to be sown early in the cold-bed nurseries, the rice seedlings may freeze and die unless they are covered with straw thatch. On the Songjong Cooperative Farm in Ichon County they sowed seeds in the cold beds early this year, but a large number of seedlings froze and died because they had not been covered with straw. Next year the cooperative farms must prepare enough thatch to prevent the seedlings freezing and dying.
The counties situated on the plains are somewhat short of sticks. In the case of these counties, the province must organize the work well so that those in the mountainous areas provide sticks for them. Because we are communists who fight under the slogan of “One for all and all for one!”, we must build socialism by helping each other and pulling together.

Next year rice transplanting must be started on May 7 and finished before May 20 in this province. This is best for the province. Only then can the rice plants develop many stems and the yield per hectare increase.

In order to finish rice transplanting in a short space of time, the seedlings must be bedded out by machine. The cooperative farms must realign the land well and make sure the rice transplanters are in good condition so that the seedlings can be transplanted by machine.

To improve rice farming in Kangwon Province, it would be advisable to select approximately 100 able officials who have experience and skill in rice cultivation from the provinces on the west coast and send them to Kangwon Province.

Because I give on-the-spot guidance frequently in North and South Phyongan Provinces and North and South Hwanghae Provinces every year, their officials are well-versed in the Juche farming method and have rich experience in rice farming. But as I have failed to give personal guidance frequently in this province, the cooperative farms do not farm according to the Juche farming method. This being the case, it would not be a bad idea to choose some able officials from the provinces on the west coast who are fully equipped with the Juche farming method and have good technical knowledge about rice growing, and send them to Kangwon Province to teach rice cultivation.

The Organizational Leadership Department and Agricultural Affairs Department of the Party Central Committee must choose about 100 people with a good knowledge of rice farming from North and South Phyongan Provinces, Pyongyang and North and South Hwanghae Provinces and send them to Kangwon Province. The cooperative farms in this province should learn the method of growing
rice effectively from these agro-technicians when they arrive. The people in this province may be unwilling to learn seriously from these technicians, indulging themselves in provincialism. This should not be permitted.

This spring we sent some 200 technicians, selected from the provinces on the west coast, to North Hamgyong Province. I am told that they had trouble at first because the people in that province practised provincialism and were reluctant to learn from them.

The agro-technicians sent to North Hamgyong Province returned after having grown healthy rice seedlings there, as they had been entrusted by the Party. That province requested another 200 men, saying that it could not cultivate rice without the help of the technicians from the west coast. This summer, therefore, we saw to it that 200 technicians who were good at rice farming were picked and sent to settle in North Hamgyong Province.

When the agro-technicians arrive from the west coast, the people of Kangwon Province must not indulge in provincialism: they should work together with the technicians so that rice farming is a success.

You should raise good maize crops, too.

To increase the output of maize, humus-cake maize seedlings must be transplanted at the right time. Next year Kangwon Province must start the transplanting of humus-grown maize seedlings after the late frost and finish it before May 20. This year some cooperative farms in the province took until June to bed out humus-cake maize seedlings, so they transplanted them after having to cut the leaves because they were overgrown. This cannot prove the worth of humus cakes. Since the late frost falls around the end of April in Kangwon Province, the bedding-out of humus-cake maize seedlings can surely be finished before May 20, even though you wait until after the late frost to begin.

To increase the per-hectare yield of maize, it is also necessary to make good-quality humus cakes. This year quite a few cooperative farms here made mud cakes. It is better to sow maize directly than to use these.

As maize farming does not require any special skills, you must not
seek help from other provinces, but do it yourselves.

Wide-scale land improvement must be introduced.

Since our country has a limited area of land under cultivation, we can prosper only through increasing the per-hectare yield of grain by improving the soil.

Because of the clouds gathering from the Pacific Ocean and from the direction of Ongjin, South Hwanghae Province, there is plenty of rainfall and there are large areas of cold and damp soil in Kangwon Province, compared to other provinces. If all the cold and damp soil is improved in the province, grain production can be increased markedly. It is not very difficult to do this. As I have already stressed at several meetings, including the National Meeting of Agriculture, and in model lectures, all that you have to do is to dig deep ditches in the cold and damp soil and bury stones or bush in them. The province must make strenuous efforts to improve cold and damp soil in order to increase the area of fertile land.

Clearing out ditches and removing silt from rivers should also be done as a mass movement.

Acid land must also be improved.

There is a large area of land which was reclaimed a long time ago in Cholwon and other counties of Kangwon Province. The greater part of this is acid land, so crops do not grow well there. In May 1965, when I was giving personal guidance to the Phochon Cooperative Farm, Hoeyang County, I found that because of acid land, the per-hectare yield of rice was only 1,300 kg and that of maize only 750 kg. That was why, at that time, I stressed the need to improve the acid land in Kangwon Province.

When giving personal guidance to Kangwon Province in March 1972, too, I emphasized this matter. The officials of the province suggested building a pig farm in Wonsan, but I told them to build it in Kosan County and apply the manure from it to the fields to improve the acid land. The maize yield can be increased through improving acid land. However, the province has not improved the acid land to any great extent, nor has it managed the pig farm properly, although over
10 years have passed since I gave the province this task. Some officials allege that they could not apply a large amount of pig manure to the fields because only a small number of manure tanks had been built in Kosan County. This was no more than an excuse, even though the state could not supply materials for building tanks to keep pig manure.

Pig manure can be kept easily without building tanks. You only have to bore a deep hole and keep it in there, and then mix it with earth to spread on the fields.

To improve acid land, you must carry large quantities of carbide ash to the fields, in addition to producing slaked lime for yourselves. The Ministry of Railways must transport approximately 100,000 tons of the carbide ash produced by the February 8 Vinalon Complex to Kangwon Province.

Silicon fertilizer must also be applied to paddy and dry fields.

It is a good fertilizer. According to information produced recently, it is only through the application of silicon fertilizer to a paddy field that the rice crops can absorb phosphatic and nitrogenous fertilizers much better and their stems become thick and the rice grains mature well. So, at a consultative meeting of agricultural officials held in Chongsan-ri this August, I proposed to refer to the four major fertilizers from then on, instead of the three basic ones.

At present other countries are using a lot of silicon fertilizer. At a joint meeting of the Central People’s Committee and the Administration Council held this August I instructed that the factories and enterprises concerned should be given production plans for silicon fertilizer. Therefore, from next year onwards our country will also be able to apply this type of fertilizer liberally to its paddy and dry fields.

Next year a large quantity of the silicon fertilizer produced in North Hamgyong Province must be transported to Kangwon Province. The Ministry of Land and Maritime Transport must carry it by ship to those counties which border the sea, and the Ministry of Railways by train to those counties where there is a railway. The latter must transport some as far as Phyonggang Station so that the cooperative farms in Changdo County can carry it from the station by truck to apply it to the fields.
Research must be conducted into whether the residuum from the Munphyong Smeltery can be applied to paddy and dry fields. At present the residuum is not applied to the fields because it contains lead and zinc elements in large quantities. If only the amount of these elements in the residuum is reduced, it can be applied to the fields. If this is done, it is tantamount to obtaining a fertilizer factory for nothing. The relevant authorities must ensure that the residuum from the smeltery is applied to the fields even if the necessary equipment has to be supplied.

Magnesium fertilizer must also be applied to the paddy and dry fields. When the five fertilizers—nitrogenous, phosphatic, potash, silicon and magnesium—are applied to the fields in sufficient quantities next year, Kangwon Province will be able to increase the per-hectare yield of grain a great deal.

You should continue the energetic campaign to implement fully the Party’s policy of bringing about a revolutionary change in the use of underground water.

In view of the continuing influence of the cold front, we must conduct this campaign, otherwise we will not prevent damage from a drought. This year you in Kangwon Province suffered serious water shortages because there was a severe drought in the spring and summer, and no one knows if there will be a drought again next year. If you sit idle, relying on the fact that the reservoirs are now reasonably full of water, something awful might happen. Therefore, all the cooperative farms must dig more wells and drive many water pipes into the ground.

When you dig a well you must dig it deep. Then water will surge up from deep underground and the well will not dry up even in a severe drought. Apparently other countries dig wells as deep as 150 to 200 metres. There are said to be 300,000 wells in one particular country which are 150 to 200 metres deep.

Many wells have been dug for agriculture, but the work has been done in a perfunctory manner. So quite a few of them are useless because they dry up after just a brief spell of dry weather.
I hear that at the Kubong Cooperative Farm in Phangyo County wells were dug 5 or 6 metres deep and so they cannot be used because there is no water. This sort of well is worthless, no matter how many of them are dug. Wells must be dug more than 20 metres deep. The cooperative farms must dig wells not in a perfunctory manner, but deep, always maintaining the quality.

Water pipes must also be driven in deep. They must be driven in to a depth of at least 30 metres. They can be struck into the ground as deep as 150 metres. Only those which are driven in 30 to 150 metres deep can draw real underground water. You say that there is no water at the end of the ravine in Cholwon County, but water will shoot up if you drive in the pipes to a depth of over 30 metres.

I was told that this spring the soldiers on highland in the Phyonggang area were unable to drink as much water as they wanted, so I assigned the officers of the army corps concerned the task of driving in pipes to solve the problem. They say that when the pipes were driven in deep, water gushed out. As a result, the soldiers on the highland have struck several water pipes and now have enough water. Underground water is found everywhere. The important thing is how deep you drive in the pipes.

If you sink pipes in coastal areas, salt water may emerge. Even so, you must not give up your efforts, but drive them in even deeper. Then fresh water will spring up. Apparently, in Unchon County, South Hwanghae Province, salt water emerged when pipes were struck, and so they were driven in deeper, as far as 150 metres or so down, then fresh water came up.

In order to dig wells and drive in pipes skilfully, priority must be given to surveying for underground water. In Kangwon Province you must ensure that the prospecting forces are sent first to those cooperative farms which are short of water, to find many sources of subterranean water for them.

The cooperative farms where there are rivers or streams which do not dry up even in a drought, need not dig wells and sink pipes. These farms need only to install water pumps near the rivers or the streams.
and use these to draw water into the paddy and dry fields. It is also effective to dam streams and keep water there before using it for the fields. Those cooperative farms which can dam streams must do so.

Thorough measures must be taken to prevent maize borers causing any damage.

As a result of the fact that the cooperative farms had not worked hard to kill maize borers, they suffered a great deal of damage from them this year. In recent years the cooperative farms have made no great efforts to prevent damage from the borers, with the result that the maize borers are now common.

According to experts in the agricultural field, many borers emerge from the ears of the maize kept in granaries, and they multiply. In order to kill them in the ears, we must build many silos, thresh the maize kept in the granaries and store it in the silos, and either burn or rot the cobs; but it is difficult for us to do this immediately. The leading officials and scientists in the agricultural field must study methods of killing the borers inside the ears of maize.

The cooperative farms must finish autumn ploughing quickly and burn all the maize stubble. After putting some aside to feed the oxen, you must cut all the maize stems into small pieces and rot them by mixing them with slaked lime.

Kangwon Province must build proper bases for livestock breeding and vegetable production and increase the production of subsidiary foods.

It is only when those bases are built that the people’s diet can be improved and sufficient non-staple foods be supplied to the foreigners who visit the province. Nowadays every one of the foreign visitors to our country wants to visit Wonsan because the city has been built up into a beautiful rest place and is situated near Mt. Kumgang. Now that the motorway between Pyongyang and Wonsan is open to traffic, foreigners can come to Wonsan from Pyongyang in two hours by car. Since Wonsan has an international hotel as well as the lovely Songdowon Park, it can receive a great number of foreign visitors, particularly if another international hotel is constructed.
These days many foreigners are visiting Wonsan and their number is sure to grow in the future. When they come to stay in Wonsan, they must be supplied with sufficient meat, eggs, milk, vegetables and other similar items. This will give them a favourable impression. If plenty of such items as meat, fish, eggs, milk and vegetables are produced and supplied to the foreigners, we will earn a great deal of foreign currency.

You should launch a campaign to raise pigs and hens on a wide scale in order to produce a lot of pork and eggs. In addition, you should produce more milk and a variety of vegetables in abundance.

The Vice-Premier of the Administration Council for public welfare and the secretary of the Party Central Committee for the Agricultural Affairs Department must discuss with the officials concerned how a variety of side dishes can be supplied regularly to the foreigners who visit Wonsan and adopt measures to this end.

A lot of persimmons must be produced.

The persimmon is a speciality of Kangwon Province. It grows well in this province because it is warm here. It can be eaten as a complete meal. Apparently the people of Henan Province, China, plant many persimmon trees and eat the fruit as a complete meal. Tea can be made from the leaves of these trees, too. One country is giving great publicity to the tea made from persimmon leaves.

Persimmon thrives on the Ongjin peninsula of South Hwanghae Province, too. When both Kangwon and South Hwanghae Provinces increase their production, we will be able to provide the people with enough persimmons. Therefore, a long time ago I stressed that a large number of persimmon trees should be planted in Kangwon Province and production increased, and I helped you to solve many problems arising in the production of this fruit. However, the province did not tend the trees properly, with the result that a considerable number of them have frozen or withered, and died. Since persimmons are not being produced in abundance, few are available in the shops.

A campaign to plant one or two persimmon trees at every farmhouse must be waged on a wide scale. As the trees need only a
small quantity of agricultural chemicals, any number of them can be planted around farmhouses. One or two persimmon trees at each house will look attractive in the blossoming and ripening seasons and enable the children to eat their fill.

Plenty of persimmons must be produced and supplied to the citizens of Pyongyang and to foreigners as well.

The production of walnuts must also be increased.

On my journey here along the motorway I saw that walnut trees were growing fairly well at the Anbyon Walnut Farm, but that, however, they bore little fruit. One particular farm is said to have used the fertilizer for other purposes, the fertilizer provided for the walnut trees. Consequently, it is clear that the trees would not bear much fruit. They can only bear rich fruit when they are supplied with the right quantity of fertilizer.

For the time being, harvesting and threshing must be finished quickly and substantial preparations made for next year’s farming.

To improve farming in Kangwon Province, I will see to it that some 200 trucks are supplied. Large quantities of goods must be transported so that the soil can be improved and various fertilizers applied in the paddy and dry fields in the province. However, it has only a few trucks at present. It would be better to provide the province with many trucks, but we cannot do so because production of trucks is low at the moment and they must be distributed to others, too.

On this occasion we are going to give trucks to only such counties as Cholwon, Kimhwa, Changdo, Hoeyang, Kosong, Thongchon, Phangyo, Kumgang and Poptong which are far from the railway. Phyonggang County can easily make do with the trucks it has at present because there is a railway station there.

The trucks which the province is to receive must not be supplied to the cooperative farms but attached to the county farm machine station, and a separate transport team must be formed to carry goods for the cooperative farms. If the trucks are distributed among the cooperative farms, they cannot be repaired promptly and so their rate of operation cannot be increased. The new trucks you are to receive on this occasion
must not be used for other purposes at will; they should be used solely for matters related to farming.

Measures, too, must be taken to make good use of the trucks the counties have at present. The province must take steps to repair those which belong to the counties and cooperative farms, and establish a well-regulated system under which fuel oil is supplied promptly.

We will allocate 800 Chollima tractors and about 400 Chungsong tractors to Kangwon Province. According to my present study of the state of affairs here, a considerable area of land is suitable for the operation of machines. If the cooperative farms in the province receive 800 Chollima tractors and some 400 Chungsong tractors, they can further promote the mechanization of farm work and solve the problem of the manpower shortage.

The Chungsong tractor can till fields and carry goods. Two years ago I visited Munchon County and saw a girl driver ploughing the land using a Chungsong tractor, and it was doing the work well. This tractor is good for ploughing small plots of paddy fields as well as paddy and dry fields on the coast where the soil is mixed with sand.

From now onwards, when you manufacture Chungsong tractors you must fit them with shares so that they can plough. It is a mistake not to have made them in this way before. It is better for this type of tractor to be fitted with one share rather than with two. Even if it ploughs the field with one share, it will do the work far quicker than an ox does.

The Chungsong Tractor Factory must produce 400 Chungsong tractors without fail for Kangwon Province before spring ploughing next year.

Upon receiving the trucks and Chollima and Chungsong tractors, the province must make trailers for itself to fix to them. When they are fitted with trailers, they will be able to carry big loads. It only needs the roads to be improved in this province and the trucks and tractors will easily be able to haul loads on trailers.

The Party organizations in the province must actively support the work of manufacturing many trailers and improving the roads.
Your province will be provided with about 200 Phungnyon bulldozers, too. Because only a small number of Phungnyon bulldozers are produced these days and, moreover, they are needed in many places, we shall give you only 200 bulldozers. You should use them for field realignment.

We shall also supply about ten excavators with a capacity of 0.5 cubic metres to this province. You should use these excavators to dredge the beds of major rivers.

The Songjong Cooperative Farm in Ichon County has requested the manufacture of machines to spray herbicides on cold-bed rice nurseries. They can be made without difficulty and do not need much steel, so we can manufacture as many as we want.

Since the secretaries of the Party Central Committee for the Agricultural and the Economic Affairs Departments as well as the vice-chief of its Organizational Leadership Department are in the province, you should hold a meeting among yourselves for one more day and wage an ideological struggle and deepen the discussions so that thorough measures can be adopted to bring about fresh innovations in agricultural production in Kangwon Province.

Now, I will speak about the tasks facing the industrial sector.

In Kangwon Province there are many important factories and enterprises, and some of them are the only ones of their kind in our country. They are playing a major role in the overall development of our national economy and are responsible for a large part of our foreign currency earnings. Therefore, the Kangwon Provincial Party Committee must put great efforts into the industrial sector so that all factories and enterprises put production onto a normal basis.

Above all, wagon production must be increased at the June 4 Rolling Stock Factory.

The June 4 Rolling Stock Factory is the only base for the production of wagons in our country and it is the lifeline for easing the strain on rail transport. Without increasing wagon production at this factory, the strain on rail transport cannot be eased.

Although a “200-day campaign for a revolution in transport” was
carried out last year and this year in the sphere of rail transport, the strain has not yet been eased because wagon production did not keep up with the rapidly-growing demands for transport. The lack of wagons is now delaying the prompt transportation of coal and ores piled up at the mines to the factories and enterprises.

During my present visit I was told that although the Munphyong Smeltery produced a great deal of sulphuric acid, it could not be transported due to a lack of container wagons. So, on my arrival here, I assigned the June 4 Rolling Stock Factory the task of manufacturing such wagons. The factory must quickly complete the construction of the steel-casting shop and the materials centre and increase wagon production radically.

The Ministry of Railways and the machine-building industry must offer active assistance to the June 4 Rolling Stock Factory. The engineering sector must provide this factory, on a preferential basis, with transformers for its furnaces, 10 Jajuho trucks, 5 Sungni-58 trucks and 38 machine tools. Even though it cannot supply trucks and machine tools to other factories, it must supply the required number of them to the June 4 Rolling Stock Factory without fail.

For this factory to increase wagon production, it must be supplied with sufficient steel. Supplied with steel alone, it can produce various kinds of bended steel for its own use. Besides this, several other problems may crop up in increasing wagon production. So the authorities concerned must conduct detailed inquiries into any problems that may arise and solve them without fail. In this way, from next year onwards the factory must produce 3,000 wagons and repair 200 locomotives annually.

The Munphyong Smeltery is an important base for the production of nonferrous metals and for earning foreign currency.

In the past, however, the State Planning Commission and the Mining Industry Commission put too much emphasis on the day-to-day production at the smeltery, failing to coordinate the plans to repair its buildings and equipment promptly and to provide enough materials for the repair work. Such being the case, accidents with
equipment occur so frequently at the smeltery that its production is not on a normal footing at present. Materials for repairs must be supplied quickly to the smeltery so that the buildings and equipment can be repaired and maintained carefully. The relevant authorities must buy 700 tons of stainless steel and acid-resistant material for alloying to make tubes and supply them to the Munphyong Smeltery.

As the Munphyong Smeltery is situated near Wonsan, a port and holiday resort, it must be managed better and the repair of its equipment must be more effective. At present harmful gas from the smeltery damages the crops of the nearby cooperative farms. No pollution must be allowed around Wonsan. The smeltery is there because it was built at the time of Japanese imperialist rule; if we were to build it now, we would not construct it near Wonsan. But we cannot demolish it. While pressing ahead with its present production, the Munphyong Smeltery must exert great efforts on repair and maintenance in order to ensure that the smeltery is kept cleaner and that it gives off no noxious gas.

The manpower needed by the Munphyong Smeltery will have to be supplied next year from among the demobilized soldiers.

The production capacity of the Chungsong Tractor Factory must not be increased further; tractors must be produced relying on the present capacity.

Even at the modern Kum Song Tractor Factory which is capable of producing tens of thousands of highly efficient Chollima tractors in a year, the production of tractors is not on a normal basis because not enough materials and labour are available. So there is no need to increase the production capacity of the Chungsong Tractor Factory. It would be better to supply materials and labour to the Kum Song Tractor Factory and increase the production of Chollima tractors than to expand the Chungsong Tractor Factory. Since Chollima tractors are being produced, it will be all right not to produce many Chungsong tractors.

The production capacity of the Chungsong Tractor Factory must not be increased. The capacity for producing the engines which are to
be allocated to the assembling plants for Chungsong tractors must not be increased either, and production must be increased with the existing capacity.

The State Planning Commission must give the Chungsong Tractor Factory next year’s production plan after conducting a detailed examination of its capacity.

The Chungsong Tractor Factory must be supplied with sufficient materials to ensure that it operates at full capacity. In future 600 tractors produced at this plant should be used in Kangwon Province.

The factory must repair and maintain its existing equipment well, improve its technical management and organize production more carefully in order to produce a large number of good-quality tractors.

The Wonsan Motor Factory, too, must not increase its production capacity, but place emphasis on improving the quality of the motors.

Some officials are saying that they intend to provide more machine tools and equipment for the Wonsan Motor Factory to increase its capacity to produce 4-hp motors. But as production is not proceeding smoothly because of a shortage of materials, it will simply be a waste of equipment and manpower to increase the factory’s production capacity. In the present circumstances, even though you may try to increase the production capacity of the factory, we have no machine tools for it. The machine tools must be concentrated, for the time being, on equipping the Ryongsong Machine Factory and the August 8 Factory. Quite a few factories and enterprises in this province are demanding machine tools, but these must be supplied to the June 4 Rolling Stock Factory alone, and the other factories must produce them by themselves by conducting the let-one-machine-tool-make-another movement. The June 4 Rolling Stock Factory must also produce ordinary machine tools for itself.

The Wonsan Motor Factory must operate its existing equipment at full capacity and make better motors.

A few years ago, because I was told that the Wonsan Motor Factory could produce 8,000 4-hp motors in a year, I gave instructions that more equipment should be supplied to it to enable it to produce 10,000
annually. It would be quite good for the factory to produce 10,000 4-hp motors annually by running its present equipment at full capacity. The problem is to improve the quality of the motors.

In the past the factory did not produce good-quality motors. My talks with farmers have revealed that some of the motors produced by that factory go wrong very quickly so that they cannot be used properly.

If the production capacity was increased now at the Wonsan Motor Factory, the motors may be made carelessly. Machines used by farmers must be made in such a way that they are simple and do not go wrong even though they are used for many years. The Wonsan Motor Factory must make its motors in this way. Since 10,000 motors are produced annually by the Wonsan Motor Factory, the production plan for rice-transplanting machines and rice-seedling pullers must be worked out accordingly.

You should offer good assistance to the May 18 Factory in order to increase the production of valves.

This factory is an important one producing various types of valves. In order to meet the daily-increasing demands of the national economy for valves, the factory must, in the future, raise its production of low-pressure valves to 1.5 to 2 million each year and also produce high-pressure and large-sized valves. It must be provided with the 50 machine tools and 300-strong labour force that are needed for increasing valve production.

I am told that although a building has been erected at this factory, it cannot be completed because of a lack of roofing material. I will ensure that this problem is solved.

The May 18 Factory should work hard to establish cultured habits in production so that it is kept clean and neat and tidy.

A guidance system for the Munchon Steel Works must be properly established and steel production there put on a normal basis.

This system has not yet been established properly. The province pays no attention to this works on the pretext that it belongs to the Ministry of Metallurgical Industry, and this ministry for its part,
having simply registered the works, gives it no substantial guidance. Consequently, steel production there is not smooth. In the past when the works belonged to the province, steel production was good, but after it was transferred to the Ministry of Metallurgical Industry, not enough steel has been produced. I think it would be best, if the ministry cannot guide the steel works, for it to be handed back to the province so that it can be guided by its general bureau for local industry, or for it to become a branch plant of a machine factory in Wonsan. The Administration Council should study the matter of establishing a proper system of guidance for the steel works.

The Administration Council and the Ministry of Metallurgical Industry must supply the Munchon Steel Works with adequate amounts of electrodes and other materials and equipment so that it can put steel production onto a steady basis.

The Wonsan Shipyard must adopt measures to build many ships.

The shipyard alleges that equipment and materials are in short supply, and has not built the 14,000-ton fish-salting transport and the 3,750-ton stern trawler which were scheduled to be finished in the first half of this year.

When giving personal guidance to Kangwon Province in October 1976, I criticized the shipyard because it was taking things easy and doing little shipbuilding, but it has taken no measures to put things right even after that. If the equipment and materials needed for building large ships were not provided in sufficient quantities, it should have either built small ships or at least repaired some ships or built wooden vessels with the equipment and materials available. But this was not done.

As the shipyard has thousands of workers and the equipment needed for building and repairing ships, it can build different types of small fishing vessels and repair any number of ships if only its officials organize production efficiently. The Party sent it 1,000 discharged soldiers because it was told that there was a strain on the manpower needed for building large ships at the shipyard. However, ships are not being built at this shipyard, and they are using the projects for
constructing the moorings and for a railway service line as an excuse. The 3,750-ton stern trawler allegedly built at the Wonsan Shipyard is the one which had been under construction at the Chongjin Shipyard and was brought here for completion.

Over the past four years, the shipyard has not worked properly, only bragging about building large ships. It is a very serious matter that they have been idle for as long as four years, while receiving food and salaries from the state. This is because the primary Party committee at the shipyard has failed to perform its function properly.

If any awkward problems had arisen in shipbuilding, the primary Party committee should have informed the city Party committee and the provincial Party committee and should have aroused the creativity and enterprising spirit of the workers so that steps could be taken to build any type of vessel with the equipment and materials available. But they did not do this. The attitude of the officials at the shipyard has been like that of lying under a pear tree and waiting for pears to fall into their mouths.

Whether the difficult problems can be solved and production proceed properly or not at factories and enterprises depends entirely on the work of the officials. At all the factories and enterprises where the officials make strenuous efforts to implement the Party’s policies, production is well under way. Those who do not endeavour to carry out Party policy are worthless.

The Organizational Leadership Department of the Party Central Committee must study and check in detail the work of the primary Party committee of the Wonsan Shipyard and wage a strong ideological struggle on the issue of the officials and the Party members at the shipyard not performing their jobs well in the past.

The failure of the Wonsan Shipyard to perform its duty can also be attributed to the incorrect guidance given it by the Kangwon Provincial and Wonsan City Party Committees.

At an enlarged plenary meeting of the Kangwon Provincial Party Committee, I severely criticized the senior officials of the provincial and city Party committees for their failure to visit the shipyard. Even
after that they have given it no meticulous guidance.

The provincial and city Party committees should have found ways to promote the expansion project at the shipyard, while continuing with shipbuilding, but they took no measures to build ships, engrossed only in the expansion project. If only their senior officials had encouraged the Wonsan Shipyard to produce at least the cooperative products for the June 4 Rolling Stock Factory and other factories in the province, the workers would not have been wasting time.

Even though they were quite aware that the Wonsan Shipyard was not building ships, they did not take the relevant steps. In particular, the first economic affairs department of the provincial Party committee did not provide proper guidance for the shipyard.

The State Planning Commission and the Ministry of Machine-building Industry No. 3 are also responsible for the failure to build ships at the shipyard.

When shipbuilding had been inefficient at the shipyard for several years in succession, the officials of the State Planning Commission should have visited it to discover the whys and the wherefores, and then taken steps. Given that the materials for building large ships were unavailable, they should have given it another plan to build small fishing boats, repair ships and also produce dredgers or cranes and the like with the equipment, materials and labour available. However, the State Planning Commission issued an impracticable plan and paid no attention whatsoever to its implementation.

The Ministry of Machine-building Industry No. 3 also gave no substantial guidance to the shipyard and took no responsibility for the work of the shipyard. Officials in the Ministry of Machine-building Industry No. 3 themselves seem to be fond of being idle.

The State Planning Commission and the Ministry of Machine-building Industry No. 3 must carefully calculate the production capacity of the Wonsan Shipyard and give it plans for building and repairing ships accordingly. Some officials request supplies of the equipment and materials which are needed for building large ships at the Wonsan Shipyard. In the present situation, however,
no amount of equipment and materials will enable the shipyard to build large ships. The State Planning Commission should also conduct a detailed investigation into the manpower situation at the shipyard and, if it does not need the 1,000 demobilized soldiers who have been sent there, had better transfer them to other sectors. Putting the main emphasis on building small fishing vessels and repairing ships, the shipyard must speed up its expansion.

Since there are small moorings and engines for small ships at the shipyard, a variety of fishing vessels can be built and ships repaired. The shipyard must repair not only ships under the Ministry of Fisheries, but also ships from other sectors.

Local factories must be provided with sufficient raw and other materials to enable their machines to operate at full capacity.

The biggest problem for local factories is that they are not provided with sufficient raw and other materials. The main factor in giving guidance to these factories is to ensure that supplies of raw and other materials for them are satisfactory.

The Wonsan Cornstarch Factory has put the production of cooking oil onto a steady basis, and this is a very good thing.

The Wonsan Electric Bulb Factory is not producing electric bulbs normally, and if this is due to a lack of heavy oil, relevant measures must be taken quickly. It was proposed that the heavy oil heating furnace should be converted into an electric one at this factory. But as it consumes only 30 tons of heavy oil in a month, the heavy oil heating furnace should be used as it is at present, even though it may be converted in the future.

In Kangwon Province, local factories should be supplied with sufficient raw materials to ensure normal production.

Guidance to industry must be radically improved.

One of the major reasons for there being no great progress made in the industrial sector here in the past lies in the fact that the provincial Party and administrative committees, the relevant departments of the Party Central Committee, and the Economy Commission of the Central People’s Committee, the Administration Council and its
relevant commissions and ministries have given it no proper guidance. Although production was irregular at some important factories and enterprises in Kangwon Province, including the June 4 Rolling Stock Factory, the Munphyong Smeltery, the Wonsan Shipyard and the May 18 Factory, the province and the central authorities concerned failed to take any measures to redress it. Although the June 4 Rolling Stock Factory was unable to produce wagons and repair locomotives on a regular basis, causing great difficulties for the nation’s rail transport, positive measures were not taken to put the matter to rights. Nor have the materials for repair work been supplied to the Munphyong Smeltery where production has been held up on account of difficulties in repair work. The State Planning Commission really should have supplied these materials to the Munphyong Smeltery so that they could undertake repairs on time, but it merely gave notification of production figures, neglecting to formulate a plan for the supply of the materials needed for repair work.

With a deep understanding of the importance of industry in Kangwon Province in the general development of the national economy, the province and the relevant central bodies must further improve their guidance to it.

Above all, the Kangwon Provincial Party and Administrative Committees must guide industry in the province skilfully.

Since these committees are responsible for guidance to industry in the province on the spot, they must give it more substantial guidance than other authorities do. Even though the relevant central organs direct central industry in the province, they are less familiar with its actual condition than the relevant provincial Party and administrative committees because they are distanced from it. As for industry in the province, these committees must guide it in a responsible manner.

The Kangwon Provincial Party Committee must reorganize well the heavy industry policy guidance section of its first economic affairs department and give substantial guidance to industry in the province. The provincial Party and administrative committees must solve promptly any awkward problems in the management and operation of
factories and enterprises in the province and bring those which are beyond their power to solve to the attention of the Party Central Committee, the Economy Commission of the Central People’s Committee or the Administration Council.

The departments of the Party Central Committee, the Economy Commission of the Central People’s Committee and the relevant commissions and ministries of the Administration Council must also improve their guidance to industry in Kangwon Province.

Now that the motorway between Pyongyang and Wonsan is open to traffic, it is more convenient for the central authorities to provide guidance for industry in this province. As it takes only two hours to reach Wonsan from Pyongyang by car along this motorway, the senior officials of central organs can drive to Wonsan to give guidance in the morning, as if taking a stroll, and return in the evening.

The senior officials of central organs must make frequent visits to the factories and enterprises in Kangwon Province to attend meetings of factory Party committees, Party cells and employees, get to know the actual state of affairs there and solve any difficult problems promptly.

The project for electrifying the railway between Pongsan and Kowon must be accelerated.

A few years ago a railway line was laid between Ichon and Sepho, thereby adding another line to the railway which links the east and west coasts and yet, it is not proving to be of much value because it has not been electrified.

Because the Pongsan-Kowon line has not been electrified, the trains have difficulty running up the slope between Sepho and Kosan, with the result that some passenger wagons alone can pass, but freight wagons can haul only a small quantity of goods. As a result, there is still a strain on the railway between Sinsongchon and Kowon and the problem of transportation between the east and west coasts remains unsolved. Owing to the failure to electrify this railway, goods going to Sepho or Phyonggang are unloaded at Kosan and trucks from the counties around Phyonggang have to come to Kosan, wasting a lot of petrol, to fetch them.
When the railway between Pongsan and Kowon was under construction initially, it should have been electrified. The Administration Council and the State Planning Commission, however, did not draw up far-sighted plans for the construction, but went ahead without due consideration. In order to ease the strain on rail transport between Sinsongchon and Kowon and carry goods from Kangwon Province, this railway must be electrified quickly. The Ministry of Railways, Kangwon Province and North Hwanghae Province must cooperate to complete the electrification of the railway by next year. The master in this project is, in all respects, the Ministry of Railways. For all that, Kangwon and North Hwanghae Provinces should not be indifferent to the electrification of this section. Although Kangwon Province will have to do a great deal of work next year, it must make great efforts for this undertaking. The People’s Army must also give substantial assistance.

It is not a very difficult matter to electrify the railway. All that you need to do is to secure mercury rectifiers or semi-conductor rectifiers, lower the floor of the tunnels slightly, erect electric pylons and lay copper wires. The semi-conductor rectifiers needed for the project are already available and the copper wire can also be obtained immediately. The Ministry of Railways and Kangwon and North Hwanghae Provinces must concentrate their efforts and complete this project by the end of next year, using every possible means.

Next, I will speak about the development of the fishing industry.

Each time I visit Kangwon Province, I emphasize the importance of increasing the amount of fish caught by developing the fishing industry, but this has not been done satisfactorily. During my current visit to Wonsan I have found that not a great deal of fish is on sale in the shops. Every possible measure must be taken to develop the fishing industry so that the people are supplied with fish all the year round.

In order to catch large quantities of fish, it is imperative to develop inshore fishing, small-scale fishing in particular, together with deep-sea fishing.

At the moment the officials of the fishing sector are putting too
much emphasis on deep-sea fishing, while neglecting small-scale fishing; this is not the way to increase the fish catch. Developing inshore fishing, particularly small-scale fishing, in parallel with deep-sea fishing, is a policy consistently maintained by our Party. However, the neglect of small-scale fishing results in the fact that the people are not supplied with fish regularly because there is a lack of it when fish is not caught in the deep sea.

The fishing sector must eliminate the practice of fishing in a speculative way, biased towards deep-sea fishing, and further develop small-scale fishing.

For the development of small-scale fishing, the workteams involved in this type of work must be separated from the fishing stations so that specialized stations can be set up. These stations must catch fish by using gill nets and multiple hooks, by angling and by applying various other methods. It would be a good idea to employ a large number of old people and women at these stations.

The prices of fish must be set properly in order to develop small-scale fishing.

The current neglect of this fishing is connected, to some extent, with the low prices set for the fish caught by this method. The prices of the fish caught in this way should not be the same as those of the fish caught by the fishing stations with large vessels and fishing gear. If the prices of fish caught by means of small-scale fishing are set absurdly low, no one will want to become involved in this type of fishing.

The sector concerned must study all the prices of fish and adjust them correctly. The price of one kilogramme of the fish caught through small-scale fishing must be assessed as equivalent to several kilogrammes of fish caught with large vessels and fishing gear and, in accordance with this, the salaries of the fishermen must be fixed.

A proper plan for fish production must be issued, as well.

This plan cannot be given uniformly to the fishing stations which catch fish with large fishing vessels and tackle and to small-scale fishing workteams, fishermen’s cooperatives and fishing workteams at cooperative farms which catch fish with small vessels and tackle. The
relevant sector must conduct detailed inquiries into the amounts of fish which the small-scale fishing workteams, fishermen’s cooperatives and fishing workteams at cooperative farms can possibly catch per day, before giving them accurate plans.

The fishing stations which use large vessels for catching fish must also be given accurate plans.

At present, the fishing stations spend nine months in a year doing nothing in particular, and fulfil their annual plans by catching pollack for three months, when it is in season. It is wrong to give plans in this way. In 1976 when giving field guidance in Kangwon Province, I was severely critical of the fishermen for catching insignificant amounts of fish for the nine months other than the three months of the pollack season, but this bad practice has not yet been rectified. In spite of the fact that the state ensured that even multipurpose ships were built to catch good quantities of fish, no great advance has been made.

The sector concerned must draw up accurate plans to catch fish throughout the year. Besides the annual plan for catching fish, plans for catching pollack in the winter season and for summer-time fishing must be issued on a monthly basis and must be carried out without fail. If the monthly plans are not carried out, reduced pay must be given. At the moment, the fishermen are provided with rice and pay as well as holidays and compensatory rest days when they return from fishing, irrespective of whether they have caught any fish or not. We need to study this matter.

I deem it advisable to apply the law of value correctly to the fishing sector. The relevant sector should study this matter.

I shall make my final conclusion concerning small-scale fishing in the future after further scrutinizing the work of the fishing sector in North and South Hamgyong Provinces.

Lastly, I will speak briefly about improving city management.

Since Wonsan is the capital of Kangwon Province, and it is a port and cultural and holiday city, its management must be excellent. Efficient city management is the way to provide the conditions for its citizens to lead cultured lives and further accelerate the cultural
revolution in the rural communities. If Wonsan is dirty because it is not looked after properly, there will be nothing for the rural people to learn from it.

Wonsan must be managed all the better because many foreigners visit it. If poorly maintained, it will not show them how cultured are our people’s lives and, still worse, might bring disgrace on our country.

Nowadays, city management is unsatisfactory in most of our cities. Therefore, we are going to deliberate upon the matter of improving city management and adopt some appropriate measures at a plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee to be held in the middle of November this year. One month and a half are left before the opening of this meeting, during which the central authorities are going to acquaint themselves with the management of Wonsan in all its aspects and take measures for its improvement in order to develop it as a model unit.

If the management of Wonsan is examined in detail, this will be good for making scrupulous preparations for the plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee and will also serve to improve the management of the city. The Vice-Premier in charge of public welfare, together with the officials of the city management sector, must study and check the management of Wonsan as a whole and report any difficult problems. We will solve all the difficult problems arising in improving the management of this city.

Since this enlarged plenary meeting of the Kangwon Provincial Party Committee has not deliberated in detail on the management of Wonsan, we shall adopt a separate decision on improving its management in the future.

The team studying the management of Wonsan must first closely examine the water supply and sewerage facilities in the city.

It is said that because the sewerage works were not constructed properly in the city, disposing of sewage is a serious problem at the moment. Measures must be taken to dispose of sewage. As it will be difficult to produce the Hume concrete pipes needed for the sewerage works in Wonsan immediately, it would be a good idea to fetch some
of those made in Hamhung. If you organize the work skilfully, you will be able to produce these pipes by yourselves in the future because there is a cement factory in the province.

The state of the bathhouses, barber’s shops and other public service establishments must also be evaluated and steps must be taken to improve them.

Apparently there are not enough bathhouses in Wonsan. You ought not to cause inconvenience to the citizens in their lives by failing to provide enough bathhouses in a provincial capital. Currently, all the rural villages have bathhouses and they are used regularly.

Pyongyang, too, has only a few good bathhouses. When I was Chairman of the Pyongyang Municipal Rehabilitation Commission after the war, we built bathhouse No. 1 beside Kim Chaek University of Technology; but subsequently we have constructed few good ones. Recently, I instructed the Party Central Committee to build a wonderful bathhouse in Pyongyang where about 1,000 people could take a bath at one time.

Many bathhouses must be built in Wonsan, too. Even though other construction projects may have to be delayed there, bathhouses should be built before anything else.

You should have a good understanding of the general situation of housing in Wonsan, too, and adopt measures to furnish the houses well. In particular, you should have a good idea of what the interior facilities of high-rise flats are like. These buildings ought to be provided with waterworks and flushing stools. Although many multi-storey buildings have been built in some cities, the people living in them are inconvenienced because water is not supplied regularly. That is why they are complaining that living there is no better than living in single-storey houses. You should conduct detailed investigations into high-rise flats in the city; the state of the water supply, the installation of flushing stools, the fitting of window panes, underfloor heating, furnishings, leak-proofing and other matters.

Other difficult problems in the management of Wonsan must all be investigated, and a detailed plan which includes the dates of their
solution drawn up and submitted.

If the province organizes things well, it can improve the management of Wonsan within a short period. Since the city includes the June 4 Rolling Stock Factory, the Wonsan Shipyard, the May 18 Factory, the Wonsan Motor Factory and many other large factories and enterprises, you can develop the city efficiently enough simply by making effective use of the labour and materials that are currently being wasted. You will probably be able to develop Wonsan well if you mobilize only the workers from the Wonsan Shipyard who are now idling about.

The transportation problem in Wonsan must be tackled, too.

Recently the Party Central Committee decided to allocate ten urban buses each to Wonsan and Hamhung. It would be a good idea to give Wonsan more buses and start a trolley-bus service there, but it is impossible to do so at the moment. It would be a good idea for the city to let many of the citizens ride bicycles. This will be good for their health and also prevent pollution.

Because there are too many vehicles in Tokyo, Japan, the exhaust from them pollutes the air. So in many cases those living on and above the second floor of tall buildings fall ill, so it is reported.

A Doctor of Medicine from one country, who has been to Beijing, is said to have commented that Beijing has fewer cancer and TB sufferers than New York, because there are not many vehicles there. In Beijing a great many people ride bicycles. Not only the men but also elderly women travel around on bicycles there. On this visit I have seen few people riding bicycles in Wonsan.

With the opening of the Chongchon Bridge, we sent approximately 10,000 bicycles to Anju County, and the result of this was that the problem working people had with commuting was completely solved.

Bicycles must be mass-produced and supplied to the citizens of Wonsan. I am told that the June 4 Rolling Stock Factory can produce about 2,000 bicycles annually. It had better produce that amount for the citizens of Wonsan. When bicycles are mass-produced in the future, young people must be encouraged to use them, while only the children
and old people are allowed to travel on the buses. The production of tricycles must also be increased. A tricycle can carry a load of 200 to 300 kg. When I visited one country, I saw they were using tricycles for carrying the supplies to be used at guest houses. Since the June 4 Rolling Stock Factory can produce all the parts needed for the production of bicycles by itself, it must organize the work well and mass-produce bicycles. The machine tools needed for this purpose will be supplied next year. This year they must be allocated to three provinces—North and South Phyongan Provinces and one other. In order to carry out with success the tasks confronting Kangwon Province, the provincial Party committee, the master of the province, must give correct Party guidance to its administrative and economic affairs. By further strengthening this guidance, it should bring about a radical improvement in the work of the province.
ON ESTABLISHING A PROPER SYSTEM FOR GUIDING THE FISHING INDUSTRY AND STRENGTHENING THE MATERIAL AND TECHNICAL FOUNDATIONS OF THIS INDUSTRY

Speech at a Consultative Meeting of Officials from the Fishing Industry in South Hamgyong Province

October 12, 1978

Developing the fishing industry is the quickest way of solving the problem of non-staple foodstuffs for the people in our country, it being bounded by the sea on three sides.

Despite the adverse influence of the cold front, our country reaps an extremely rich harvest every year by raising crops in accordance with the Juche farming method. As a result, we provide the people with sufficient food and vegetables. If we can only find a solution to the problem of meat and fish, we shall be able to improve the standard of their diet noticeably. However, it is no easy matter to develop livestock and poultry farming and provide the people with enough meat. In the past we built pig and chicken plants in many parts of the country, but we are still unable to supply all the meat and eggs to the people that they need because we fail to provide sufficient feed to these plants. However, if we make efforts to develop the fishing industry, we shall be able to supply an adequate amount of fish to the people all the year round.

Therefore, in 1976 I visited your province and convened a Meeting
of Activists from the Fishing Industry on the East Coast at which I emphasized the need to develop the fishing industry and provide the people with fish throughout the year.

Within about two years since this meeting the fishing sector has made its fishing boats all-purpose and achieved remarkable success in laying the material and technical foundations of the fishing industry. In spite of this, it does not catch fish satisfactorily because it has not yet modernized its fishing boats and has not introduced scientific fishing methods widely.

Fishing workers are not interested in landing fish in the summer, being preoccupied only with pollack fishing in the winter. Furthermore, they think only of landing fish with large boats and neglect wide-scale miscellaneous fishing. During my current visit I have discovered that the officials at the fishing stations make the fishermen of small-scale fishing workteams serve large fishing vessels instead of sending them out to sea to catch fish themselves. They have no regard for small-scale fishing, claiming that large vessels will be able to fulfil the plans which have to be carried out by small-scale fishing workteams if they put to sea a couple of times more than they do at present.

Even though they want to land a large amount of fish, the fishermen’s cooperatives and fishing workteams at cooperative farms cannot do so because they do not have many motor-driven vessels and are short of nets, fish-hooks and other types of fishing gear. However, no one is making any concerted efforts to supply them with this equipment. The local bureau which is in charge of directing the fishing industry looks after the fishermen’s cooperatives, but no one shows any interest in the fishing workteams at cooperative farms.

We must rectify the shortcomings which are evident in fishing as soon as possible and adopt measures to make greater progress in the fishing industry.

A proper system for directing the fishing industry must be established as a matter of priority.

It is only when this system is reorganized to meet the requirements
of the changing situation that the fishing industry can be further developed through the efficient direction of state-owned and cooperative fisheries.

In the reorganization of the system for guiding the fishing industry it is important that the fishermen’s cooperatives and fishing workteams at cooperative farms are directed by industrial methods of management.

There are many fishermen’s cooperatives and fishing workteams at cooperative farms, but no one is responsible for directing them. We are unable to catch fish properly because these cooperatives and workteams are directed by administrative rather than industrial methods of management. Therefore, we must set up a new system for guiding their management and direct them by industrial methods.

A council of fishermen’s cooperatives must be set up in each county in order to offer coordinated direction to these cooperatives and the fishing workteams at cooperative farms. There are 10 counties on the coast in South Hamgyong Province. It will be very good if councils of fishermen’s cooperatives are formed in these counties and made to direct the fishermen’s cooperatives and the fishing workteams at cooperative farms in the counties in a coordinated manner. You might call the county council of fishermen’s cooperatives the county fishermen’s cooperative management committee. However, if you call it that, it is not so good because its name will be similar to the county cooperative farm management committee. On the other hand, you might call it the county federation of fishermen’s cooperatives. However, this name will not be so good either because it sounds old-fashioned.

The county council of fishermen’s cooperatives is not the same as the county cooperative farm management committee. The county cooperative farm management committee is an organ which is exclusively in charge of directing agriculture. It gives direct guidance to cooperative farms and puts the material and technical assistance of the state into effect through the medium of those establishments and enterprises which serve agriculture, such as the farm implement
factory, the irrigation administration station and the farm machine station. However, the county council of fishermen’s cooperatives is a form of cooperative economy which manages the fishermen’s cooperatives and the fishing workteams at cooperative farms in the given county in a coordinated manner. In plain words, we can say that this council, which is an amalgamation of the fishermen’s cooperative economy in the county, can be likened to the management board of a cooperative farm.

The property of the county council of fishermen’s cooperatives consists of the joint property of the fishermen’s cooperatives and the fishing workteams at cooperative farms in the county. Therefore, in a sense it can be likened to a stock company. This council must be elected by the representatives of the fishermen’s cooperatives and the fishing workteams at cooperative farms in the county and should conduct all economic activities, from the organization of production to distribution, in conformity with standard regulations. The standard regulations of the county council of fishermen’s cooperatives must cover the elections to the council and all its economic activities in detail. They must also define the duties of the director general of the council of the county fishermen’s cooperatives.

The managerial staff of the county council of fishermen’s cooperatives must be made to take part in the joint profit share system of the cooperative economy instead of receiving pay from the state as the management of the cooperative farms does. The standard regulations of the county council of fishermen’s cooperatives must also stipulate how much of the profit of the cooperative economy should be put aside as joint savings and how much should be paid to the state before the distribution of profits. It must be a rule that a certain amount of money is paid to the state out of the profits of the cooperative economy.

The state is enforcing free medical treatment and universal 11-year compulsory education. So it would be a good idea for part of the profits earned by the cooperative economies to be paid to the state. I think it would be best to decide on the amount of money to be paid to the state
at a meeting of workers at the fishermen’s cooperative and of the fishing workteam at a cooperative farm. Economic activities must be reviewed quarterly and at that time the amount of money which will be paid to the state out of the profits which have been earned during the given quarter must be made public.

A provincial cooperative fisheries management committee must be set up in each province, and this will be in charge of directing cooperative fishing.

The provincial cooperative fisheries management committee must be a state organization which directs the fishermen’s cooperatives and the fishing workteams at cooperative farms in the given province by industrial methods and serves cooperative fishing.

The county cooperative farm management committee directs the cooperative farms in the given county by industrial methods through the state organs and state-owned enterprises which serve agriculture. In the same way, the provincial cooperative fisheries management committee must guide the fishermen’s cooperatives and the fishing workteams at cooperative farms through the medium of the state bodies and state-owned enterprises which serve cooperative fishing. Therefore, the provincial cooperative fisheries management committee must have a ship repair works, a fishing gear factory, a net factory, a motor vehicle company, a fishing village construction corps, a materials supply branch agency, a petrol station and the like.

It is only when the provincial cooperative fisheries management committee has these state organs and state-owned enterprises at its disposal that it will be able to undertake, in a responsible manner, technical direction, materials supply and ship repair work for the fishermen’s cooperatives and the fishing workteams at cooperative farms in the given province. The officials of this committee must receive pay from the state.

The fishermen’s cooperatives and the fishing workteams at cooperative farms must conduct a detailed study into how they can increase their catch, how the landed fish should be stored and dried, how the sale of fish should be organized, how the ships should be
repaired and how the fishing gear should be supplied.

Another important aspect of the reorganization of the system of directing the fishing industry is to separate small-scale fishing workteams from the fishing stations and establish a station which is engaged exclusively in small-scale fishing.

In our current investigation of the fishing sector here in South Hamgyong Province, we have found that fishermen in the small-scale fishing workteams under the fishing stations are mobilized to do other work instead of putting to sea.

It seems to me that it will be impossible to develop miscellaneous fishing if the small-scale fishing workteams remain under the control of the fishing stations as is the practice now. The small-scale fishing workteams under the fishing stations are not catching any more fish than the fishermen’s cooperatives. Such being the case, if the small-scale fishing quotas of the fishing stations are trebled, they will not be able to fulfil them. Furthermore, it is only the small-scale fishing workteams that will have difficulties. Therefore, it would be a good idea to separate small-scale fishing workteams from the fishing stations and set up separate stations to engage exclusively in small-scale fishing. It would be advisable to call these new stations state-owned small-scale fishing stations.

Once a separate state-owned small-scale fishing station has been set up, solid material and technical foundations must be laid for it. Once this station is set up, profit shares must be distributed as is done by the fishermen’s cooperative, but fishing operations must not be undertaken in cooperation with the fishing station. If the state-owned small-scale fishing station catches fish jointly with the fishing station, things may retrogress again. Therefore, strong material and technical foundations must be laid for the state-owned small-scale fishing station so that it will be able to manage on its own.

Until material and technical means are provided for the state-owned small-scale fishing station, the fish landed by it must be stored in the salting tanks and refrigerator plants at the fishing stations. There are many salting tanks which are unused and refrigerator plants which are
not used to capacity at the fishing stations. The state-owned small-scale fishing station should be entitled to use these salting tanks and refrigerator plants, and if the officials of the fishing stations refuse to lend them, legal action must be taken.

The size of the staff to manage the state-owned small-scale fishing station must not be too large; its structure must be functional.

It would be advisable for this station to have four or five people to form its managerial staff—a manager, Party secretary, accountant and an official in charge of materials. If the management structure is made up of a lot of people such as a “head”, a “chief” and the like, the size of the nonproductive work force will be considerably increased. The organization chart of the state-owned small-scale fishing station must be drafted in line with what I have said.

The management structures of the new state-owned small-scale fishing stations must not be all the same, but must suit the actual situation at each station. You must draw up everything in detail, taking into consideration the actual situation at every station. You must fix the number of people in the managerial staff and determine the grade of every new state-owned small-scale fishing station, taking into consideration the size of the work force and the number of ships in the small-scale fishing workteam at a given fishing station.

The work of separating small-scale fishing workteams from the fishing stations to form state-owned small-scale fishing stations must also be done by taking into account the situation at each fishing station. There are 11 fishing stations in South Hamgyong Province. Of these the Sinpho Fishing Station has no small-scale fishing workteam and the Ryongdae Fishing Station is small and, therefore, must retain its small-scale fishing workteam. You must examine the small-scale fishing workteams at the remaining nine fishing stations and then set up state-owned small-scale fishing stations.

The state-owned small-scale fishing stations must be run so that they balance their own books. These stations must put aside, out of their net income, the amount of money which must be paid to the state and the joint savings and then share out what remains among their
employees. In doing so, they must ensure that the workers get a large share when they bring in a big catch and a small one when they catch little. Then fishermen at the state-owned small-scale fishing stations will not make nets on dry land and do other kinds of similar work, but put out to sea and try to land large quantities of fish.

It is necessary to fix the limit of income distribution among the fishermen at the state-owned small-scale fishing stations. A monthly pay limit has been fixed for the workers at state-owned fruit farms. They receive between 120 and 150 won, depending on the amount of work they have done. We introduced this method after considering it closely. You must review its effectiveness, and if it proves worthwhile, it would be a good idea to use this method at the state-owned small-scale fishing stations.

Some people have expressed the opinion that it would be a good idea to appropriate the savings of the state-owned small-scale fishing stations and use them in laying their foundations for a few years. How the savings will be spent is another matter. You must set aside savings, no matter for what purpose they will be used.

Another important factor in the reorganization of the system for directing the fishing industry is to establish a proper system for guiding the sideline fishing workteams at administrative establishments and industrial enterprises.

Those counties in which there are more than three such sideline fishing workteams should set up a sideline fishing workteam management board. Some people are now proposing that the sideline fishing workteams under these establishments and enterprises should be made an independent enterprise in the same way that the small-scale fishing workteams under the fishing stations are organized into state-owned small-scale fishing stations. You must not do this. If these sideline fishing workteams are made an independent enterprise, it will need a managerial staff which means many “heads” and “chiefs” such as a manager, a chief engineer, a chief accountant, a materials supply manager and a seller. Such being the case, there will be a larger management work force than people actually engaged in fishing.
Therefore, the sideline fishing workteams at administrative establishments and industrial enterprises must be retained as they are and each of them must have a workteam leader, a Party secretary, a technical director and a statistician, like workteam No. 3 under Farm No. 7.

This workteam has only the abovementioned four people as managers. In the past this workteam was a cooperative farm which had a managerial staff of 11 people including a management board chairman, its vice-chairman, a Party secretary and a senior agronomist. So we reduced the number to four and converted the farm into a workteam. We formed the management board at the Jangsuwon Cooperative Farm to guide the workteams and made sure that this board was directly in charge of giving technical guidance and supplying materials to the workteams. We also ensured that each workteam was made a cost-accounting unit for the purpose of distribution.

Hamhung and Sinpho in South Hamgyong Province, Wonsan and Munchon County in Kangwon Province and Chongjin could organize a city or county management board of sideline fishing workteams. Hamhung could form this board by merging the sideline fishing workteams at the Hungnam Fertilizer Complex, the Ryongsong Machine Factory and at other establishments and enterprises, and Sinpho could organize one by amalgamating four sideline fishing workteams which belong to establishments and enterprises. Also Wonsan and Munchon County will each be able to form a management board by merging the sideline fishing workteams at their establishments and enterprises.

Even those cities and counties in which there are only one or two sideline fishing workteams belonging to establishments and enterprises must not leave them under these establishments and enterprises. If the sideline fishing workteams are left under their respective establishments and enterprises, these will mobilize the fishermen for other jobs ill-advisedly, just as is the case at present with the small-scale fishing workteams under the fishing stations.
Those cities and counties in which there are one or two sideline fishing workteams which belong to establishments and enterprises may reorganize these workteams into a fishermen’s cooperative and transfer it to the city or county council of fishermen’s cooperatives.

Those sideline fishing workteams which the establishments and enterprises operate seasonally must be retained under them. The Central Committee of the League of Socialist Working Youth runs a seasonal sideline fishing workteam in order to supply fish in the summer when the Children’s Union camps are being run. This fishing workteam is tantamount to the sideline farm at an establishment or an enterprise. Those sideline fishing workteams which are run by establishments and enterprises seasonally must be retained by them.

There are many sideline fishing workteams under establishments and enterprises on the west coast. We intend to reorganize them in a different way.

The coastal provinces must organize fishing management bureaux to direct the state-owned fishing industry.

The small-scale fishing workteams are to be separated from the fishing stations to form state-owned small-scale fishing stations. Therefore, there will be no need to retain the present General Bureau of Fishing Industry. We set up the General Bureau of Fishing Industry on the East Coast and the General Bureau of Fishing Industry on the West Coast. We did this with a view to directing the fishing industry both on the east and west coasts because the senior officials of the Ministry of Fisheries only visited the east coast and stayed there, and did not supervise and guide fishing operations throughout the country. These two general bureaux are not engaged in enterprise management, but merely direct production. Therefore, we must close them down and establish fisheries management bureaux in the coastal provinces.

If the provincial fisheries management bureau is established in the form of a complex, its officials will work in their own way and behave bureaucratically. Therefore, it would be advisable for the provinces to set up a fisheries management bureau as I have suggested, instead of forming a fisheries complex.
The provincial fisheries management bureau must be subordinated both to the province and to the Ministry of Fisheries. This bureau must have a materials supply branch agency and an establishment in charge of directing the county management board of sideline fishing workteams.

To proceed. The material and technical foundations of the fishing industry must be strengthened.

Unless this is done, it will be impossible to fish throughout the year even if we reorganize the system for directing the fishing industry. If we are to catch a fine haul of fish all the year round, we must strengthen the material and technical foundations of the fishing stations, the fishermen’s cooperatives and the fishing workteams at cooperative farms.

To this end, it is necessary above all else to modernize our fishing boats.

In the two years since the Meeting of Activists from the Fishing Industry on the East Coast, the fishing industry has converted many of its fishing boats into general-purpose vessels. However, this industry has not been supplied with the modern scientific and technical equipment it needs for fishing. It is true that this industry has search vessels which are fitted with modern equipment, but this alone is not enough to ensure that fishing can be done throughout the year.

During my current visit to your province I have had talks with fishermen at the fishing stations, and discovered that last year they caught a small amount of sardines, and this was not because the shoals of this fish turned back after reaching the Military Demarcation Line. This year, too, the waters off the east coast were teeming with large shoals of sardines. However, our fishermen could not catch a lot of them because the fishing boats were not fitted with modern scientific and technical equipment such as loran receivers and horizontal detectors. The search vessels signalled to the fishing boats to come to them when they detected shoals of sardines, but these boats could not find them because they were not equipped with loran receivers. As a result, they lost the chance to catch these fish. Furthermore, the fishing
boats sailed past shoals of sardines which were only some 15 metres away from them, because they had no horizontal detectors.

If you had imported modern scientific and technical equipment such as loran receivers and horizontal detectors and installed them on the fishing boats, they would have been able to land more than 100,000 tons of sardines this year. It is unreasonable that despite having good, general-purpose vessels we cannot catch large quantities of sardines because we fail to provide them with a few types of modern scientific and technical equipment.

The fact that we cannot land large quantities of the sardines which swarm in the sea off the east coast can also be attributed to the fishing workers’ poor knowledge of fishing techniques and their inexperience in catching sardines.

The officials of the fishing industry are not giving any thought to catching sardines, fish which are fond of light, by making use of this characteristic. If a light is attached to the nets at night when they are being cast or after they have been cast, the sardines will follow the light until they are caught in the nets. It is said that the sardines, however, only swarm around the boats and do not enter the nets because it is only the boats that are lit and not the nets.

It is true that the officials in charge of the fishing industry may have no clear idea of what types of scientific and technical equipment and nets are needed for sardine fishing and how they should be caught, because they have had no experience in catching sardines. However, they will be able to learn about it if they carefully read foreign literature on experience in sardine fishing or the information carried in the Report on New Techniques.

Those who used simply to accompany others when catching sardines in the days of Japanese imperialist rule have no experience of any particular value in sardine fishing. On one occasion when I visited Kangwon Province I asked a 70-year old man, who apparently had been engaged in fishing from the days of Japanese imperialist rule, how sardines should be caught. However, it turned out he knew nothing about it. Although he had occasionally taken part in catching
sardines aboard a ship run by a Japanese imperialist, he had only cleaned the deck and dealt with the catch. Therefore, there is nothing we can learn from such people about sardine fishing.

We must do everything in our power to land large quantities of a variety of fish such as sardines by widely introducing scientific fishing methods which are suited to the conditions of our country.

If fishing vessels are to be modernized, they must be provided with different types of the modern scientific and technical equipment and fishing gear which are needed in fishing.

It will take our country some time to produce all the modern scientific and technical equipment we need, such as loran receivers and horizontal detectors. So it would be a good idea to import some.

There is no need to install such modern scientific and technical equipment as loran receivers on every fishing boat. At present the fishing boats at the fishing stations catch fish by being organized into several fleets. So it will be perfectly all right to provide one loran receiver for each fleet and equip the other fishing boats with ultra-short wave radio sets so that they can keep in contact with each other. Moreover, now that we are confronted with an enemy, it is preferable to conduct fishing operations by forming fleets, each of which consists of several vessels, rather than by boats operating individually. Providing each fleet with one loran receiver and horizontal detector will not mean having to import many of them.

Equipment for catching fish by electric light must also be imported. If we had provided the fishing boats with this equipment this year, we would have been able to land 30,000 to 40,000 tons of saury alone. You must examine in detail what kinds of equipment for catching fish by electric light we have and import those which we need.

At the same time as importing the scientific and technical equipment which is needed for the modernization of our fishing boats, we must take steps to produce some for ourselves.

Fishing boats must be provided with different kinds of modern fishing gear.

The marine resources in waters off our east coast are abundant and
they include sedentary and migratory varieties of fish. Apparently today some People’s Army soldiers have caught a bucketful of salt-water fish with their bare hands in just a short while. However, because this year we have failed to provide the fishing boats with different types of fishing gear such as nets and hooks, as we should have done, we could not catch any great amount of sardines in the summer and are also losing the chance to catch the anchovies which teem in the autumn.

The fishermen who went out to sea to catch sardines say that this year they were swarming into the waters off our east coast: first large ones, then medium-sized ones and finally small ones. In spite of this, they could not land the big ones because last year we made only one kind of net—with a 20-millimetre mesh. This was why the fish were not caught in the nets. So they made nets with a wider mesh, but by that time small fish were teeming and they escaped through the mesh. If the fishermen had known the specific characteristics of the sardine and prepared three or four different kinds of net to suit these characteristics, they would have been able to land all the varieties of sardines—both large and small.

This is true of anchovies, too. Those anchovies which come to our fishing grounds in autumn are a little smaller than those which come in spring. Apparently, therefore, the nets used in spring are not suitable to land this smaller anchovy. However, we lost our chance to catch the shoals of anchovy which came in autumn because we failed to provide the fishing boats with a different kind of net.

Fishermen in the fishing workteam at the Sojung Cooperative Farm in Thoejo County also said that they failed to make large catches because of a shortage of nets.

If we are to increase the size of the catch, we must produce large quantities of different kinds of good-quality fishing gear, including nets, so that we shall be able to land fish all the year round whatever their sizes, and whether they live in the shallow sea or in the deep sea.

It would be a good idea to buy nylon thread from abroad and make nets with it to suit our marine conditions and fishing methods. Nylon
nets can be used for a long time because they do not rot quickly in salt water and are tough. Vinalon nets, however, can only be used for a few years because they soon rot in salt water. Every year the fishing industry uses several thousand tons of vinalon cotton to make nets, but this is not economical. It is better to send the vinalon cotton which is now being used for making nets to our light industry factories so that they can weave fabric and make clothes and sell them to other countries, and instead buy nylon thread from abroad to make nets.

When the polythene factory at the Youth Chemical Complex is put into operation, we shall also have to produce polythene nets.

You must provide sufficient equipment and materials to the net factories in Hamhung and Sinpho so that different kinds of good nets can be mass-produced.

We must recover used nets. A rigid system must be established so that when new nets are supplied to the fishing sector, old ones are recovered.

In order to strengthen the material and technical foundations of the fishing industry, it is also necessary to establish a good spare parts production centre.

The present situation is such that the fishing industry cannot repair its fishing boats promptly because there is no such centre for it. You must establish a good spare parts production centre for the fishing industry so that it can produce for itself the different spare parts it needs for the fishing boats.

It will be a good idea to build the spare parts production centre for the fishing industry with a machine factory as the parent body. Then it will take only a short time to build the centre. However, the fishing industry has no machine factory that is suitable for conversion into a spare parts production centre. Therefore, the Ministry of Machine-building Industry No. 1 must consider whether it is able to transfer a machine factory to the Ministry of Fisheries.

The Ministry of Fisheries has asked for the December 5 Factory to be handed over to it. If this factory is transferred, the production of radial drilling machines will be confronted with immediate difficulties.
I think that it would be a good idea to convert one of the machine factories in either Hamhung, Wonsan, Chongjin or Sinpho into a spare parts production centre for the fishing industry.

The Ministry of Fisheries must also consider whether it will be possible to expand the repair and power-supply shop at one fishing station to convert it into a spare parts production centre.

You could possibly try to build a spare parts production centre near the Sinpho Shipyard, but the area of building land there is limited. When I visited this shipyard in 1976 I was barely able to find a site for a dock on the coast because the land area was so limited.

The March 13 Fishing Machine Factory is too small to be converted into a spare parts production centre.

It will be possible to build a large spare parts production centre with the branch spare parts factory under the Kim Chaek Fishing Station as the parent body. If the centre is built in the City of Kim Chaek, it will be convenient because the steel produced by the Songjin Steel Plant can be used there.

I think that it would not be a bad idea to convert this branch spare parts factory into a spare parts production centre because it is large.

The problem of the equipment to be installed at the spare parts production centre will be solved if each machine factory supplies one machine tool. The problem of the automatic crankshaft cutter will be solved if the January 18 Factory makes one through the let-one-machine-tool-make-another movement.

If each of the commissions and ministries of the Administration Council produces one item of the equipment needed for establishing the spare parts production centre and hands it over to the Ministry of Fisheries, it will be possible to set up this centre in a short time without any need to import the equipment from abroad.

Of the equipment needed for establishing the spare parts production centre for the fishing industry, that which should be imported must be bought abroad.

It will be a good idea to convert the Sinpho Electronics Factory into a centre for repairing the electronic machinery installed on fishing
boats and for producing spare parts for it. This factory was built in order to lay the material and technical foundations of the fishing industry. However, it is now under the Ministry of Machine-building Industry No. 1. This ministry should transfer the Sinpho Electronics Factory to the Ministry of Fisheries and assign the production of those items which it has so far been carrying out to another factory.

We must also develop our ship repair yards. It will be impossible to repair our fishing boats promptly if such yards are not established properly, even if the parts needed for our fishing boats are produced in large quantities. You must ensure that fishing boats are repaired without delay by providing the existing dry docks and ship repair yards with those machines which they are either short of or do not have.

It is also necessary to improve the Pyongyang Radio Repair Factory. Apparently this factory intends to produce detectors, but there is no need for it to try to produce things it finds difficult to make on its own.

Many of the fishing boats at the disposal of the fishermen’s cooperatives are wooden ones. All that is needed to repair them is carpenters and sawing machines.

In order to strengthen the material and technical foundations of the fishing industry it is necessary to make a lot of fishing boats and motorize those boats which are not yet motor-driven.

The 400-hp boat is the most suitable for fishing operations. At the moment some people are asking for 1,000-ton fishing boats and some others are requesting 800-ton boats. However, right at the moment we are in no position to make 1,000-ton vessels. Even if we assign the task of making these boats now, they will be completed only next autumn or the year after next. Therefore, next year you must finish the 3,750-ton boats now under construction and produce as many 400-hp fishing boats as possible.

The problem of making more factory ships must be considered.

Small fishing boats must be converted into motor-driven ones.

Many of the boats belonging to the fishermen’s cooperatives and the fishing workteams at cooperative farms are not yet motor-driven.
Therefore, even if the fishermen set out for the fishing grounds at dawn, they can only reach there at noon by rowing, with the result that they cannot catch much fish. It is not only arduous but also unsafe to fish from a boat which is not motor-driven. Therefore, fishermen are reluctant to put out to sea, and simply try to make nets on dry land. In spite of this, the senior officials of the fishing industry have adopted no measures to motorize the boats that are engaged in small-scale fishing. Doing so is not very difficult. All that is needed is to install either a motor or a tractor engine on the fishing boat.

The equipment and materials needed to motorize fishing boats must be sold to the fishermen’s cooperatives and the fishing workteams at cooperative farms. Although we have given instructions to convert the fishing boats at the disposal of the fishermen’s cooperatives and the fishing workteams at cooperative farms into motor-driven ones, there is no need to carry out this task in the same way that the farm machinery hire stations were set up in the past.

No fishing boat with a capacity greater than 200 hp should be supplied to the fishermen’s cooperatives and the fishing workteams at cooperative farms. However, there is no harm in them having large vessels in the future. Therefore, you must not ask them to hand back all their large boats.

Fish must be processed well.

In this way the people can be provided with fish throughout the year. Nevertheless, at the moment some fish, which have cost so much labour to catch, are rotting because they are not processed promptly.

Pollack roe and entrails are not processed well. In the past when members of the Political Committee of the Party Central Committee went to fishing stations to give guidance to fish processing, large quantities of salted roe and salted fish gut were produced, but this is not the case now.

The fishing industry must process fish well and supply a variety of good and nutritious processed fish to the people.

Fish should be salted and frozen so that not a single one will rot. It is better to salt such fish as sardines. You must salt large quantities of
seafoods such as roe and fish gut. If they are processed well, we shall be able to sell them to other countries and buy various types of fishing gear.

The cold-storage installations for those fishing stations which supply fish to the capital must be provided responsibly by the relevant organs.

You must work out a plan for installing oil presses on fishing boats. Sardines rot quickly in summer. Therefore, the oil must be extracted from those which cannot be frozen immediately. However, even if large quantities of sardines are landed, we cannot extract the oil from them because large fishing boats are not fitted with oil-extracting equipment.

Measures must be adopted to install oil-extracting equipment as well as cold-storage installations on all factory ships.

You must undertake shallow-sea aquaculture on a large scale.

Shallow-sea aquaculture must be undertaken by the shallow-sea culture enterprises as well as by the fishermen’s cooperatives and the fishing workteams at cooperative farms. It would be advisable for the fishermen’s cooperatives and the fishing workteams at cooperative farms to conduct inshore fishing and aquaculture.

The Ministry of Fisheries must draw up a detailed plan for fishing.

At the moment fishing plans are sent to the fishing stations with no consideration taken of the amount of each kind of fish that can be landed. The Ministry of Fisheries gives instructions concerning how many tons of fish should be caught in a given year by taking into account the quantity of fish which was landed by each boat in the previous year. As a result, many fishing stations are unable to fulfil their fishing quotas. What is even worse is that some of their officials do not care whether fishing quotas are fulfilled or not.

From now onwards you must draw up the plan for fishing after making a detailed assessment of how much of each kind of fish can be caught and ensure that the fishing stations carry out the plan for each kind of fish without fail. Fishermen’s cooperatives must catch large amounts of pollack in the winter if this is possible. They must be given
the fishing plan for summer and carry it out as a matter of duty. Members of the guidance team must visit the fishing stations and draw up a proper fishing plan after making a detailed assessment of the amount of fish that can actually be landed, through talking to the fishermen.

Although we have discovered how matters stand at the fishing stations in South Hamgyong Province on this occasion, we are still in no position to propose proper measures. Although the officials of the fishing industry say that they are now using the modern shoal-detecting equipment and fishing gear at the fishing stations properly, there is no knowing how they are really using them. In addition, it is necessary to make a further assessment of what kinds of equipment and gear are needed for fishing.

There are 11 large fishing stations in South Hamgyong Province. Improving them is very important for the development of the fishing industry on the east coast. The Party has high expectations of these fishing stations.

Even though it will take some time to do so, members of the guidance team must visit the fishing stations in South Hamgyong Province and talk to captains and fishermen and find out in detail how matters stand there. It is only when they talk directly to captains and fishermen that they will be able to discover the problems they have in fishing. It will be impossible to solve the problems simply by meeting the managers who are confined in their offices.

We intend to discuss the fishing industry again tomorrow when members of the guidance team return from the fishing stations after discovering the situation there.
I would like to begin by expressing my deep thanks to you, Mr. Yasue Ryosuke, for your visit to our country on the occasion of the 30th anniversary of the founding of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea.

I am delighted to accept your congratulations on the 30th birthday of our Republic.

I wonder if you would convey, upon your return home, my thanks to Mr. President Iwanami Yujiro and Mr. Director Midorikawa Toru of the “Iwanami” Bookstore for extending their congratulations to me in connection with the Republic’s 30th anniversary.

Now, I am going to answer your questions.

You asked me what I thought of the founding of the Republic. The DPRK is a genuine people’s state power which represents the unanimous wish of all the Korean people.

With the founding of the DPRK, our people got rid of the subservience towards great powers which had for so long permeated the management of their state affairs. The founding of the Republic constituted their accession to an independent state power free from flunkeyism, of which the people themselves are the master.

It is the first time in the history of our country that a genuine people’s power representing the interests of the people from all walks
of life including the workers, peasants and working intellectuals has been established. Our people are very glad that they have a state power that is truly their own for the first time in history. Not only do the Korean people rejoice in this but also all our friends and fraternal countries.

The DPRK, a genuine people’s power, is the beacon of hope for the Korean people. That is why we celebrated the 30th birthday of the Republic in grand style. Many friends from all over the world and delegations from fraternal countries visited our country on the occasion and celebrated the national red-letter day of our people. We are delighted at this.

You inquired about the Republic’s prospects. We think that the Republic has excellent prospects.

In spite of the difficult circumstances we have had to contend with in the past, we have strengthened our own power, consolidated the foundations of an independent national economy, and trained large numbers of our own cadres. From this basis we are advancing with confidence. We believe that we can more successfully build an independent national economy, improve the living standards of the people and surely achieve the independent reunification of the country.

While firmly maintaining the independence of the nation, we are now striving to make the national economy Juche-oriented, modern and scientifically-based by giving scope to the creative wisdom of the masses of the people.

To put the national economy on a Juche-oriented, modern and scientific basis is our goal in the struggle for economic construction. Our people are marching forward boldly under the banner of the three revolutions to attain this goal. In all fields of activity the entire people are now carrying on the ideological, technical and cultural revolutions.

At present all our people are working for the fulfilment of the Second Seven-Year Plan. We are of the opinion that the Second Seven-Year Plan will be carried out successfully. When this plan is fulfilled, our country will rank among the more advanced nations. As you see, our prospects are splendid.
I will not elaborate further on the situation in our country because our officials have told you all about it.

Let me now speak about the international situation.

You have submitted many questions about the international situation.

You said that the cold war era is coming to an end in the international arena. It is highly desirable that the cold war policy is abolished. We, too, share that desire. Not only the Korean people but all the peace-loving peoples of the world share it. So we consider it an excellent thing that the cold war policy should be abolished.

But we are on our guard. Superficially, it appears now that the cold war is coming to an end but, in reality, there are many issues that worry us. The present international situation shows that there is a tendency towards abandoning the cold war policy and solving all problems peacefully. On the other hand there are some who, while airing their intentions to end the cold war, are taking covert action to expand armaments and invade other countries economically under the banner of “peace”. We must keep a sharp lookout for this.

In our view, the present international situation is very complex. This is due to the efforts of the great powers to extend their spheres of domination.

At present the great powers are manoeuvring to expand their spheres of domination. They are engaged in a scramble to get a grip on particularly the countries of the third world and the newly independent states. This process reveals itself in all sorts of ways. We fear that the great powers will engage in such manoeuvring on an even greater scale in the future.

As you mentioned, many newly-emergent nations are currently in conflict. These conflicts are legacies of the imperialists’ colonial rule.

Some newly independent states have not built an independent national economy although they have won national independence. In consequence they find themselves incapable of safeguarding their political independence. Countries which have only recently shed the yoke of imperialist colonial rule are unable to build independent
national economies because they have few native cadres. That is why sometimes they show a tendency to look for help again to those countries which were once their rulers.

The imperialists and great powers are competing covertly to extend their spheres of domination by taking advantage of such weaknesses in the newly independent states. The big countries are pretending to put a stop to the cold war and settle issues peacefully but, in actual fact, they let other countries fight wars as their agents. This is exacerbating the situation in many parts of the world.

Today’s realities show that on the surface the cold war appears to be ending but behind the scenes the great powers are engaged in a fierce scramble for power.

The great powers are attempting to fish in troubled waters by taking advantage of the conflicts between the newly independent nations.

We must follow future developments in the international situation closely.

But, no matter how the situation materializes, the countries of the third world must strive, as I pointed out in my report at the 30th national anniversary celebration of the founding of the DPRK, to set aside differences in political views, ideologies and religious beliefs, and unite solidly to prevent the great powers from fishing in troubled waters. This is essential if the third world nations are to succeed in establishing a new international economic order that is geared to their needs, in building independent national economies, in maintaining their independence, and in consolidating their national independence.

We think it will be a good thing when third world countries desist from warring against each other on behalf of the great powers and divert the cost of these wars into the development of their national economies.

In general, the peoples of the newly-emerging forces are all demanding independence and are striving to safeguard the national independence they have already won and to build independent national economies.

On the whole, the trend of our times is drifting favourably; we
cannot say it is heading for the worse.

In Asia some time ago, China and Japan concluded a treaty of peace and friendship. We regard this as a normal development. To conclude a treaty of friendship is to put the relations between states on a normal basis, and this may well take place between states.

I deem it unnecessary to hold a biased view against the Sino-Japan treaty of peace and friendship.

We consider the conclusion of this treaty a very gratifying event. It is gratifying that it will enable Japan to purchase raw materials and the like from China while it will offer opportunities for China to introduce advanced techniques from Japan to hasten the development of its economy. It also has very favourable implications for peace in Asia.

Now that the treaty of peace and friendship has been signed between Japan and China, we are optimistic that brighter vistas may be opened up for peace in Asia in the future.

All things considered, we discern both positive and negative aspects to the present international situation.

I will make no comment on the question of the non-aligned movement because I mentioned it in my report at the 30th national anniversary celebration of our Republic.

You asked if it has always been our invariable policy to oppose dominationism. We have consistently pursued the policy of opposing dominationism in the past.

Ever since we embarked on the revolutionary struggle, we have rejected flunkeyism towards great powers and advocated independence. This implies opposition to dominationism. Therefore, the question of opposing dominationism is not a new issue we are addressing for the first time today.

We opposed dominationism in the past, oppose it today and will oppose it in the future.

When we say we are opposed to dominationism, some people wonder whether we have certain particular nations in mind. That is not the case. As you have correctly pointed out, our country has adhered to independence and rejected dominationism from the first, and so there
is no need to think that we were making insinuations against some particular nations.

We are opposed both to those who are given to dominationism now and to those who are ready to practise dominationism in the future. We stand against anyone who is talcing to dominationism. We do so because dominating others runs counter to independence.

I gave the definition of dominationism in my report at the national celebration of the 30th birthday of the Republic, so I will not reiterate it.

In this report I said that the countries of the third world should refuse to act as lackeys of other nations while struggling against dominationism. This is a very important question in opposing dominationism and maintaining independence. When no one acts as an agent of the dominationist forces, there will be none who takes to dominationism.

I will say no more about the international situation.

I would now like to turn my attention to the question of our country’s reunification.

You asked what I thought about the present situation in south Korea where the terrorist rule of the Park “regime” is maintained. I think that under present conditions the state of division between north and south will continue for the time being. The reason is that the reactionary circles of America and Japan vindicate and back up the Park “regime”.

Even if the resistance movement against the terrorist rule of the Park Chung Hee clique in south Korea were intensified, it can have no easy victory while the “regime” enjoys the support of America and Japan. The south Korean people are conducting the movement for democracy under very difficult conditions. In view of the continuing occupation of south Korea by American troops, it is unlikely that this movement will develop into a force powerful enough to overthrow the Park “regime” right now.

The American imperialists persistently threaten the south Korean people. Even since the Carter administration took over, they have flown planes from Okinawa in Japan to south Korea for bombing practice
several times a month behind the signboard of “troop withdrawal”. They
claim that the purpose of this is to familiarize the flight crews with the
air route. This is a lie. Modern planes do not get lost and fail to reach
their destinations. This is a well known fact and people do not need
access to specialized military information to know it.

The real aim of the continued American bombing practices in south
Korea is to threaten us and intimidate the south Korean people. In other
words, they convey the impression to the south Korean people that if
they rise in revolt, they will be showered with bombs as in the practices.

While America is behaving like this, it is debatable if the south
Korean people could overthrow the Park “regime”.

What is of prime importance in settling the Korean question is to do
away with outside interference and let the Koreans themselves resolve
the question of national reunification. The question of our country’s
reunification cannot be resolved until the American troops quit south
Korea.

You said that since assuming the presidency Carter has retreated a
long way from his original position on the Korean question. I am less
inclined to think that he has altered his position than that he is now
revealing himself in his true colours as a con man.

While promising that he would “withdraw troops” from south
Korea, Carter has said that he would leave the air and naval forces
intact there. And he has plans to let the Japanese militarists control
south Korea in place of the American troops even if the latter should
withdraw from there. Therefore, Carter’s promise to withdraw the
American troops from south Korea is a deceptive farce.

During the presidential election Carter brought up the so-called
“human rights” issue as well as the question of the withdrawal of
American troops. While it is ridiculous that he should set himself up as
the “champion of human rights” when these rights are not respected in
the United States, it is quite incomprehensible that he promises to be
hard on countries where human rights are suppressed and yet continues
to back up south Korea’s puppet regime whose fascist nature is known
to the whole world.
Carter’s pledges on the subjects of “troop withdrawal” and the “defence of human rights” were nothing but empty election promises. Carter publicly gave a commitment to “withdraw troops”, but behind this smoke screen he is conducting unprecedentedly large-scale military exercises and, while paying lip service to the “defence of human rights”, he is actually supplying extensive military aid to the fascist “regime” in south Korea. These hard facts prove that these “commitments” he gave were lies. In my opinion, Carter is not only threatening us and the south Korean people today. He is intimidating the Japanese people as well.

The question of Korean reunification should be left entirely to the Koreans themselves.

As I said in my report at the 30th national anniversary celebration of the founding of the Republic, I think the question of national reunification should be settled by promoting national understanding through dialogues between north and south and bringing about the unity of the whole nation.

The question is, on what terms is the dialogue to be conducted. To engage in dialogue from a desire to achieve reunification or to do so for the purpose of maintaining the status quo and perpetuating partition are two entirely incompatible undertakings.

The country has already been partitioned, so we need not take the trouble of engaging in dialogue to achieve division. If ever there is to be dialogue, it must be aimed at reunification. With an eye to reunification, the north and the south should throw open doors to each other for traffic and economic and cultural exchanges. This will enable the people of north and south Korea to acquire a full mutual understanding and will bring about great national unity. We always maintain that the whole nation should unite in accordance with the principles of the July 4 North-South Joint Statement, transcending the differences in ideology and ideals, political views and religious beliefs.

We want a dialogue. We are by no means opposed to it. What we maintain is that a dialogue be held not for division but for reunification.
At present the south Korean authorities are also proposing a dialogue, but the dialogue they are proposing is aimed at perpetuating division. As long as they are opposed to reunification and in favour of division, we are unable to enter into a dialogue with them. As soon as they abandon their policy of creating “two Koreas”, we can start talking to them. As long as they continue to manoeuvre for national division and to repress the south Korean people, there can be no dialogue with them.

We maintain that on the principle of total unity even the political parties and public organizations in south Korea and the Koreans residing abroad should be included in the dialogue. In other words, we consider it necessary that even the forces opposed to Park Chung Hee are represented.

If north-south dialogue were to be held and the great unity of the whole nation achieved, the tensions on the Korean peninsula could be reduced and it would be easy to compel the American troops to withdraw from south Korea. If the Koreans unite amicably among themselves and seek for reunification, the American troops will have no grounds at all to stay on in south Korea. Then the democratic forces of south Korea and the socialist forces of the northern half will be able to collaborate to reunify the country.

If America wants to lessen the tensions on the Korean peninsula, it should not obstruct the north-south dialogue nor egg the south Korean authorities on to intrigue for national partition.

Korea’s reunification is attended by many complicated problems. The Korean people, however, unanimously aspire to reunification, and so will head for it at all costs. History is bound to turn out right in the end.

Now, let me pass on to the relations between Korea and Japan.

As I have said more than once in the past, we would like the Japanese government and people to behave in a manner conducive to easing tensions in Korea. We hope that they will desist from encouraging the division of Korea, their neighbour, but take steps to assist its reunification.
Although our country has no relations with the Japanese government at present, there are good cultural and economic exchanges between the Korean and Japanese peoples. We wish to see these exchanges multiply and prosper.

We will wait and see what attitude the Japanese government will take towards our country in the future.

I believe that you and all the Japanese people want to see a reduction in the tensions that exist in Korea due to north-south confrontation and the peaceful reunification of this country.

It is our wish that the government of Japan take into consideration the demand of our people and the Japanese people for the reunification of Korea and adopt a helpful position on this issue. To this end, it should refrain from aggravating Korea’s division and withdraw its support from the south Korean authorities’ policy of repressing the people. This is our request to the Japanese government.

In my opinion, the Japanese government must adopt this position towards Korea if it wants peace in Asia.

Such, in general, are my answers to your questions. You are at liberty to ask further questions.

**Question:** May I say that the main factors in the “two Koreas” plot are the occupation of south Korea by US troops and the relations between the south Korean “government” and the Japanese government and between the south Korean “government” and the US administration?

**Answer:** Of course, these are factors in the “two Koreas” plot, but a more essential issue is Park Chung Hee’s insistence on the UN membership of “two Koreas”. He is insisting that “two Koreas” should enter the UN. He is also advocating “cross recognition”. This would mean that China and the Soviet Union would recognize south Korea in return for the recognition of the DPRK by Japan and America. This is a trick to rig up “two Koreas”. With a view to creating the “two Koreas”, Park Chung Hee is requesting that the American troops remain in south Korea and he is seeking the support of the Japanese reactionary forces.
**Question:** At present the south Korean “government” is making desperate efforts to extricate itself from its isolation and, in particular, the problem of relations between south Korea and the Soviet Union is much talked about. What are your views, Mr. President, on this matter?

**Answer:** As yet we have no definite information about any relations between the Soviet Union and south Korea. In the absence of definite information, such speculation can only be based on idle gossip. We believe that people of normal intelligence should dismiss it as such. The Soviet Union was the first to recognize the DPRK as the only legal state in the Korean peninsula, and is perfectly aware that the south Korean “government” is a puppet regime fabricated by the American masters against the will of the Korean people. Therefore, this is inconceivable for people of normal intelligence.

**Question:** There is now widespread public opinion in Japan that the conclusion of the Japan-China treaty of peace and friendship will have a considerable impact on the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea and south Korea.

Mr. President, what is your view on this?

**Answer:** We regard the conclusion of the Sino-Japan peace and friendship treaty as a normal development in relations between neighbouring countries.

As for the effect of the treaty on the Korean peninsula, we do not think it will be detrimental to the Korean question; it will have a favourable effect on it.

We want China and Japan, our neighbours, to be on good terms. Therefore, we do not think ill of the Sino-Japan treaty; we are well disposed towards it. If Japan and China keep on friendly terms, this will benefit us, their neighbour, and will do us no harm. We consider that the Sino-Japan treaty will prove beneficial rather than detrimental to the people’s cause of peace.
We hope that all countries will maintain good relations with each other.

We consider it a good thing that the Japanese government has expressed its readiness to form good relations with the other neighbours. An economically developed nation, Japan will not lose by maintaining good relations with other countries. In particular, at a time when some branches of its economy are depressed owing to the world crisis of raw materials, Japan will derive benefits from improving relations with other countries to find a way out.

We believe that the conclusion of the Sino-Japan treaty of peace and friendship is a normal development in the relations between nations. It is not a source of concern to us.

**Question:** Last year and this year, particularly during the period from spring to autumn this year, there were many visits from foreign Heads of State to Korea. There has been speculation that during their visits, a plan for tripartite talks was discussed and it is reported that you, Mr. President, expressed disapproval of this idea. How much truth is there in this?

**Answer:** It is out of the question to talk about tripartite negotiations now.

We never discussed the question of tripartite negotiations with visiting Heads of State.

As far as I am concerned reports that we had discussions about tripartite negotiations are just groundless gossip. It would appear that this rumour is a product of oversensitiveness.

**Question:** Would it be reasonable to take the view that it will be a very long time before a liaison office is set up between the United States and your Republic, since there has been no change in the American attitude towards Korea?

**Answer:** Neither the American authorities nor ourselves want to institute a liaison office between our country and America. So it is
pointless to discuss this question. It seems that the American authorities give no thought to the matter, nor have we ever thought of it. How can a liaison office be set up when they are reluctant to have a dialogue with us?

**Question:** Would it be fair to say, Mr. President, that you consider the problem of improving relations between Japan and Korea as having become more difficult now than in 1971 or in 1972, judging by the actions of the Japanese government?

**Answer:** Of the Japanese government’s position on the question of improving Korea-Japan relations, I think you are better informed than I am.

In our opinion, there has been no particular change in the Japanese government’s position on this question between then and now.

It can be said that the nexus between Japan and south Korea has become ever closer. On the other hand the Japanese government has not in recent years instituted any serious new measures against the DPRK.

Nevertheless, the Japanese reactionaries are party to the “two Koreas” plot in accordance with American strategy. Japan is now getting involved in the American “two Koreas” strategy. She continues to take an unfriendly attitude towards our country and gives greater support to the south Korean authorities that are intriguing to divide the country. Viewed in this light, we may say that the Japanese government’s attitude has become rather worse.

**Question:** After the visit to Korea last spring by the Chairman of the Japan Socialist Party it was widely reported in Japanese newspapers that the consensus of public opinion was that normalization of relations between Japan and Korea would hardly be possible while Korea remains divided.

What are your views, Mr. President, on this matter?

**Answer:** In this connection, the question is, how to interpret the
normalization of Korea-Japan relations.

If this is construed as meaning the establishment of friendship between the two peoples, the normalization of relations is welcome. It is good that the peoples of Korea and Japan should conduct cultural, technical and economic exchanges.

But if the normalization of Korea-Japan relations is identified as the question of establishing state diplomatic relations as some people say, I think it is premature for the present.

The “Japan-south Korea treaty” states that the south Korean “government” is the sole legitimate “government” of Korea. No one can demand that the “Japan-south Korea treaty” be cancelled right now, and even if such a demand is made, they will not repeal it. The United States, too, says that the south Korean “government” is the only legitimate “government” of Korea.

On the other hand, the Chinese Party and Government delegation that paid a goodwill visit to our country some time ago reaffirmed that the Government of the DPRK is the sole and legitimate government of Korea. The Soviet Union had already recognized the DPRK Government as the only lawful government in the Korean peninsula before the People’s Republic of China was founded.

Therefore, the establishment of diplomatic relations between Korea and Japan poses complex problems. Under conditions at present, the question of establishing diplomatic relations between the two countries, if ever it is brought up, will be sure to get linked up with the “cross recognition” proposal that some people are advancing. As you see, it is a very difficult and complex problem to establish diplomatic relations between Korea and Japan. Therefore, there cannot be diplomatic relations between the two countries for the time being.

The immediate question regarding relations between Korea and Japan is whether the Japanese government can judiciously exchange its unfriendly attitude towards our country for a friendly one. Therefore, as we said when the Chairman of the Japan Socialist Party visited our country last time, it is our wish that the Japanese government refrain from aggravating the division of Korea and adopt a helpful position
towards Korean reunification. If the Japanese government takes a stand for the reunification of Korea, the relations between Korea and Japan will become amicable.

It does not necessarily follow that relations between our two countries will improve only when we have an ambassador in Japan and there is a Japanese ambassador residing in our country. Even in the present circumstances, if the Japanese government works towards Korea’s reunification, this will imply friendly relations between Korea and Japan.

We think it best to understand the idea of normalizing the relations between Korea and Japan in this vein.

If the Japanese government regards the DPRK and the “ROK” as two co-existing countries and tries to improve state relations with us from the position of freezing the division of our country, this cannot achieve good results.

We deem it necessary for the normalization of relations between Korea and Japan that the Japanese government exert itself to ease tensions and promote reunification in Korea. We think that it is high time the Japanese government started to reason like this.

The question of normalizing the relations between Korea and Japan can be approached from different angles according to how the normalization of relations is construed. Its prospects will also vary according to whether one proceeds from the stand of favouring the “cross recognition” proposal or takes a stand for the reunification of Korea.

Thank you for your attention.
I would like to talk first about the work of the Ministry of Land Administration.

Improving land management is of great importance in further increasing the beauty and wealth of the country and in improving the life of the people.

Our Party has paid close attention to the management of land ever since liberation. In the days immediately after liberation we were unable to direct any great efforts to this work, although we wanted to, because we had no qualified cadres and were short of money and materials. However, while qualified cadres and material and technical means were gradually becoming available, the Ministry of Land Administration was set up.

Later, with a view to tightening control over land management, we placed the supervision of land management under the Ministry of Public Security. Since then the conservation of forests has been improved to a considerable extent. But there has been no great improvement in the management of the land, rivers, sea walls and roads. Because it has been preoccupied with maintaining public order,
the Ministry of Public Security has neglected land management. As a result, virtually no one is responsible for the management of the land, rivers, sea walls and roads. Therefore, recently we removed the General Bureau of Land from under the Ministry of Public Security and re-established the Ministry of Land Administration directly under the jurisdiction of the Administration Council.

The Ministry of Land Administration must ensure that land is conserved properly and used effectively for the promotion of the people’s welfare.

The basic duty of this ministry is to manage and protect effectively the land, rivers, sea walls, forests and roads by implementing the land law thoroughly.

The ministry should take good care of the rivers.

River management—building embankments and removing silt from the river-beds—is being neglected at present. For this reason, crops are damaged by floods whenever there is just a little rainfall. This year, too, in North Phyongan Province quite a considerable area of farmland and crops were damaged by flooding.

The ministry must conduct investigations into the state of all the rivers and take appropriate measures. Embankments will have to be built or repaired wherever necessary. It would be a good idea to plant a large number of willows on the banks in order to protect them. At the moment, all sorts of trees are being planted on river banks. Trees which are good for protecting them should be selected for planting.

If we are to improve the management of rivers, we must stop collieries and other mines discarding refuse and ore residue thoughtlessly. Because these mines discard their rubbish anywhere, the river-beds are rising and fish are dying due to pollution in the rivers. The bed of the Chongchon River has also risen because the Joyang Coal Mine discarded gangue carelessly when the mine was being developed. Apparently most of the river-beds in the area of Kaechon County are higher than the ground.

The Ministry of Land Administration must exercise strict control over coal and ore mines so that they set up dumps in places that are
some distance from rivers so as to ensure that dirt and ore residue do not flow into the rivers.

Sea walls must also be looked after properly.

The neglect of the management and repair of sea walls and of structures on them may result in a disaster. When there was a flood in Mundok County, South Phyongan Province, last year, a great number of rice fields were submerged because sluice-gates could not be opened. The sluice-gates on sea walls have now become rusty and will not open because of a lack of attention.

The Ministry of Land Administration must supervise and control the management of sea walls and their installations and ensure that they are repaired promptly and kept under constant management.

Afforestation and the management of forests must be improved.

Afforestation and forest conservation are of great importance in preventing landslides and flood damage, in protecting the land and in developing the national economy.

We must plan afforestation well and plant economically useful trees over wide mountainous areas. In addition there must be strict control over the practice of cutting trees recklessly and ravaging forests on the pretext of reclaiming farmland in mountainous areas.

When the Ministry of Land Administration is back in charge of forest management, the senior officials of provinces, cities and counties may compel land-management officials to allow random tree cutting. On no account must this be allowed. When the Ministry of Land Administration was in charge of forest management in the past, the senior officials of provinces, cities and counties did this. On the other hand, when the public security organs were supervising the forests, the control they exercised was so strict that farmers had no freedom to cut trees even to make axe handles. That was wrong. Nevertheless, tree felling should be controlled rigidly.

In other countries, too, forests are under very strict supervision. Forests are supervised by keeping forest guards, who are responsible to the police, and also by assigning duties to the local inhabitants.

The Ministry of Land Administration and the Ministry of Public
Security should cooperate with one another in the conservation of forests. I am of the opinion that the Ministry of Land Administration should issue written permissions for people to go to the mountains and cut down trees and that the Ministry of Public Security should make control more strict so that only people with these certificates actually fell trees.

Roads must also be well managed.

No one is responsible for the management of roads at the moment, so that institutions, enterprises and cooperative farms do not repair the roads at regular intervals. As a result, the roads in rural areas are simply horrible. Under the rule of the Japanese imperialists, people who neglected to repair the roads were beaten up by the police or fined, so they had no alternative but to do it. Under our system it is impossible to force the people to repair roads as was done in the days of the Japanese imperialists. But we cannot afford to leave the matter to inclination, without control. The Ministry of Land Administration must designate road management sections for the institutions, enterprises and cooperative farms and control them so that roads are repaired on a regular basis.

The Ministry of Land Administration should draw up a master plan for land development and carry it out on a long-term basis.

A master plan is indispensable for the efficient development of land. Land development is being undertaken haphazardly because there is no such master plan. As matters stand at present, office and industrial buildings, houses and roads are being built anywhere and electric pylons are being erected in crop fields at random. That is why the area of farmland is decreasing every year and these electric pylons also interfere seriously with the comprehensive mechanization of agriculture.

In the past the landowners did not allow electric pylons to be erected at random in their crop fields. When I was 12 years old, the Japanese imperialists were planning to lay electric cables between Pyongyang and Nampho. But a landowner would not allow them to erect pylons in his fields. The matter dragged on for three years, and at long last they quarrelled.
The Ministry of Land Administration must draw up a master plan for land development. When I say this I do not mean that the ministry may spend just a few days over planning it, and do it carelessly. If the master plan is to be worked out properly, the ministry must first draw up a good master plan for regional development in cooperation with the sectors concerned. This plan must include details about industrial construction, the development of mineral resources, the reclamation of tidal flats, the utilization of arable land and so on. In planning land development for the area around the Anju Coal Mine, for instance, you will have to specify where to tunnel new pits, where to build the miners’ village, where to build railways and roads, how to make use of crop fields and how to reclaim tidal flats. It is important to plan the area around the Anju Coal Mine well. The coal deposits in this area amount to 2,700 million tons. If we mine 10 million tons annually, we can exploit them for 270 years. Therefore, we are going to develop the coal mines in the Anju area comprehensively.

Once the master plan for land development has been worked out, construction must be controlled strictly so that it is undertaken in accordance with the plan. The Ministry of Land Administration must examine any new projects for development and construction that are proposed by state commissions and ministries in order to see whether they accord with the master plan or not, and approve only those which are in accordance with the master plan. The ministry must deliberate promptly on these development and construction projects. The projects for laying electric cables and telephone lines must also be thoroughly checked against the master plan for land development before they are approved.

In order to improve land management, the land management regulations must also be improved.

We do have land management regulations, but they have quite a few shortcomings.

The Administration Council should examine the existing regulations and draft proper regulations for the supervision of the land and for the management of forests, rivers and roads in accordance with
the land law. The regulations for road management must include
detailed provisions covering motorways, ordinary roads and country
roads separately. The regulations must also prohibit the building of
houses along the roads. Roadside houses are not good because passing
motor vehicles raise dust and may hurt any children who happen to be
playing in the road.

The new land management regulations must clearly define the
demarcation lines between the responsibilities of the Ministry of Land
Administration, the Agricultural Commission and other commissions
and ministries and between the duties of the subordinate units of the
Ministry of Land Administration, those of other sectors and the
cooperative farms. The new regulations must also provide for fining
anyone who violates the regulations.

The new land management regulations should be drafted and
deliberated by the Administration Council, examined by the
Legislation Commission of the Central People’s Committee, and then
circulated to institutions and enterprises.

The Ministry of Land Administration should be well staffed and its
role enhanced.

The ministry is not merely an administrative organ, but also a
technical one. Therefore, it must have a department for drafting a
master plan for land development and also a department for examining
and approving plans for construction and development proposed by
other organs.

In order to improve land management, organizations in charge of
land management at provincial, city and county levels must also be set
up.

The Ministry of Land Administration should take over all the
personnel in charge of land management from the Ministry of Public
Security. If the security officers in charge of land at public security
substations are also responsible for guarding granaries, they must be
retained by the Ministry of Public Security and given the additional
duty of conserving forests.

The platoons responsible for road management in cities and
counties should be turned over to the Ministry of Land Administration.

Old people are better as foresters than young people. If a person who has retired from work is appointed to the post of forester, he will be quite willing to do it. Whether to employ young or old foresters needs further study.

If discipline is to be established in land management, it would be a good idea to keep the officials of this sector in uniform, like those of the Ministry of Railways. However, there is no need for the officials and men of the enterprises under the Ministry of Land Administration to be in uniform. The design of the uniform for the officials of the land management sector should be discussed and decided by the Administration Council.

The Ministry of Land Administration and its subordinate units should be financed out of the state budget and the enterprises of the land management sector should be self-financing.

The lorries of the enterprises under the Ministry of Land Administration should be left where they are now, instead of being pooled under county lorry stations.

The Ministry of Land Administration should remain in its present office building.

The Administration Council should discuss and solve the problem of an office building for the design section of the Ministry of Land Administration.

The land management sector has a great deal of work to do. The officials of this sector must not think of taking things easy; they must manage the land carefully, aware of being masters and with a high sense of responsibility.

Next, I shall refer to the work of the Ministry of Urban Management.

Recently we have separated the General Bureau of Urban Management from the Commission of Public Welfare and have established the Ministry of Urban Management with a view to improving city management.

City management is very important work which has a direct bearing
on the living conditions of the people.

The Ministry of Urban Management must take good care of all the cities in our country, directing its main efforts towards the management of Pyongyang, Hamhung, Wonsan and other provincial capitals and ports.

First of all, houses and public buildings should be looked after properly and repaired promptly.

Houses, schools, hospitals, theatres and other public buildings are the property of all the people and the valuable wealth of the country. That is why houses and public buildings should be repaired by the state. However, the care of these buildings is now being neglected. Leaks in houses and public buildings and broken walls are not being mended promptly. When I was visiting Changsong last year, I sent the officials concerned to the people’s hospital in Sakju County in order to inspect the conditions there. The conditions were unspeakable because of neglectful management. We are building large numbers of houses and public buildings every year. But it will be like pouring water into a bottomless jar unless they are managed properly. If we continue to manage our economic life in this way, the country will be unable to support itself and a communist society will never be built.

We are not going to build many public buildings next year. The Ministry of Urban Management must therefore make great efforts to keep the existing houses and public buildings in good order and repair.

We must take good care of waterworks and sewerage.

A great number of modern houses has been built in the urban and rural communities. But good waterworks and sewerage have not been provided for them so that the people are quite uncomfortable.

Some time ago I visited the Saegil Cooperative Farm, Sinchon County. The local people were feeling uncomfortable in various ways because the multi-storey houses had been built without proper waterworks and sewerage. So the people prefer single-storey houses to multistorey blocks of flats. One or two-storey houses are best for the rural people.

The Ministry of Urban Management must manage the waterworks
and sewerage systems well and supply sufficient drinking water for the urban population and ensure that refuse is disposed of promptly.

The ministry should look after the roads in the cities in a responsible manner. Roads in the cities should not be managed by the Ministry of Land Administration but by the Ministry of Urban Management because they are amenities for the urban population. The Ministry of Urban Management must repair the roads in the cities promptly, plant trees and lay turf on the roadsides and take good care of them.

Parks and recreation grounds must be well managed.

Laying out parks and recreation grounds well and keeping them in good order are of great importance in creating conditions for the cultural recreation of the working people and in educating students and young people. At the moment, however, parks and recreation grounds are not managed properly.

There are many rare animals in the Central Zoo, presents from abroad. Recently we were sent a chimpanzee, the most developed ape, from Rwanda. Such animals will be very good for the working people and students and young people to see. However, some of these valuable animals have died because adequate heating and running water were supplied only recently.

The Ministry of Urban Management should improve the arrangements for and take good care of the parks and recreation grounds so that they can serve the people still better as their cultural recreation centres.

Central heating systems must be managed properly.

In order to improve city management, it is necessary to improve the housing repair centres and enhance their role.

The Administration Council must improve the organizational structure of city management in order to keep the management staff as small as possible and strengthen the repair centres.

County urban construction corps have nothing special to do at present. It would seem a good idea for the Ministry of Urban Management to take them over and let them build schools and repair
houses and public buildings. Further study is needed to decide whether to reassign the county urban construction corps to the Ministry of Urban Management and reorganize them into building repair centres. Recently we have set up a new General Bureau for Rural Buildings Management under the Ministry of Urban Management. We should also study whether to place the building repair centres we need under the general bureau.

The repair centres must repair urban dwellings, schools, hospitals, theatres and other public buildings promptly. These public buildings cannot be repaired properly by the state commissions and ministries concerned.

We should sell materials for the repair of rural houses so that the farmers themselves can repair their own homes.

From now onwards the building repair centres must receive payment for housing repair work. If a new window pane is fitted, payment must be made. For the repair of public buildings such as schools, hospitals and theatres, payment should be made by the authorities concerned. Of course, it is the same as charging the state. But payment must be made. This will encourage the people to keep their houses and public buildings in good order. The enterprises of the city management sector must balance their books by receiving payment for the repair of houses and public buildings. It is necessary to study the possibility of balancing the books by using the income from house rent. Should the repair centres operate under the General Bureau for Rural Buildings Management of the Ministry of Urban Management, they, too, must introduce a system of self-financing.

If city management is to be successful, sufficient repair materials must be supplied.

City management has not been satisfactory mainly because not enough repair materials have been supplied. No matter how serious the materials supply situation may be, the State Planning Commission must not fail to put aside a certain amount of materials for Urban management. In addition, hardware shops should be run properly. They were established to help the inhabitants to repair their own
houses. At present cement, sheet glass and similar repair materials are unavailable at these shops, so the people cannot repair their houses, although they want to.

The hardware shops must always keep paper-packed cement, sheet glass, window paper, hinges and other repair materials on sale.

Repair materials supplied to the city management sector must not be used for other purposes.

In the past, county Party committees, county people’s committees and county administrative committees used the materials for repairing houses and schools in building their offices and noodle restaurants. The repair materials supplied to the city management sector must be used only for city management according to the plan drawn up by the Administration Council and the Ministry of Urban Management. If these materials are used for other purposes, legal sanctions should be applied.

We should draw up good regulations for city management.

Regulations are necessary for efficient city management. City management is not efficient largely because no explicit regulations exist in this sector. The Ministry of Urban Management must draw up the regulations that are needed, including those for the management of houses, public buildings, waterworks and sewerage systems, parks and recreation grounds and do its work based on these. The ministry should also inform the citizens of these regulations so that they observe them willingly.

The Administration Council should solve the problem of the office building for the Ministry of Urban Management by making adjustments in some buildings. You say that the Administration Council is short of office buildings, but we cannot afford to construct new ones. The Administration Council should make use of its existing office buildings by making adjustments so that each room accommodates more people who are not engaged in confidential work. The suggestion has been made of turning over the building which housed the Heavy Industry Commission to the Administration Council. But it has to house a fluorescent lamp factory.
The Central People’s Committee and the Administration Council should hold a joint meeting and consider the work of city management as a whole and solve any outstanding problems in line with what I have said today.

We intended to discuss city management at a plenary meeting of the Central Committee of the Party, but we cannot do so because we have other matters to discuss. However, in December we are going to hold a national meeting of activists in the city management sector. This meeting should inform the people attending it of the state of affairs regarding city management and launch an ideological struggle. The chief secretaries of the Party committees and the chairmen of the people’s committees and administrative committees of the provinces, cities and counties should also attend the meeting.

The national meeting of activists in the city management sector should serve as an occasion for further improving city management.
LET US FURTHER ACCELERATE SOCIALIST CONSTRUCTION THROUGH EFFICIENT FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

Speech Made at a National Conference of Financial and Banking Workers

December 23, 1978

Comrades,

On behalf of the Central Committee of the Workers’ Party of Korea, the Government of the Republic and all the Korean people, I would like first to applaud heartily this National Conference of Financial and Banking Workers.

Allow me also to offer warm thanks to the comrades attending the conference and to all financial and banking workers, and to express my great satisfaction with the fact that they have not only furnished in full the vast amount of money needed to guarantee economic and defence construction and to raise the people’s standard of living, but also built up financial reserves amounting to 900 million won, as of the end of November, by successfully carrying out the plan for the state budget revenue in the first year of the Second Seven-Year Plan.

The financial policy of our Party is perfectly correct and valid. In the past ten years, our state budget revenue has grown at a high annual rate of 13 per cent on average, so that the size of the national budget has increased 3.4 times. Our budget revenue for the whole of 1949 is now generated in only 5 days. This proves that our Party’s financial policy ensures the right balance between accumulation and
expenditure, and correctly embodies the laws of the development of the planned socialist economy which makes continuous innovations and uninterrupted progress.

Today, the financial burden on our country is much heavier than that on other countries. Our country is not very large. Although our country, when reunified, will be a large country with a population of 50 million, it can hardly be regarded as a very large one at the moment, being divided into north and south. Be that as it may, our country bears the full cost for maintaining an army hundreds of thousands strong and brings up and educates more than 8.6 million children, pupils and students at state and public expense. The people of many other countries call our country a “kingdom of education”, and it can truly be called as such. At present, children numbering 3.5 million are growing up at nursery schools and kindergartens at state and public expense, and 5.1 million students are being given free education in institutes of various levels, ranging from primary schools up to universities. This is excellent and something of which we can truly be proud.

Under the circumstances in which our divided country maintains an army of hundreds of thousands of men, and brings up and educates children and students, the numbers of whom exceed half the population, at state expense, we could still not be called to account by anyone even though our people ate rice for only one meal and ate gruel for two meals a day. However, we provide all our people with rice for three meals daily. At present, our younger generation does not even know the word “gruel”. In addition, our country supplies all the people with clothes according to the season, provides free medical care and social maintenance and ensures the system of recuperation and rest at state expense.

In order to finance such things, we earn the colossal amounts of money that are needed for ourselves. We never meet our requirements for funds by levying taxes on the people. Our country has long since been free from taxation. I believe that our country has become the first tax-free state in the world.

While taking up many burdens, such as providing free education for
all pupils and students and free medical treatment for all the people, our country has become the first state which does not tax the people. This is a clear demonstration of the greatness of the lines and policies of our Party and of the courage of our people’s struggle.

Foreigners who visit our country say that our people do not really feel the happiness they are enjoying because they always live happily.

Yesterday I met a Party delegation from one country. The head of the delegation said that although he had visited more than 70 of the world’s countries he had never seen such a clean country as Korea where the people were cheerful, simple and sturdy and everyone was proud of the life he led. He expressed his great admiration for our people’s successful socialist construction and said that the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea was the model socialist country where the most sound, dignified and popular socialism was being built along absolutely correct lines. So I told him that I was not sure if our country could be called the model of socialism, but our people were leading a life to be envied.

We have really done a great deal in the field of socialist economic construction. Over the period of the Six-Year Plan, we not only abolished the system of taxation but also reduced commodity prices considerably and increased the pay of the working people to a great extent.

All these grand successes registered in socialist economic construction are results of the positive struggle of our people to carry out the Party’s lines and policies, and are ample demonstration of the advantages of the socialist system in our country.

The great successes achieved in the field of socialist economic construction are the result of the great deal of service rendered by the financial and banking workers. Taking advantage of this opportunity, let me extend my warm thanks once again to the financial and banking workers and to all other economic officials who are working hard to implement the financial policy of our Party.

The success our people have achieved in socialist construction is truly great and something of which they can be very proud. We ought
to feel self-confident and proud about the success achieved in building socialism.

We began the construction of the country from scratch. We built factories and enterprises on the war debris and constructed modern houses and high-rise buildings where once humble cottages and hovels had stood. Today there are many factories in our country, including machine and light industry plants. In the past there were no clubs to speak of, whereas now every part of the country is provided with cultural and educational establishments such as halls of culture, research institutes, theatres, cinemas and cultural and children’s palaces. All of these have been constructed through the energetic efforts of our people and with the sweat of their brows.

We have attained today’s high level from nothing, and, on this basis, we can now develop even more rapidly and achieve anything, whatever it may be.

During the period of postwar reconstruction we made wooden derricks because we had no cranes. Using wooden derricks we built blocks of flats, international hotels and modern streets in Pyongyang. However, today cranes can be seen at construction sites like trees in a forest.

Now that our economic assets are solid, we have experience in constructing a new society from scratch, and our national cadres are competent and the working class and other people hardened, we can certainly accomplish the magnificent objectives of the Second Seven-Year Plan. There is not the slightest doubt about this.

The 17th Plenary Meeting of the 5th Party Central Committee held a short time ago discussed the plan for the development of the national economy in 1979 and set militant tasks for bringing about a fresh turn in socialist economic construction. Next year we shall have to give clear priority to the mining industry in order to solve in full the problems of fuel and raw materials and put production in all branches of the national economy onto a normal basis, raise the standard of living of the people by running light industry factories at full capacity, and relieve the strain on transport and ensure that the increasing
demands on it are met. Once we have carried out these tasks set by the plenary meeting of the Party Central Committee, the economic strength of our country will be increased still further, the standard of living of the people raised to a higher level and the Second Seven-Year Plan brought to a successful conclusion ahead of schedule.

It is true that the present economic strength of our country is great and the standard of living of the people is reasonably high. Our independent national economy caters for everything which is needed in economic construction and the people’s life with its own products, and our people are working full of hope and leading a happy life, benefiting from universal free education and free medical care, with no one having any worries about food and clothing. But we should not rest content with this. We should continue to develop our independent national economy and raise the people’s standard of living steadily. To this end, we must thoroughly carry out the new tasks advanced by our Party for economic construction.

What, then, are the duties of the financial and banking workers in carrying out the new tasks confronting socialist economic construction?

First of all, they must properly apply the business-accounting system.

This is quite important in the management and running of the socialist economy. Managing and running factories and enterprises according to the principles of the business-accounting system is a demand of the economic laws of socialism. Through our own experience since the first years of socialist construction up until now, we have keenly felt that it is a very important matter to apply the business-accounting system in a proper way.

In order to apply the business-accounting system properly, we must use the law of value correctly. This alone will enable us to reduce the per-unit consumption of materials and increase both the output value per head of the employees and the quality of the goods produced.

It is a major shortcoming these days that the law of value is not applied properly in the management and operation of the socialist economy.
As was mentioned at the 17th Plenary Meeting of the 5th Party Central Committee, the inferior quality of coal and some other products is related in the main to the improper application of the law of value.

When the quality of coal is not ensured by the collieries, their managing activities should be severely restricted. But as this does not happen, the officials of coal mines are paying little attention to the question of improving the quality of coal. What is worse, some coal mines send coal mixed with a lot of impurities to thermal power stations, without using coal-dressing machines even though they have been installed, in order to attain their target figures. Even so, the coal mines receive the fixed price for coal and are judged as having fulfilled their production quotas. Since the coal mines send them impure coal, the generation of electricity at thermal power stations is suffering due to insufficient heat, and the generating equipment breaks down, sometimes even causing an accident.

This practice runs counter to the regulations of the business-accounting system. In an effort to try to prevent the coal mines from doing this, the price assessment sectors must fix the prices of coal correctly according to the grades, and the financial and banking sector must intensify its financial control. It was a mistake in the past for the financial and banking sector to supply the coal mines with money after examining only the production figures, with no consideration of the quality of the coal.

The officials in charge of finance and banking are not efficient in their financial control over light industry and other sectors.

I have inspected some samples of the clothes made by light industry which are to be produced for the students and children next year. The samples are well-made. But it is useless simply to make good samples alone. All the clothes for the students and children must be well-produced. Even in the past samples were well-made, but when mass production was started, light industry factories sometimes made goods in a slovenly manner with the same cloth, manufacturing garments that were not as good as the samples.
Financial and banking workers, however, are concerned only about increasing national revenue for the financial budget by accepting turnover incomes; they pay little attention to intensifying financial control so that factories and enterprises improve the quality of their products and apply the business-accounting system in a proper manner.

As the business-accounting system is not maintained in its proper sense, the value of per-capita output of the employees overall is still not high enough. A long time ago the target of increasing this value to over 10,000 won per annum was set, but many factories and enterprises have not yet managed this, and some are simply marking time, unable to exceed the level they have already attained.

With a view to encouraging the various branches of the national economy and factories and enterprises to apply the law of value correctly and maintain the business-accounting system in a proper way, obviously the officials of the General Bureau of Price Assessment under the State Planning Commission, the State Commission of Science and Technology, the General Bureau of Quality Control and those who give direct guidance to production should enhance their role. But it is also very important for the financial and banking workers to play a more significant role.

The officials in charge of finance and banking should not lose financial control as they do now, and they should see to it that those who have produced high-quality goods and those who have produced low-quality ones are not judged equally, nor should they allow a similar amount of money to be provided to those who have done a lot of work and those who have done little. Those who have produced high-quality goods and done a great deal of work ought to receive greater appreciation and more money than those who have not done so.

When financial control is introduced properly in the financial and banking sector according to the law of value, it will stimulate factories and enterprises to intensify the struggle for greater economy, to maintain their equipment properly, to conduct the campaign for technical innovations so that it proceeds with vigour, and will also
raise the creative enthusiasm of the working people. If this happens, the per-unit consumption of materials will be reduced, the value of per-capita output increased still further and the quality of the goods produced vastly improved. Therefore, the successful performance by the financial and banking workers of their duties is of importance in accelerating socialist economic construction and raising the people’s standard of living.

If you feel you have criticized yourselves sparingly at this meeting concerning your failure to maintain proper financial control, you had better criticize yourselves a little more. The aim of criticism is not to reprehend and punish someone; instead, its aim is to rectify mistakes and encourage someone to work more conscientiously. It serves as an impetus to develop work steadily.

In the light industry sector, too, the problem of improving the quality of the goods produced can be solved only when criticism is intensified. As I said to the senior officials of the light industry sector after inspecting the samples of clothes for students and children, it is advisable for this sector to hold 2 or 3 exhibitions of goods produced by light industry annually for the workers, farmers, youth, students and children and listen to the comments of these people. Then, the per-unit consumption of materials will be reduced and quality improved still further.

Financial and banking officials should make financial control tighter in the future, so that factories and enterprises in the various sectors of the national economy apply the business-accounting system properly, as required by the law of value.

Along with this, the number of enterprises using the business-accounting system should be continuously increased.

There are still many institutions and enterprises which are run by the budgetary system. Larger numbers of institutions and enterprises in the sectors of land administration, city management, procurement and in various other sectors should be placed under the business-accounting system.

To proceed. Financial discipline must be strengthened.
The aim of strengthening financial discipline is to prevent any waste of funds.

Nowadays many undisciplined practices of spending money at random are evident. Finances are spent randomly on unnecessary ceremonies and pomp such as holding pointless banquets and gatherings and giving gifts of no significance, as well as on unplanned construction, which results in exceeding the limits of the national budget. Such practices have still not yet been completely eliminated.

Financial and banking officials must combat these practices which are contrary to financial discipline, establish rigid discipline in the execution of the budget and tighten financial control.

All financial expenditure should accord with the items of expenditure laid down in the state budget, and the excessive use of funds must be prevented.

Financial and banking workers are servants of the people who work to make their lives happy by using the money which is earned by the people themselves. Therefore, they should always work from the standpoint of using every penny economically and giving greater benefit to the state.

Using money over and above state provision and spending money contrary to regulations are a violation of the state laws. The national budget is a state law adopted at the Supreme People’s Assembly, and as this is the highest organ of state power, no one has the right to violate such a law. The proper expenditure of money, as provided for in the national budget, is the first task in strengthening financial discipline.

To establish rigid financial discipline, reasonable financial reviews must be conducted.

Some leading economic officials are not well informed about finance and, therefore, pay little attention to financial reviews. As a result, the review of the execution of the financial budget is not conducted well by state institutions, enterprises and cooperative organizations.

All state institutions, enterprises and cooperative organizations
must review in detail and promptly how the financial budget has been executed. Factories and enterprises, as well as cooperative organizations, should inform their factory and office workers and cooperative members in detail of their earnings, expenditure and profits paid to the state every month and again every three months. Only by doing this can the mass control and supervision of the execution of the financial budget be stepped up and strict financial discipline established. The work of establishing financial discipline cannot be done satisfactorily by the efforts of the financial institutions alone. Strict financial discipline can only be established when the masses superintend financial management, struggle to conduct it and take the responsibility for it upon themselves.

State institutions, enterprises and cooperative organizations must review the state of financial management monthly, quarterly and half-yearly.

A financial review should be conducted not only by the institutions under the business-accounting system but also by those under the budget system. When this is done on time by the institutions governed by the budget system, they can manage their economic life properly, by using the budget provided by the state.

If this work is done well, all the officials and the working people will manage the economic life of the country carefully and work harder to overfulfil their revolutionary tasks in socialist economic construction.

Next, the struggle against squandering should be stepped up.

Nowadays there are many cases of using and squandering the communal property of the state and society carelessly.

The property of the state and society has been obtained by the people and, accordingly, is the common property of the people. Under the socialist system everyone gets his or her share of distribution in proportion to the work he or she has done, in line with the socialist principles of distribution. Therefore, there can never be anything that is obtained for nothing in socialist society. Even in a communist society where distribution is made according to one’s needs, everyone has to
work, so nothing can be gained gratuitously. At present, however, due to the capitalist ideas that remain in the minds of the people, there are quite a few instances of obtaining something free of charge; instances of using the common property of the state and society carelessly and thus wasting it have not disappeared from among some officials at factories, enterprises and cooperative farms.

In the case of cloth, for example, many instances of squandering have been witnessed. Under the care of the Party and the state, the workers in various sectors of the national economy, including rail transport and coal and ore mines, are now being supplied with clothes. However, large quantities of cloth are being wasted because the clothes are made badly and the distribution norms fixed by the state are not adhered to correctly. In addition, some state and economic institutions buy cloth which is intended for the people to make curtains, chair covers and the like. Because the state and economic institutions spend state funds unfairly on buying and wasting large quantities of cloth in such a way, cloth can rarely be found in the shops, although it is produced in great abundance every year.

The frequent cases of waste are ascribed primarily to inefficient financial control and to the unreasonable prices of commodities.

While investigating the waste of cloth recently, we learned that in Ryanggang Province vinalon yarn was being made into ropes for hopbines. Ropes needed for hop growing can be made either by twisting the bark of basswood trees, many of which can be found on the mountains, or by planting hemp on the edges of dry fields. Because it is sold cheaply at trade prices, however, valuable vinalon yarn, which can be woven into high-quality cloth, is made into ropes and so wasted. Our officials do not realize that if vinalon yarn is used to make ropes, we cannot produce much cloth.

An analysis of the application of fertilizer at cooperative farms shows that the farmers use it carelessly and unsparingly because they are supplied with it at a low price by the state. Accordingly, not only is precious fertilizer wasted, but also farming is disrupted.

Financial and banking officials should fight vigorously against any
instances of waste and always supervise and control the financial activities of every sector.

The financial organ of our country is fundamentally different, in its mission and role, from that of a capitalist country. Such an organ in a capitalist country mainly plays the role of collecting taxes from the people and paying wages to government officials, whereas ours is the master which directly handles the state funds needed for managing socialist industry and agriculture and for improving the living conditions of the people. Therefore, financial officials should fight strongly against the misappropriation and squandering of state funds as well as against their random expenditure.

Moreover, the local budget system should be strengthened further.

The local budget system is a unique socialist budget system, the first of which has been established in our country.

Before the introduction of this system in our country, all the funds needed for the economic life of each province were provided out of the central budget. But only a few years after the local budget system began to be adopted, all the provinces were covering their expenditure with their own income and offering large sums of the money they earned to the state. Last year, too, the provinces contributed a large sum of money, amounting to 1,000 million won, to the state, as a result of the effective enforcement of this system.

The local budget system in use in our country is fundamentally different in nature from the budget system in a capitalist country. Since budget revenue in a capitalist country is made up of the taxes gathered from the people, an increase in budget revenues means exploiting the people to the same extent. But the money brought into the state by our local budget is the money earned through the development of local industry and the improvement of services, and money which satisfies the people’s needs and benefits the state. Therefore, our local budget system has many advantages.

I am very satisfied with the brilliant success achieved in the past by the officials of government organs and the financial sector, in actively supporting the Party’s policy of applying the local budget system.
However, we should not rest on our laurels, but make every effort to develop the local budget system further.

Developing this system automatically means developing local industry, agriculture, fisheries, public services, procurement work and the like, so as to enable the provinces to manage their economic life themselves.

In strengthening this system, it is particularly important to develop local industry by improving procurement work.

The current inefficiency in procurement work is a hindrance to the rapid development of local industry. As I emphasized at the Changsong Joint Conference of Local Party and Economic Officials in 1962, the main task of local industry is to procure promptly the raw materials that are available locally, such as the farmers’ agricultural produce, and to manufacture daily necessities and foodstuffs, so that they can be supplied to the rural population. Therefore, local industry cannot be developed if procurement work is ineffective. From now onwards, the system of procurement should be applied properly and procurement work improved decisively, thus ensuring the supply of raw materials to local factories.

The provinces should make great efforts to develop the fishing industry.

There is still great potential for increasing production in the fishing industry. If the provinces develop the fishing industry, they will be able to earn large sums of money and apply the local budget system satisfactorily. They must make energetic efforts to develop small-scale fishing and increase seafood production by exploiting every condition and potential.

In addition, the provinces should forcefully boost the production of chickens, eggs and meat and sell large quantities in shops and on peasant markets. This will be a great help to the people in their lives and will also increase state financial revenue further.

Financial and banking officials should work hard to give full scope to the advantages of the local budget system advanced by our Party, so as to enable the people in all our provinces to enjoy an
independent and creative life to the full.

To proceed. The role of the banking organs should be enhanced.

The bank is an organ which circulates money. While managing their economy, factories, enterprises and cooperative farms may have idle money or may run short of it. The bank plays the role of collecting any idle money promptly to send it to the sectors that need it and giving loans to those sectors which are short of funds to guarantee their smooth management.

Immediately after liberation when the peasants were in difficulties because they lacked funds for farming, we set up the Peasant Bank and provided them with money.

After liberation, the peasants got land, thanks to the agrarian reform, but they had neither draught cattle nor seeds and were short of farm implements. Yet they had no money to buy these things. Having witnessed this situation, the landowners waited to see how the peasants could farm empty-handed, while the rich peasants and usurers tried to exploit the poor peasants by lending them money at high rates of interest, regarding it as a good opportunity. The owners of draught oxen tried to lend them to the poor peasants for a day or two and in exchange charge a high price in rice in the autumn.

In those days, however, we did not have enough money to finance the peasants in their farming. Before fleeing, the Japanese imperialists destroyed all our major factories, and the few small factories which remained were all owned by private entrepreneurs. Such being the case, we had no source for obtaining money. So we decided to confiscate the property of the financial cooperative which had been set up by the Japanese imperialists to plunder the rural communities of our country, and to use it as a basis for setting up the Peasant Bank. And we persuaded the peasants to invest as much money as they had in the bank: a man with one won, investing one won, a man with two won, contributing his two won, and a man with three won, laying out this three won. Not only the peasants but also the factory and office workers were persuaded to invest in the Peasant Bank. For those who invested money in the bank, we made arrangements for them to receive
a dividend according to the amount invested, in autumn every year.

The peasants actively supported the policy of setting up the Peasant Bank and every one of them invested money in it. As a result, we created a considerable amount of capital for the Peasant Bank.

The Peasant Bank gave the peasants loans so that they could buy draught oxen from the mountainous areas like Jagang Province and could use them to secure seeds and small farm implements. Meanwhile, the state ensured that draught cattle were bought with the money from the Peasant Bank to form ox-and-horse hire stations and plough the paddy and dry fields for the peasants. The fees charged were low, and were enough only to feed the draught animals.

In this way, soon after liberation we settled the matter of funds for the peasants’ farming which had become a very difficult problem and allowed the poor peasants to free themselves from exploitation by rich peasants and usurers. In addition, the Peasant Bank fulfilled an important function in cultivating the spirit of cooperation among the peasants and in convincing them of the advantages of cooperative organization.

In our country there are currently two forms of ownership of the means of production—all-people ownership and cooperative ownership—and two sectors of the economy, that is the state and the cooperative, in line with these forms. If we are to manage an economy properly, whatever form it may take, we must enhance the role played by banking, so as to enlist and make use of any idle money to the maximum, and maintain proper financial control.

The banking organs should work efficiently in giving loans, while enlisting in every possible way any unused money by encouraging people to save.

At the time of forming agricultural cooperatives, the banking organs granted long-term loans to the agricultural cooperatives and poor peasants and short-term ones to middle peasants, but none to the rich farmers, in accordance with our Party’s class policy. This type of question does not arise any longer, but the role of the banking organs is still extremely important. They must establish strict discipline in
payment and acceptance and perform the job of making loans efficiently. They should examine the cases accurately one by one, and grant the necessary loans which are essential to the factories, enterprises, cooperative farms and producers’ cooperatives. They must give short-term loans only to those factories and enterprises which are short of funds because they have failed to carry out their plans according to the indices.

Financial institutions and banking organs are inseparable from each other in terms of their work. Therefore, both should promote close cooperation.

Financial and banking institutions should mechanize accounting work.

In future all accounting work should be computerized. This is the only way for accounting work to be done quickly and for manpower to be saved. The banking organs should earn large amounts of foreign currency so that they can buy modern computing equipment.

These institutions should use women workers in large numbers.

Women represent nearly half of the work force in our national economy, but there are not many of them in the financial and banking institutions. This shows that the tendency to ignore women has not yet disappeared completely from among our officials. There is no reason why women cannot work in these institutions, and in fact they can work better than men. From now onwards, these institutions must employ large numbers of women workers.

Up until now, the officials in charge of finance and banking have followed an arduous road, but achieved great success. Needless to say, there might be various difficulties during our advance in the future, too. But they will not be as grave as the ones we endured in the past. Now that solid foundations for the financial and banking sectors have been laid, the work will become easier in the future.

I firmly believe that in the future, all the officials in finance and banking will successfully overcome the difficulties they encounter, and carry out with credit the tasks set by the Party.